



KONICA MINOLTA

The essentials of imaging



bizhub C652/C652DS/C552/C452

User's Guide
Network Administration

Table of contents

1 Introduction

1.1	Welcome	1-3
1.1.1	User's guides	1-3
1.1.2	User's Guide	1-4
1.2	Conventions used in this manual	1-5
1.2.1	Symbols used in this manual	1-5
	To use this machine safely	1-5
	Procedural instruction	1-5
	Key symbols	1-6
1.2.2	Original and paper indications	1-6
	Original and paper sizes	1-6
	Original and paper indications	1-6
1.3	Display modes of PageScope Web Connection	1-7
1.3.1	"Tab Function Display"	1-7
1.3.2	"List Function Display"	1-7
	Main Menu	1-8

2 Setting Items for each Procedure

2.1	Procedure list	2-3
2.1.1	Connecting to network	2-3
2.1.2	Using PageScope Web Connection	2-3
2.1.3	Scanning	2-3
2.1.4	Printing	2-4
2.1.5	Sending and receiving network faxes	2-4
2.1.6	Using User Authentication	2-4
2.1.7	Cooperating with applications	2-4
2.1.8	Reinforcing security	2-5
2.1.9	Managing	2-6
2.1.10	Registering	2-6
2.1.11	Configuring User Box settings	2-7
2.1.12	Configuring print settings	2-7
2.1.13	Configuring fax settings	2-7
2.2	Basic settings for TCP/IP communication	2-8
	TCP/IP Settings	2-8
	Device Setting	2-10
2.3	Using PageScope Web Connection	2-11
2.3.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-11
2.3.2	PSWC Settings	2-11
2.3.3	TCP Socket Settings	2-12
2.3.4	Device Certificate Setting	2-12
2.4	Logging in to the administrator mode	2-13
2.5	Using Popup Help	2-15
	Help Display Setting	2-15
	Popup Help Display Example	2-15
2.6	Configuring Settings for each Purpose via Wizard	2-16
2.6.1	Screen Components	2-16
2.6.2	Setting for each purpose	2-17
2.7	Registering the certificate of this machine for SSL communications	2-18
2.7.1	Device Certificate Setting	2-19
2.7.2	Creating and installing a self-signed certificate	2-20
2.7.3	Requesting an issuance of certificate	2-21

2.7.4	Install a Certificate	2-22
2.7.5	Import Certificates	2-23
2.7.6	SSL Setting	2-24
2.7.7	Removing a Certificate.....	2-25
2.8	Using device certificates depending on protocol	2-26
2.8.1	Registering a certificate	2-27
2.8.2	Protocol setting.....	2-27
2.9	Managing a device certificate.....	2-28
2.9.1	Registering a certificate	2-28
2.9.2	Exporting a certificate	2-28
2.10	Registering a user certificate in this machine.....	2-30
2.10.1	E-mail	2-31
2.10.2	Automatically Obtain Certificates	2-32
2.10.3	Certificate validation	2-33
	Certificate Verification Level Settings	2-33
	Certificate Verification Settings.....	2-33
2.11	Specifying the date and time of this machine	2-35
2.11.1	Manual Setting.....	2-36
2.11.2	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-36
2.11.3	Time Zone	2-36
2.11.4	Timer Adjustment Setting	2-37
2.12	Sending scanned data to a computer on network.....	2-38
2.12.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-38
2.12.2	Client Setting.....	2-39
2.12.3	WINS Setting.....	2-40
2.12.4	Direct Hosting Setting.....	2-41
2.12.5	LLMNR Setting.....	2-41
2.13	Sending scanned data to your computer (Scan to Home)	2-42
2.13.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-43
2.13.2	User authentication (Active Directory)	2-43
2.13.3	Scan to Home Settings	2-43
2.13.4	Client Setting.....	2-43
2.13.5	WINS Setting.....	2-43
2.13.6	Direct Hosting Setting.....	2-43
2.13.7	LLMNR Setting.....	2-44
2.14	Restricting the use of the SMB address registered in the address book.....	2-45
2.14.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-46
2.14.2	User Authentication	2-46
2.14.3	Scan to Authorized Folder Settings	2-46
2.14.4	Client Setting.....	2-46
2.14.5	WINS Setting.....	2-46
2.14.6	Direct Hosting Setting.....	2-46
2.14.7	LLMNR Setting.....	2-46
2.15	Sending scanned data by E-mail.....	2-47
2.15.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-47
2.15.2	E-mail Transmission (SMTP).....	2-48
	E-mail Transmission (SMTP).....	2-48
	Admin. E-mail Address	2-49
2.15.3	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-50
	E-mail Transmission (SMTP).....	2-50
	Certificate Verification Settings.....	2-51
2.15.4	SMTP Authentication	2-52
2.15.5	POP before SMTP.....	2-52
	POP before SMTP.....	2-52
	E-Mail RX (POP).....	2-53

2.15.6	POP over SSL	2-54
	E-Mail RX (POP)	2-54
	Certificate Verification Settings	2-54
2.15.7	APOP Authentication	2-55
2.16	Sending scanned data to the user's E-mail address (Scan to Me)	2-56
2.16.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-56
2.16.2	User Authentication	2-57
	When the MFP authentication is selected	2-57
	When the Active Directory authentication is selected	2-57
	When the NTLM or NDS authentication is selected	2-57
2.16.3	E-mail Transmission (SMTP)	2-57
2.16.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-57
2.16.5	SMTP Authentication	2-57
2.16.6	POP before SMTP	2-58
2.16.7	POP over SSL	2-58
2.16.8	APOP Authentication	2-58
2.17	Sending scanned data by E-mail (with digital signature)	2-59
2.17.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-59
2.17.2	E-mail Transmission (SMTP)	2-59
2.17.3	Registering a certificate	2-60
2.17.4	S/MIME	2-60
2.17.5	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-60
2.17.6	SMTP Authentication	2-60
2.17.7	POP before SMTP	2-61
2.17.8	POP over SSL	2-61
2.17.9	APOP Authentication	2-61
2.18	Sending scanned data by E-mail (Encryption by public key)	2-62
2.18.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-62
2.18.2	E-mail Transmission (SMTP)	2-63
2.18.3	S/MIME	2-63
2.18.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-63
2.18.5	SMTP Authentication	2-63
2.18.6	POP before SMTP	2-64
2.18.7	POP over SSL	2-64
2.18.8	APOP Authentication	2-64
2.19	Searching for the E-mail address in the LDAP server	2-65
2.19.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-65
2.19.2	LDAP Settings	2-66
2.19.3	Setting up the LDAP server	2-67
2.19.4	LDAP over SSL	2-69
	Setting up the LDAP server	2-69
	Certificate Verification Settings	2-69
2.19.5	DNS server setting	2-70
2.19.6	Date/Time Setting	2-70
2.20	Sending scanned data to the FTP server	2-71
2.20.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-71
2.20.2	FTP transmission setting	2-72
2.21	Sending scanned data to the WebDAV server	2-73
2.21.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-73
2.21.2	WebDAV client settings	2-74
2.21.3	WebDAV over SSL	2-75
	Certificate Verification Level Settings	2-75
	Certificate Verification Settings	2-75
2.22	Sending Internet faxes	2-77
2.22.1	TCP/IP Settings	2-78
2.22.2	Network Fax Function Settings	2-78

2.22.3	Machine Setting	2-79
2.22.4	Header Information	2-80
2.22.5	E-mail Transmission (SMTP).....	2-80
2.22.6	Network Fax Settings.....	2-80
	I-Fax Advanced Setting	2-80
	Black Compression Level	2-81
	Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method	2-82
2.22.7	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-82
2.22.8	SMTP Authentication	2-82
2.22.9	POP before SMTP.....	2-82
2.22.10	POP over SSL	2-82
2.22.11	APOP Authentication	2-82
2.23	Receiving Internet faxes.....	2-83
2.23.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-83
2.23.2	Network Fax Function Settings.....	2-83
2.23.3	E-Mail RX (POP).....	2-84
2.23.4	Network Fax Settings.....	2-85
	I-Fax Advanced Setting	2-85
	Internet Fax RX Ability.....	2-86
2.23.5	POP over SSL	2-86
2.23.6	APOP Authentication	2-86
2.24	Sending and receiving IP address faxes.....	2-87
2.24.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-87
2.24.2	Network Fax Function Settings.....	2-88
2.24.3	SMTP TX Setting.....	2-89
2.24.4	SMTP RX Setting	2-90
2.24.5	Network Fax Settings.....	2-91
	Black Compression Level	2-91
	Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method	2-92
2.24.6	IP Address Fax Setting	2-93
2.24.7	Header Information	2-93
2.25	Importing images by TWAIN scan.....	2-94
2.25.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-94
2.25.2	SLP Setting	2-94
2.25.3	TCP Socket Settings.....	2-95
2.25.4	Network TWAIN	2-95
2.26	Printing (LPR/Port9100).....	2-96
2.26.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-96
2.26.2	LPD Setting.....	2-96
2.26.3	RAW Port Number	2-96
2.27	Print (SMB).....	2-97
2.27.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-97
2.27.2	Print Setting	2-98
2.27.3	WINS Setting.....	2-98
2.27.4	Direct Hosting Setting.....	2-98
2.27.5	LLMNR Setting.....	2-98
2.28	Print (IPP)	2-99
2.28.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-99
2.28.2	IPP Setting	2-100
2.28.3	IPP Authentication Setting	2-101
2.29	Print (IPPS).....	2-102
2.29.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-102
2.29.2	IPP Setting	2-102
2.29.3	Device Certificate Setting	2-103
2.29.4	IPP Authentication Setting	2-103

2.30	Printing (Bonjour)	2-104
	Bonjour Settings	2-104
2.31	Printing (AppleTalk).....	2-105
	AppleTalk Settings	2-105
2.32	Printing (Netware)	2-106
2.32.1	NetWare Settings	2-106
	In Remote Printer mode using the NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation	2-107
	In Print Server mode using the NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation	2-107
	In NetWare 4.x Remote Printer mode (NDS).....	2-108
	In the NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server mode (NDS).....	2-109
	For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)	2-110
2.32.2	NetWare Status	2-111
2.33	Using the WS print function	2-112
2.33.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-112
2.33.2	Web Service Common Settings.....	2-113
2.33.3	Print Setting	2-114
2.34	Using Data Saved in a Cellular Phone or PDA	2-115
2.34.1	Bluetooth Setting	2-115
2.34.2	System Connection Setting	2-116
2.35	Using the WS scan function	2-117
2.35.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-117
2.35.2	Web Service Common Settings.....	2-118
2.35.3	Scanner Settings.....	2-119
2.36	Using Web services to secure communication from Vista/Server 2008 to this machine via SSL	2-120
2.36.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-120
2.36.2	Device Certificate Setting	2-120
2.36.3	Web Service Common Settings.....	2-120
2.37	Using Web services to establish an SSL communication from this machine to Vista/Server 2008	2-121
2.37.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-121
2.37.2	Web Service Common Settings.....	2-121
	Certificate Verification Settings.....	2-122
2.38	Displaying this machine on the network map	2-123
2.38.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-123
2.38.2	LLTD Setting	2-123
2.39	Monitoring this machine by SNMP Manager	2-124
2.39.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-124
2.39.2	NetWare Settings	2-125
2.39.3	SNMP Settings.....	2-126
2.40	Reporting the status of this machine (by E-mail).....	2-128
2.40.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-128
2.40.2	E-mail Transmission (SMTP).....	2-129
2.40.3	Status Notification Setting	2-130
2.40.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-131
2.40.5	SMTP Authentication	2-131
2.40.6	POP before SMTP	2-131
2.40.7	POP over SSL	2-131
2.40.8	APOP Authentication	2-131
2.41	Reporting the status of this machine (TRAP)	2-132
2.41.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-132
2.41.2	NetWare Settings	2-133
2.41.3	TRAP Settings.....	2-133
2.41.4	Status Notification Setting	2-134
2.42	Reporting the counter information of this machine (by E-mail)	2-135
2.42.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-135

2.42.2	E-mail Transmission (SMTP).....	2-136
2.42.3	Total Counter Notification Setting.....	2-137
2.42.4	SMTP over SSL/Start TLS	2-138
2.42.5	SMTP Authentication	2-138
2.42.6	POP before SMTP.....	2-138
2.42.7	POP over SSL	2-138
2.42.8	APOP Authentication	2-138
2.43	Restricting users of this machine (MFP authentication)	2-139
2.43.1	General Settings	2-140
2.43.2	Administrative Setting	2-142
2.43.3	User Registration	2-144
2.43.4	Account Track Registration	2-147
2.44	Restricting users of this machine (Active Directory)	2-149
2.44.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-149
2.44.2	External Server Settings.....	2-150
2.44.3	General Settings	2-151
2.44.4	Administrative Setting	2-152
2.44.5	Default Function Permission	2-152
2.44.6	Date/Time Setting	2-153
2.45	Restricting users of this machine (Windows domain or workgroup).....	2-154
2.45.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-154
2.45.2	External Server Settings.....	2-155
2.45.3	General Settings	2-156
2.45.4	Administrative Setting	2-157
2.45.5	Default Function Permission	2-157
2.45.6	Client Setting.....	2-157
2.45.7	WINS Setting.....	2-157
2.45.8	Direct Hosting Setting.....	2-157
2.46	Restricting users of this machine (NDS over IPX/SPX)	2-158
2.46.1	External Server Settings.....	2-158
2.46.2	General Settings	2-159
2.46.3	Administrative Setting	2-160
2.46.4	Default Function Permission	2-160
2.46.5	NetWare Settings	2-160
2.47	Restricting users of this machine (NDS over TCP/IP)	2-161
2.47.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-161
2.47.2	External Server Settings.....	2-162
2.47.3	General Settings	2-163
2.47.4	Administrative Setting	2-164
2.47.5	Default Function Permission	2-164
2.48	Restricting users of this machine (LDAP).....	2-165
2.48.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-165
2.48.2	External Server Settings.....	2-166
2.48.3	General Settings	2-167
2.48.4	Administrative Setting	2-168
2.48.5	Default Function Permission	2-168
2.48.6	LDAP over SSL	2-168
	External Server Settings.....	2-168
	Setting Up LDAP (Certificate Verification Level Settings)	2-168
	Certificate Verification Settings.....	2-169
2.49	Filtering IP addresses	2-170
2.49.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-170
2.49.2	IP Filtering	2-170
2.50	Communicating using IPv6	2-172
	TCP/IP Setting	2-173

2.51	Communicating using IPsec	2-175
2.51.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-175
2.51.2	IPsec	2-176
2.51.3	IKE.....	2-177
	IKE.....	2-177
	IKE Setting	2-177
2.51.4	SA.....	2-178
	SA.....	2-178
	SA Setting	2-178
2.51.5	Peer.....	2-179
2.52	Using IEEE802.1X authentication	2-180
2.52.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-180
2.52.2	Device Certificate Setting	2-180
2.52.3	IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting.....	2-181
2.52.4	Certificate validation	2-183
	IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting.....	2-183
	Certificate Verification Settings.....	2-183
2.52.5	IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial	2-184
2.53	Using applications that communicate with this machine with TCP Socket.....	2-185
2.53.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-185
2.53.2	Device Certificate Setting	2-185
2.53.3	TCP Socket Settings.....	2-186
2.54	Linking an OpenAPI system with this machine.....	2-187
2.54.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-187
2.54.2	SSDP Settings	2-188
2.54.3	Device Certificate Setting	2-189
2.54.4	OpenAPI Setting	2-189
2.54.5	Certificate validation	2-190
	Certificate Verification Level Settings	2-190
	Certificate Verification Settings.....	2-190
2.55	Using the FTP server and WebDAV server functions	2-192
2.55.1	TCP/IP Settings.....	2-192
2.55.2	Device Certificate Setting	2-192
2.55.3	FTP Server Settings	2-193
2.55.4	WebDAV Server Settings	2-194
2.56	Settings under "Maintenance".....	2-195
2.56.1	Checking the counter of this machine	2-195
	Meter Count	2-195
2.56.2	Checking the machine ROM version	2-196
	ROM Version.....	2-196
2.56.3	Importing and exporting the machine configuration information.....	2-197
	Import/Export.....	2-197
2.56.4	Using the timer functions.....	2-198
	Power Save Setting.....	2-198
	Weekly Timer Setting	2-199
2.56.5	Displaying a network error code	2-200
	Network Error Code Display Setting.....	2-200
2.56.6	Initializing the configuration information	2-201
	Network Setting Clear.....	2-201
	Reset.....	2-201
	Format All Destination.....	2-202
2.56.7	Enhancing the functions of this machine.....	2-202
	Get Request Code	2-203
	Install License	2-203
2.56.8	Registering and editing font/macro	2-204
	Edit Font/Macro	2-204

2.56.9	Outputting job logs	2-205
	Creating job log data	2-205
	Downloading job log data	2-206
2.57	Settings under "System Settings"	2-207
2.57.1	Registering machine information	2-207
	Machine Setting	2-207
2.57.2	Registering support information	2-208
	Register Support Information	2-208
2.57.3	Configuring the environmental settings for using User Boxes	2-209
	Delete Unused User Box	2-209
	Delete Secure Print File	2-209
	Delete Time Setting	2-210
	Document Delete Time Setting	2-211
	Document Hold Setting	2-212
	External Memory Function Settings	2-213
	User Box Operation	2-214
	ID & Print Delete Time	2-215
2.57.4	Configuring stamp settings	2-216
	Header/Footer Registration	2-216
	Fax TX settings	2-217
2.57.5	Configuring settings for printing blank pages	2-218
	Blank Page Print Settings	2-218
2.57.6	Configuring settings for skipping jobs	2-218
	Skip Job Operation Settings	2-218
2.57.7	Disabling Flash View	2-219
	Flash View Settings	2-219
2.57.8	Using the Fax Server Communicating in E-Mail Format	2-220
	System Connection Setting	2-220
2.57.9	Canceling the connection with applications	2-221
	System Connection Setting	2-221
2.57.10	Specifying the display mode of the administrator mode	2-222
	Display Setting	2-222
	Tab Function Display	2-222
	List Function Display	2-222
2.57.11	Configuring Outline PDF Settings	2-223
	Outline PDF Setting	2-223
2.58	Settings under "Security"	2-224
2.58.1	Managing external certificates	2-224
	External Certificate Setting	2-224
2.58.2	Limiting accessible destinations for each user	2-226
	Registering reference allowed groups	2-226
2.58.3	Restricting Registration and Change by a User	2-227
	Restrict User Access	2-227
2.58.4	Configuring Copy Security Settings	2-228
	Copy Security	2-228
2.58.5	Specifying the automatic logout time of PageScope Web Connection	2-229
	Auto Logout	2-229
2.58.6	Configuring the administrator password	2-230
	Administrator Password Setting	2-230
2.59	Settings under "User Authentication/Account Track"	2-231
2.59.1	Configuring the function permission of the public user	2-231
	Public User	2-231
2.59.2	Specifying the maximum number of Public User Boxes	2-233
	Public User Box Setting	2-233
2.59.3	Managing single color /2 Color output	2-234
	User/Account Common Setting	2-234
2.59.4	Restricting specification of sending destinations	2-235
	Scan to Authorized Folder Settings	2-235

2.60	Settings under "Box"	2-236
2.60.1	Changing User Box settings	2-236
	Open User Box	2-236
2.60.2	Creating new User Boxes	2-238
	Create User Box.....	2-238
2.60.3	Changing System User Box settings	2-239
	Open System User Box	2-239
2.60.4	Creating a new System User Box	2-241
	Create System User Box	2-241
2.61	Settings under "Print Setting"	2-243
2.61.1	Configuring initial settings for the printer function	2-243
	Basic Setting.....	2-243
2.61.2	Configuring the initial settings for the PCL print function	2-244
	PCL Setting.....	2-244
2.61.3	Configuring the initial settings for the PS print function	2-245
	PS Setting	2-245
2.61.4	Configuring the initial settings for the TIFF print function.....	2-246
	TIFF Setting.....	2-246
2.61.5	Configuring the initial settings for the XPS print function	2-247
	XPS Settings	2-247
2.61.6	Specifying the timeout of the interface	2-248
	Interface Setting.....	2-248
2.61.7	Disabling the direct print function	2-248
	Direct Print Settings	2-248
2.61.8	Restricting users from obtaining device information using password	2-249
	Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	2-249
2.62	Settings under "Store Address"	2-250
2.62.1	Registering Address Book	2-250
	Address Registration.....	2-250
	Icon	2-255
2.62.2	Registering a group.....	2-256
	Group	2-256
2.62.3	Registering a program destination.....	2-257
	Program	2-257
2.62.4	Registering Temporary One-Touch Destination	2-272
	Temporary One-Touch.....	2-272
2.62.5	Registering the E-mail subject and body.....	2-273
	Subject.....	2-273
	Text	2-273
2.62.6	Using a fax server	2-274
	Registering applications.....	2-274
2.62.7	Simplifying entering E-mail addresses.....	2-277
	Prefix/Suffix.....	2-277
2.63	Settings under "Fax Settings".....	2-278
2.63.1	Configuring Header/Footer Position settings	2-278
	Header/Footer Position	2-278
2.63.2	Configuring settings for telephone and fax lines	2-279
	Line Parameter Setting	2-279
2.63.3	Configuring settings to send or receive faxes	2-280
	TX/RX settings	2-280
2.63.4	Configuring settings for the fax functions	2-282
	Function ON/OFF Setting	2-282
	Memory RX Setting.....	2-283
	Closed network RX	2-284
	Forward TX Setting	2-285
	Incomplete TX Hold	2-286
	PC-FAX RX Setting	2-287
	TSI User Box Setting.....	2-288
	TSI User Box Registration.....	2-289

2.63.5	Configuring PBX connection settings	2-290
	PBX Connection Setting	2-290
2.63.6	Configuring settings to print fax reports	2-291
	Report Settings	2-291
2.63.7	Using extension lines	2-292
	Multi Line Settings	2-292
2.63.8	Registering the Sender Name and Fax ID	2-293
	Header Information	2-293
2.64	Using Data Management Utility	2-295
2.64.1	Starting up Data Management Utility	2-295
2.64.2	Managing copy protect data	2-296
	Copy protect list	2-296
	System	2-297
	Edit	2-297
2.64.3	Managing stamp Data	2-298
	Stamp list	2-298
	System	2-299
	Edit	2-299
2.64.4	Managing font or macro	2-300
	Font/Macro List	2-300
	System	2-301
	Add	2-301

3 Appendix

3.1	Product specifications (Network functions)	3-3
3.2	Displaying the network settings screen (Control panel)	3-4
3.3	Network settings menu list (Control panel)	3-6
3.3.1	Network Settings screen (1/2)	3-6
	[1] TCP/IP Settings	3-6
	[2] NetWare Settings	3-8
	[3] HTTP Server Settings	3-8
	[4] FTP Settings	3-9
	[5] SMB Settings	3-9
	[6] LDAP Settings	3-10
	[7] E-mail Settings	3-11
	[8] SNMP Settings	3-13
	[9] AppleTalk Settings	3-14
	[0] Bonjour Setting	3-14
3.3.2	Network Settings screen (2/2)	3-15
	[1] TCP Socket Settings	3-15
	[2] Network Fax Settings	3-15
	[3] WebDAV Settings	3-16
	[4] Web Service Settings	3-16
	[6] SSDP Setting	3-17
	[7] Detail Settings	3-17
	[8] IEEE802.1X Authentication Settings	3-18
	[0] Bluetooth Setting	3-18
3.4	Network Error Codes	3-19
3.5	Glossary	3-31

4 Index

4.1	Index by item	4-3
4.2	Index by button	4-5



Introduction

1 Introduction

1.1 Welcome

Thank you for purchasing this machine.

This User's Guide describes the functions, operating instructions, precautions for correct operation, and simple troubleshooting guidelines of this machine. In order to obtain maximum performance from this product and use it effectively, please read this User's Guide as necessary.

1.1.1 User's guides

Printed manual	Overview
Quick Guide [Copy/Print/Fax/Scan/Box Operations]	This manual describes operating procedures and the functions that are most frequently used in order to enable you to begin using this machine immediately. This manual also contains notes and precautions that should be followed to ensure safe usage of this machine. Please be sure to read this manual before using this machine.
User's guide DVD manuals	Overview
Copy Operations	This manual describes details on copy mode operations and the settings of this machine. • Specifications of originals and copy paper • Copy function • Maintaining this machine • Troubleshooting
Enlarge Display Operations	This manual describes details on operating procedures of enlarge display mode. • Copy function • Scanning function • G3 fax function • Network fax function
Print Operations	This manual describes details on printer functions. • Printer function • Setting the printer driver
Box Operations	This manual describes details on the boxed functions using the hard disk. • Saving data in User Boxes. • Retrieving data from User Boxes. • Transferring and printing data from User Boxes
Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations	This manual describes details on transmitting scanned data. • E-mail TX, FTP TX, SMB TX, Save in User Box, WebDAV TX, Web Services • G3 fax • IP Address Fax, Internet Fax
Fax Driver Operations	This manual describes details on the fax driver function that transmits faxes directly from a computer. • PC-FAX
Network Administrator	This manual describes details on setting methods for each function using the network connection. • Network settings • Settings using PageScope Web Connection.

User's guide DVD manuals	Overview
Advanced Function Operations	This manual describes details on functions that become available by registering the optional license kit and by connecting to an application. • Web browser function • Image panel • PDF Processing Function • Searchable PDF • My panel and My address function

1.1.2 User's Guide

This User's Guide is intended for a wide range of users ranging from those using this machine for the first time to administrators.

It describes basic operations, functions that enable more convenient operations, simple troubleshooting operations, and various setting methods of this machine.

Note that basic technical knowledge about the product is required to enable users to perform troubleshooting operation. Limit your troubleshooting operations to the areas explained in this manual.

Should you experience any problems, please contact our service representative.

1.2 Conventions used in this manual

1.2.1 Symbols used in this manual.

Symbols are used in this manual to express various types of information.
The following describes each symbol related to correct and safe usage of this machine.

To use this machine safely

⚠ WARNING

- This symbol indicates that a failure to heed the instructions may lead to death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

- This symbol indicates that negligence of the instructions may lead to mishandling that may cause injury or property damage.

NOTICE

*This symbol indicates a risk that may result in damage to this machine or originals.
Follow the instructions to avoid property damage.*

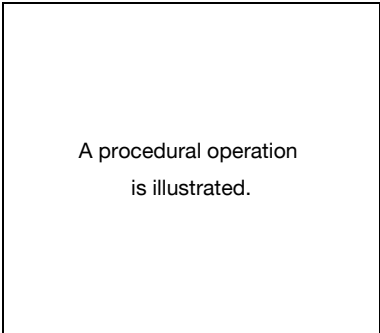
Procedural instruction

- ✓ This check mark indicates an option that is required in order to use conditions or functions that are prerequisite for a procedure.

1 This format number "1" represents the first step.

2 This format number represents the order of serial steps.

- ➔ This symbol indicates a supplementary explanation of a procedural instruction.



- ➔ This symbol indicates transition of the control panel to access a desired menu item.



This symbol indicates a desired page.



Reference

This symbol indicates a reference.

View the reference as required.

Key symbols

[]

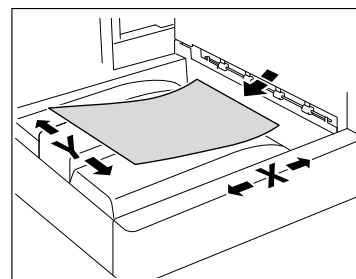
This symbol represents a key name on the control panel, touch panel or the computer screen, or power switch, etc.

1.2.2 Original and paper indications

Original and paper sizes

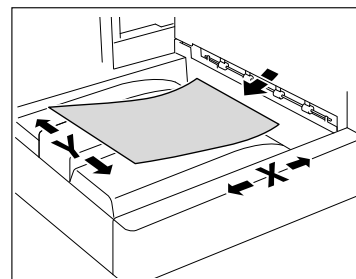
The following explains the indication for originals and paper described in this manual.

When indicating the original or paper size, the Y side represents the width and the X side the length.

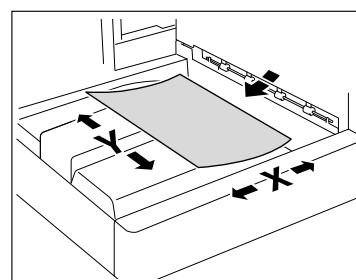


Original and paper indications

☐ indicates the paper size with the length (X) being longer than the width (Y).



☐ indicates the paper size with the length (X) being shorter than the width (Y).



1.3 Display modes of PageScope Web Connection

The display modes of the PageScope Web Connection administrator modes are classified into two display modes: "Tab Function Display" and "List Function Display". This manual shows an example where the "List Function Display" is set as the display mode.

This section provides an overview of each display mode. In either display mode, the available items are the same.



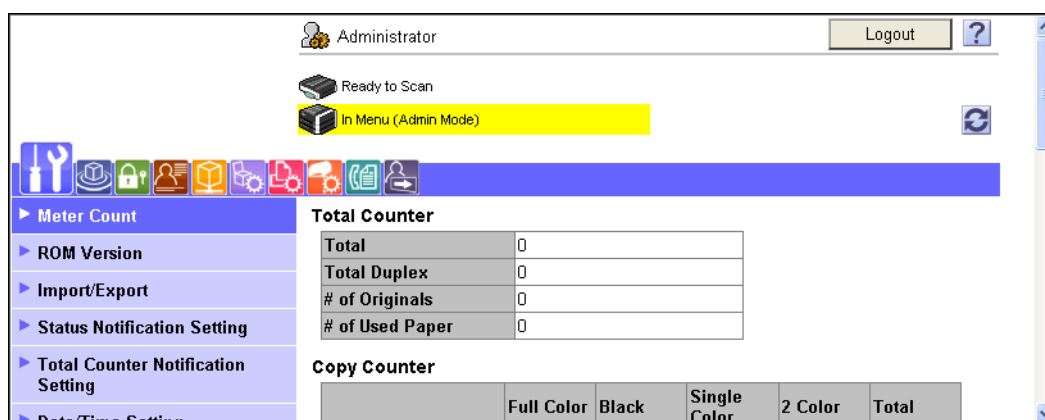
Reference

For details on specifying the display mode, refer to page 2-222.

1.3.1 "Tab Function Display"

In the default setting, the screen is displayed in "Tab Function Display".

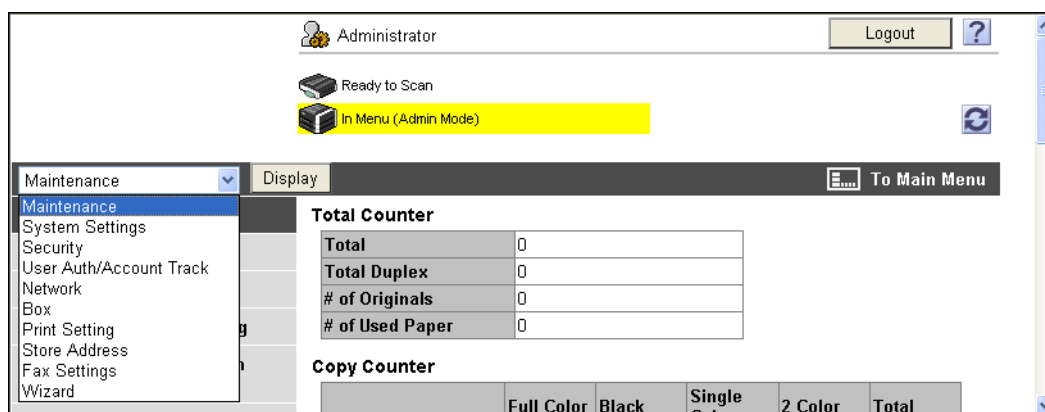
In "Tab Function Display", click the desired icon to change the menu.



1.3.2 "List Function Display"

In "List Function Display", change the menu from the list box.

Select the desired menu in the drop-down list, click [Display].



Main Menu

If you log in to the administrator mode while "List Function Display" is selected, the main menu appears first. The main menu displays a list of all the menus in the administrator mode. Select the desired setting in the drop-down list, and click [Display] to display each setting screen.



Reference

Click "To Main Menu" on each setting screen of the administrator mode to return to the main menu.

Category	Description	Setting	Action
Maintenance	Maintenance related settings. Confirm ROM version, Import and Export data.	Meter Count	Display
System Settings	Initial settings. User Box and Stamp settings.	Machine Setting	Display
Security	Security related settings. Administrator Password and Address Permission Settings.	PKI Settings	Display
User Auth/Account Track	User Authentication and Account Track Settings. External Server and Group User Box Settings.	Authentication Method	Display
Network	Network-related Settings. E-mail and Open API Settings.	TCP/IP Setting	Display
Box	User Box creation and operation. Document can be printed and routed from the User Box.	Open User Box	Display
Print Setting	Print Settings. Fonts and XPS Settings.	Basic Setting	Display
Store Address	Destination (addresses) registration. E-mail, Subject and Prefix/Suffix Settings.	Address Book	Display
Fax Settings	Fax Settings. Fax Functions and Fax Report Settings.	Header/Footer Position	Display
Wizard	Wizard Setup is performed. The setting can be easily performed by following the outlined procedures.	TX Setting for scan documents	Display



Setting Items for each Procedure

2 Setting Items for each Procedure

2.1 Procedure list

This section describes a list of procedures that are required to use this machine.

Find the required procedure in the list, and configure the required settings.

2.1.1 Connecting to network

Title	Page
Basic settings for TCP/IP communication	p. 2-8
Communicating using IPv6	p. 2-172

2.1.2 Using PageScope Web Connection

Title	Page
Using PageScope Web Connection	p. 2-11
Logging in to the administrator mode	p. 2-13
Using Popup Help	p. 2-15
Configuring Settings for each Purpose via Wizard	p. 2-16
Disabling Flash View	p. 2-219
Specifying the display mode of the administrator mode	p. 2-222
Specifying the automatic logout time of PageScope Web Connection	p. 2-229

2.1.3 Scanning

Title	Page
Sending scanned data to a computer on network	p. 2-38
Sending scanned data to your computer (Scan to Home)	p. 2-42
Sending scanned data by E-mail	p. 2-47
Sending scanned data to the user's E-mail address (Scan to Me)	p. 2-56
Sending scanned data to the FTP server	p. 2-71
Sending scanned data to the WebDAV server	p. 2-73
Importing images by TWAIN scan	p. 2-94
Using the WS scan function	p. 2-117

2.1.4 Printing

Title	Page
Printing (LPR/Port9100)	p. 2-96
Print (SMB)	p. 2-97
Print (IPP)	p. 2-99
Print (IPPS)	p. 2-102
Printing (Bonjour)	p. 2-104
Printing (AppleTalk)	p. 2-105
Printing (Netware)	p. 2-106
Using the WS print function	p. 2-112
Using Data Saved in a Cellular Phone or PDA	p. 2-115

2.1.5 Sending and receiving network faxes

Title	Page
Sending Internet faxes	p. 2-77
Receiving Internet faxes	p. 2-83
Sending and receiving IP address faxes	p. 2-87

2.1.6 Using User Authentication

Title	Page
Restricting users of this machine (MFP authentication)	p. 2-139
Restricting users of this machine (Active Directory)	p. 2-149
Restricting users of this machine (Windows domain or workgroup)	p. 2-154
Restricting users of this machine (NDS over IPX/SPX)	p. 2-158
Restricting users of this machine (NDS over TCP/IP)	p. 2-161
Restricting users of this machine (LDAP)	p. 2-165

2.1.7 Cooperating with applications

Title	Page
Using applications that communicate with this machine with TCP Socket	p. 2-185
Linking an OpenAPI system with this machine	p. 2-187
Using the FTP server and WebDAV server functions	p. 2-192
Canceling the connection with applications	p. 2-221

2.1.8 Reinforcing security

Title	Page
Registering the certificate of this machine for SSL communications	p. 2-18
Using device certificates depending on protocol	p. 2-26
Managing a device certificate	p. 2-28
Registering a user certificate in this machine	p. 2-30
Restricting the use of the SMB address registered in the address book	p. 2-45
Sending scanned data by E-mail (with digital signature)	p. 2-59
Sending scanned data by E-mail (Encryption by public key)	p. 2-62
Using Web services to secure communication from Vista/Server 2008 to this machine via SSL	p. 2-120
Using Web services to establish an SSL communication from this machine to Vista/Server 2008	p. 2-121
Filtering IP addresses	p. 2-170
Communicating using IPsec	p. 2-175
Using IEEE802.1X authentication	p. 2-180
Managing external certificates	p. 2-224
Limiting accessible destinations for each user	p. 2-226
Restricting Registration and Change by a User	p. 2-227
Configuring Copy Security Settings	p. 2-228
Configuring the administrator password	p. 2-230
Configuring the function permission of the public user	p. 2-231
Restricting specification of sending destinations	p. 2-235

2.1.9 Managing

Title	Page
Specifying the date and time of this machine	p. 2-35
Searching for the E-mail address in the LDAP server	p. 2-65
Displaying this machine on the network map	p. 2-123
Monitoring this machine by SNMP Manager	p. 2-124
Reporting the status of this machine (by E-mail)	p. 2-128
Reporting the status of this machine (TRAP)	p. 2-132
Reporting the counter information of this machine (by E-mail)	p. 2-135
Restricting users of this machine (MFP authentication)	p. 2-139
Restricting users of this machine (Active Directory)	p. 2-149
Restricting users of this machine (Windows domain or workgroup)	p. 2-154
Restricting users of this machine (NDS over IPX/SPX)	p. 2-158
Restricting users of this machine (NDS over TCP/IP)	p. 2-161
Restricting users of this machine (LDAP)	p. 2-165
Checking the counter of this machine	p. 2-195
Checking the machine ROM version	p. 2-196
Importing and exporting the machine configuration information	p. 2-197
Using the timer functions	p. 2-198
Displaying a network error code	p. 2-200
Initializing the configuration information	p. 2-201
Enhancing the functions of this machine	p. 2-202
Outputting job logs	p. 2-205
Configuring stamp settings	p. 2-216
Configuring settings for printing blank pages	p. 2-218
Configuring settings for skipping jobs	p. 2-218
Managing single color /2 Color output	p. 2-234
Using Data Management Utility	p. 2-295

2.1.10 Registering

Title	Page
Registering and editing font/macro	p. 2-204
Registering machine information	p. 2-207
Registering support information	p. 2-208
Configuring stamp settings	p. 2-216
Registering Address Book	p. 2-250
Registering a group	p. 2-256
Registering a program destination	p. 2-257
Registering Temporary One-Touch Destination	p. 2-272
Registering the E-mail subject and body	p. 2-273
Simplifying entering E-mail addresses	p. 2-277

2.1.11 Configuring User Box settings

Title	Page
Configuring the environmental settings for using User Boxes	p. 2-209
Specifying the maximum number of Public User Boxes	p. 2-233
Changing User Box settings	p. 2-236
Creating new User Boxes	p. 2-238
Changing System User Box settings	p. 2-239
Creating a new System User Box	p. 2-241

2.1.12 Configuring print settings

Title	Page
Configuring initial settings for the printer function	p. 2-243
Configuring the initial settings for the PCL print function	p. 2-244
Configuring the initial settings for the PS print function	p. 2-245
Configuring the initial settings for the TIFF print function	p. 2-246
Configuring the initial settings for the XPS print function	p. 2-247
Specifying the timeout of the interface	p. 2-248
Disabling the direct print function	p. 2-248
Restricting users from obtaining device information using password	p. 2-249

2.1.13 Configuring fax settings

Title	Page
Configuring Header/Footer Position settings	p. 2-278
Configuring settings for telephone and fax lines	p. 2-279
Configuring settings to send or receive faxes	p. 2-280
Configuring settings for the fax functions	p. 2-282
Configuring PBX connection settings	p. 2-290
Configuring settings to print fax reports	p. 2-291
Using extension lines	p. 2-292
Registering the Sender Name and Fax ID	p. 2-293
Using a fax server	p. 2-274
Using the Fax Server Communicating in E-Mail Format	p. 2-220

2.2 Basic settings for TCP/IP communication

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

These settings are required before using this machine via the network.

NOTICE

To enable changed network settings, turn the main power of this machine off and on again.

To turn the main power switch off and on, first turn the main power off, and then on after 10 seconds or more has elapsed. Not doing so may result in an operation failure.

TCP/IP Settings

In the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] ► [1 TCP/IP Settings].

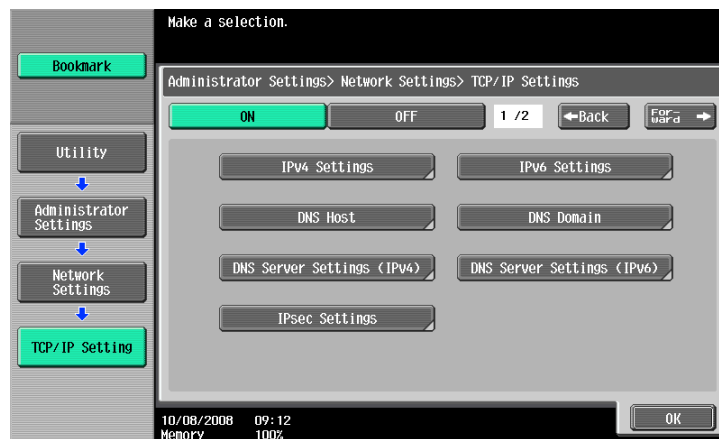


Reference

For details on how to go to the Network Settings screen, refer to page 3-4.

For details on the menu structure of the network setting in the control panel, refer to page 3-6.

For details on how to use this machine in the IPv6 environment, refer to page 2-172.



Item	Description	Prior check
[ON]/ [OFF]	Select [ON].	

[IPv4 Settings]

Item	Description	Prior check
IP application method	Select whether to automatically obtain the IP address or directly specify it.	IP application method
Auto Input	To automatically obtain the IP address, select the automatic retrieval method.	
IP Address	To directly specify the IP address, enter the IP address of this machine.	IP address of this machine
Subnet Mask	When directly entering the IP address, configure the subnet mask of the network to be connected.	Subnet mask of this machine
Default Gateway	When directly entering the IP address, specify the default gateway of the network to be connected.	Default gateway of this machine

[DNS Host]

Item	Description	Prior check
Dynamic DNS Settings	Select [Enable] when automatically registering the host name specified in [DNS Host Name] with the DNS server that supports the Dynamic DNS function.	Is Dynamic DNS supported?
DNS Host Name	Specify the host name of this machine (up to 63 characters).	

[DNS Domain]

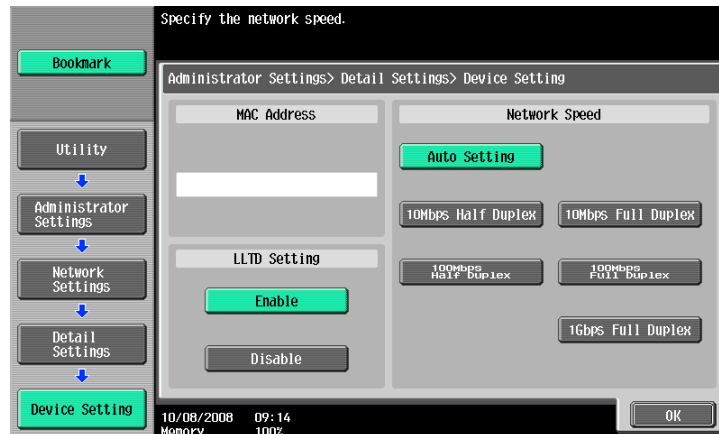
Item	Description	Prior check
Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Select whether to automatically obtain the domain name. This item is necessary when DHCP is enabled.	Can it be obtained automatically using DHCP?
Search Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Select whether to automatically obtain the search domain name. This item is necessary when DHCP is enabled.	Can it be obtained automatically using DHCP?
Default DNS Domain Name	When not automatically obtaining the domain name, specify the name of the domain that contains this machine (up to 255 characters, including the host name).	Default Domain Name
DNS Search Domain Name 1 to DNS Search Domain Name 3	Specify the DNS search domain name (up to 253 characters).	

[DNS Server Settings (IPv4)]

Item	Description	Prior check
DNS Server Auto Obtain	Select whether to automatically obtain the DNS server address. This item is necessary when DHCP is enabled.	Can it be obtained automatically using DHCP?
Primary DNS Server	Enter the address of the primary DNS server if you do not obtain the DNS server address automatically.	Server address
Secondary DNS Server 1 to Secondary DNS Server 2	Specify the addresses of the secondary DNS servers.	Server address

Device Setting

In the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] ►► [Forward] ►► [5 Detail Settings] ►► [1 Device Setting].



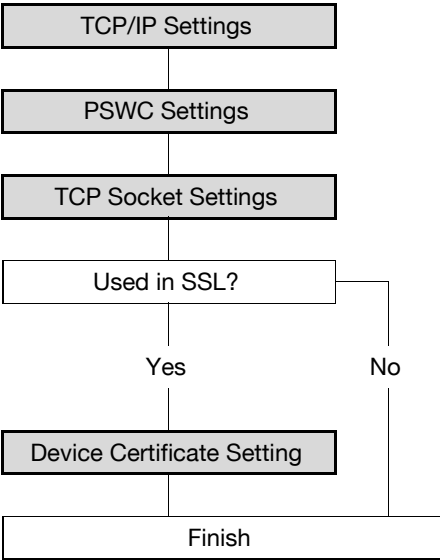
Item	Description	Prior check
MAC Address	Displays the MAC address of the network interface card of this machine.	
Network Speed	Specify the network speed.	

2.3 Using PageScope Web Connection

Configure settings to use PageScope Web Connection.

PageScope Web Connection is a device management utility that is supported by the HTTP server built into this machine. Start the Web browser on the computer via the network; you can change the settings of this machine or check the status of this machine. You can also handle some settings, which are to be configured on the control panel of this machine, through your computer.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.3.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

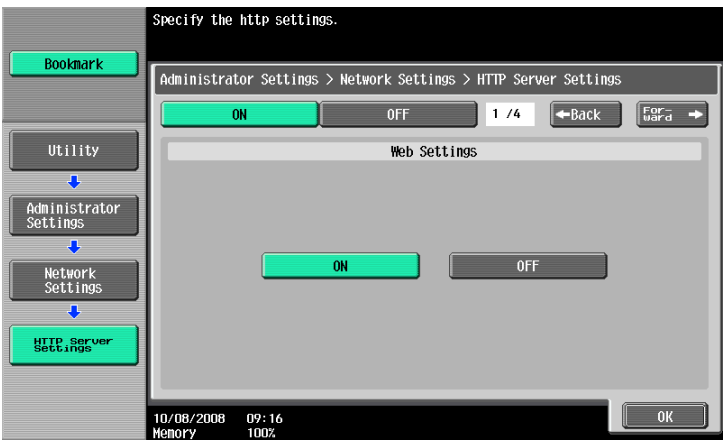
2.3.2 PSWC Settings

In the Administrator Settings screen of the control panel, select [Network Settings] ► [3 HTTP Server Settings].



Reference

For details on how to go to the Network Settings screen, refer to page 3-4.



Item	Description	Prior check
PSWC Settings	Select [ON].	

2.3.3 TCP Socket Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "TCP Socket Setting".



Reference

For details on how to log in to the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, refer to page 2-13.

The screenshot shows the 'TCP Socket Setting' page. At the top, there's a header with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below this, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. A navigation menu on the left lists various settings: TCP/IP Setting, E-mail Setting, LDAP Setting, IPP Setting, FTP Setting, SNMP Setting, SMB Setting, Web Service Settings, Bonjour Setting, NetWare Setting, AppleTalk Setting, Network Fax Setting, WebDAV Settings, OpenAPI Setting, **TCP Socket Setting** (highlighted), IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting, and LLTD Setting. The main content area is titled 'TCP Socket Setting' and includes a note: '(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket.)'. It contains three settings: 'TCP Socket' (checked), 'Use SSL/TLS' (unchecked), and 'TCP Socket(ASCII Mode)' (checked). Each has a 'Port Number' field with a value (59158, 59159, and 59160 respectively) and a range '(1-65535)'. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
TCP Socket (ASCII Mode)	Select this check box to use PageScope Web Connection in the flash format.	
Port Number (ASCII Mode)	Enter the port number.	

2.3.4 Device Certificate Setting

Configure settings for the encrypting communication from a computer to this machine using SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.4 Logging in to the administrator mode

To configure this machine with PageScope Web Connection, log in to the administrator mode. The following shows a procedure to log in to the administrator mode.

Reference

- If you are already logging in to the administrator mode, you cannot use the control panel of this machine to perform operations.
- Depending on the status of this machine, you may not be able to log in to the administrator mode.
- If you access PageScope Web Connection while User Authentication or Account Track is not enabled, you will see the screen displayed when you logged in as the public user. To log in as an administrator, log out from the public user mode once.

1 In the login page, select "Administrator", and click [Login].

- If necessary, select the language and view mode.
- The flash display can be restricted if necessary. For details on configuring the setting, refer to page 2-219.
- Selecting the "Display dialog box in case of warning" check box displays a dialog box when a warning has occurred during operation.

Language Panel Language (Panel Language) ▼

Login

☐ Public User

☒ Registered User

User Name

Password

☐ Administrator

View Mode ☐ Flash ☒ HTML

Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.

User Assist ☐ Display dialog box in case of warning.

Login

Starting-up Data Management Utility

Flash Player is required to use the Data Management Utility.

[Manage Copy Protect Data](#)

[Manage Stamp Data](#)

[Manage Font/Macro \(*1\)](#)

(*1) Can only run on Windows Internet Explorer and Flash Player Version 9 and above environments.

2 Enter the administrator password of this machine.

- If the number of passwords you entered by mistake exceeds the specified count while "Prohibited Functions When Authentication Error" is set to "Mode 2" in Administrator Settings, you cannot log in to the administrator mode.
- You can specify whether to use Popup Help in "Help Display Setting". For details, refer to page 2-15.

3 Click [OK].

The top menu appears in the administrator mode.



Reference

You can select the display mode of the PageScope Web Connection administrator mode from "Tab Function Display" or "List Function Display".

This manual shows an example where the "List Function Display" is set as the display mode.

2.5 Using Popup Help

You can use Popup Help on the Network page of PageScope Web Connection.

Selecting a specific item in a page using On-Mouse or On-Focus (click) displays the explanation of the item in a popup window, so you can specify each item while checking its meaning.

Reference

- Help can be displayed only for network settings.
- Popup help can be displayed using two methods: On-Mouse and On-Focus (click). Whether to use On-Mouse or On-Focus can be specified individually.

Help Display Setting

PageScope Web Connection

Select Login

☒ Administrator (Admin Mode)
☐ Administrator (User Mode)

Password

Help Display Setting

Help Display is a network-only function.

On Mouse

On Focus

Item	Description
On-Mouse View	Select whether to display popup help using On-Mouse. To use On-Mouse, place the mouse over the desired setting item; its explanation appears on the right of page.
On-Focus View	Select whether to display popup help using On-Focus. To use On-Focus, click the desired setting item entry area or option; its explanation appears on the right of the page.

Popup Help Display Example

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network Display To Main Menu

TCP/IP Setting

E-mail Setting

LDAP Setting

IPP Setting

FTP Setting

SNMP Setting

SMB Setting

Web Service Settings

Bonjour Setting

NetWare Setting

AppleTalk Setting

Network Fax Setting

TCP Socket Setting

(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket)

☒ TCP Socket
 Port Number (1-65535)

☐ Use SSL/TLS
 Port No.(SSL) (1-65535)

☒ TCP Socket(ASCII Mode)
 Port No.(ASCII Mode) (1-65535)

TCP Socket Setting

Configure TCP Socket settings.
Configure these settings to use an application that links to the machine.

To make changes to the settings take effect, the power of the machine must be turned OFF and then ON.

2.6 Configuring Settings for each Purpose via Wizard

"Setting for each purpose" allows you to easily configure settings for using the following functions according to the instructions shown by a wizard.

"Configure the settings for sending a scanned document"

- "Send scanned data by E-mail"
- "Send scanned data by E-mail (with digital signature)"
- "Send scanned data by E-mail (Encryption by public key)"

"Configure the network print settings"

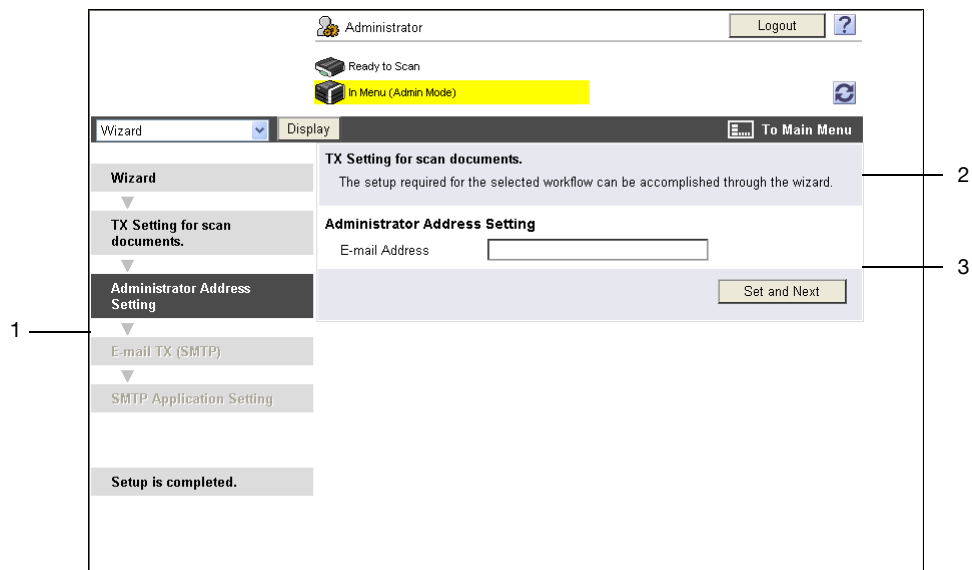
- "LPR printing"
- "Print by RAW port"
- "Print by SMB"

"Restricting users of this machine"

- "Not Authenticate"
- "Manage by User Authentication Only"
- "Manage by Organization Unit Only"
- "Manage by User Authentication + Organization Unit"
- "Manage by External Authentication Server (ActiveDirectory)"

2.6.1 Screen Components

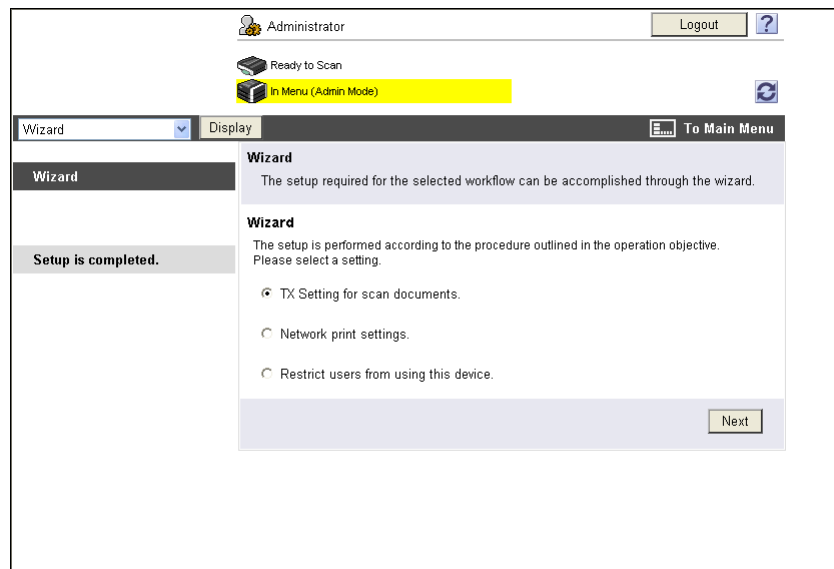
The "Setting for each purpose" page has the following components.



No.	Item	Description
1	Flow	Displays a setting flow to use the desired function. The currently enabled items are displayed in dark gray.
2	View Purpose	Displays the selected purpose.
3	View Settings	Displays settings.

2.6.2 Setting for each purpose

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select Setting for each purpose. Select the desired purpose, and configure its setting according to the instructions shown by the wizard.



Reference

- To return to the previous setting item during the setting procedure, click the desired setting item using Flow. If you return to the previous item, perform re-configuration from its settings.
- To end the setting procedure, click "End" in Flow.

2.7 Registering the certificate of this machine for SSL communications

Register the certificate of this machine (device certificate) to configure SSL communication settings.

The device certificate is registered in this machine at the time of shipment; therefore, SSL-encrypted communication is enabled immediately after installation.

This machine allows you to manage multiple device certificates. To register a new device certificate with this machine, create a self-signed certificate, or ask a certificate authority (CA) and install the issued certificate. You can also import an exported device certificate.

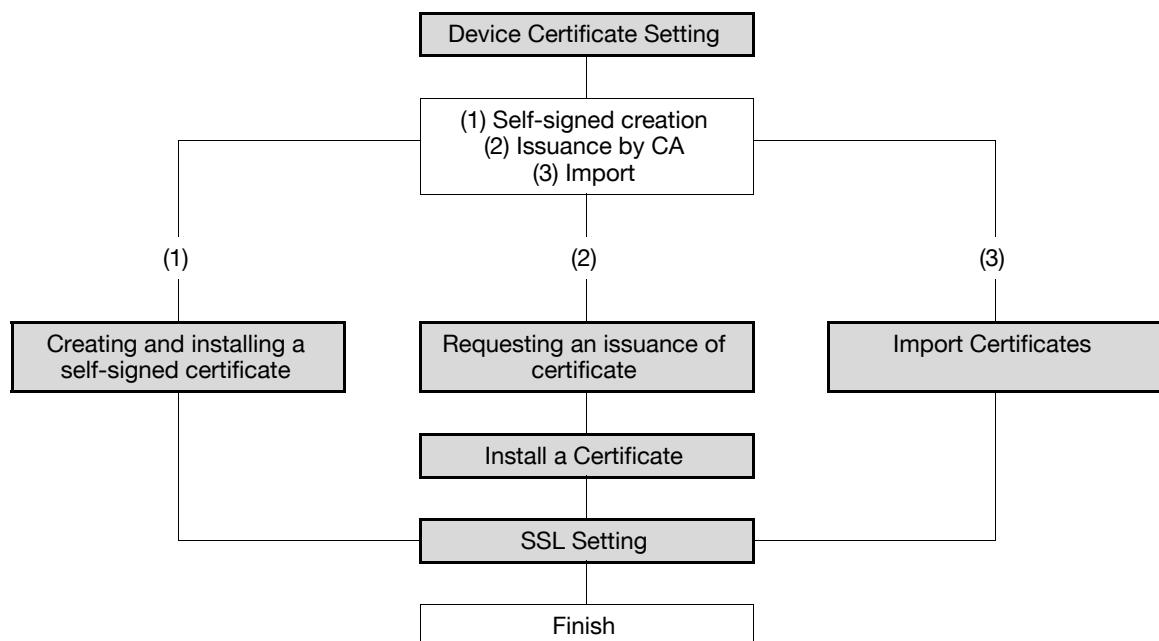
When using this machine for the following purposes, you can encrypt a communication from a client computer to this machine using SSL. For details, refer to the relevant reference page.

- Using PageScope Web Connection (p. 2-11)
- Print (IPPS) (p. 2-102)
- Using Web services to secure communication from Vista/Server 2008 to this machine via SSL (p. 2-120)
- Using IEEE802.1X authentication (for EAP-TLS) (p. 2-180)
- Linking an OpenAPI system with this machine (p. 2-187)
- Using the FTP server and WebDAV server functions (WebDAV server function only) (p. 2-192)

Also, if this machine is used for any of the following purposes, this machine submits (attaches) a device certificate that has been registered in this machine. For details, refer to the relevant reference page.

- Sending scanned data by E-mail (with digital signature) (p. 2-59)
- Using IEEE802.1X authentication (for EAP-TLS or PEAP) (p. 2-180)
- Using applications that communicate with this machine with TCP Socket (p. 2-185)
- To submit a certificate upon request from a server (SMTP, POP, LDAP, WebDAV)

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

This machine enables you to use multiple registered device certificates depending on protocols. For details on how to use device certificates depending on purposes, refer to page 2-26.

2.7.1 Device Certificate Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "Device Certificate Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Device Certificate Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The left sidebar has 'PKI Settings' expanded, with 'Device Certificate Setting' selected. The main content area is titled 'Device Certificate List' and includes a 'New Registration' button. Below this is a table with the following data:

Default	Issuer	Subject	Validity Period	Detail	Setting
☒	...	...	29/09/2009	Detail	Setting
☐	...	...	06/10/2009	Detail	Setting
☐	Requesting Certificate	...		Detail	Setting

At the bottom of the page are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
[New Registration]	Register a new device certificate. Select a registration method: creating a self-signed certificate, requesting an issuance of a certificate, or importing a certificate.	
Default	Specify the default device certificate. When not using device certificates depending on protocols, specify the default device certificate.	Default device certificate
Issuer	Displays an issuer of a device certificate.	
Subject	Displays a destination to issue a device certificate to.	
Validity Period	Displays the validity period of a device certificate.	
Detail	Enables you to confirm detailed information about a device certificate.	
Setting	Enables you to remove or export a device certificate if it is installed. If "Requesting Certificate" is displayed in "Issuer" of the device certificate, you can install a CA-issued certificate in this machine.	



Reference

For details on how to remove a device certificate, refer to page 2-25.

For details on how to export a device certificate, refer to page 2-28.

2.7.2 Creating and installing a self-signed certificate

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "Device Certificate Setting" ►► [New Registration] ►► "Create and install a self-signed Certificate".

The screenshot shows the 'Create and install a self-signed Certificate' dialog box. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'PKI Settings' expanded, and 'Device Certificate Setting' selected. The main area contains the following fields:

- Common Name:
- Organization:
- Organizational Unit:
- Locality:
- State/Province:
- Country:
- Admin. E-mail Address:
- Validity Start Date:
- Validity Period: Day(s) (1-3650)
- Encryption Key Type:

Buttons for 'OK' and 'Cancel' are at the bottom right.

Item	Description	Prior check
Common Name	Displays the IP address or domain name of this machine. This item shows the set value used to access this machine.	
Organization	Enter an organization or association name (up to 63 characters).	
Organizational Unit	Enter an account name (up to 63 characters). You can also specify a null.	
Locality	Enter a city, ward, town, or village name (up to 127 characters).	
State/Province	Enter a prefecture name (up to 127 characters).	
Country	Enter the country name with a country code defined in ISO03166 (2 characters). United States: US, Great Britain: GB, Italy: IT, Australia: AU, The Netherlands: NL, Canada: CA, Spain: ES, Czech Republic: CZ, China: CN, Denmark: DK, Germany: DE, Japan: JP, France: FR, Belgium: BE, Russia: RU	
Admin. E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address of the administrator (up to 128 characters, excluding a space). If the administrator address has been specified in "Machine Setting" in "System Settings", the registered E-mail address is displayed.	E-mail address of the administrator
Validity Start Date	Displays the validity period starting date. Displays the date and time (of this machine) when this page was displayed.	
Validity Period	Enter the validity period of a certificate with the number of days that have elapsed since the starting date.	
Encryption Key Type	Select a type of encryption key.	
[OK]	Click this button to create a self-signed certificate. It may take several minutes to create a certificate.	

2.7.3 Requesting an issuance of certificate

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "Device Certificate Setting" ►► [New Registration] ►► "Request a Certificate".

Item	Description	Prior check
Common Name	Displays the IP address or domain name of this machine. This item shows the set value used to access this machine.	
Organization	Enter an organization or association name (up to 63 characters).	
Organizational Unit	Enter an account name (up to 63 characters). You can also specify a null.	
Locality	Enter a city, ward, town, or village name (up to 128 characters, excluding a space).	
State/Province	Enter a prefecture name (up to 127 characters).	
Country	Enter the country name with a country code defined in ISO03166 (2 characters). United States: US, Great Britain: GB, Italy: IT, Australia: AU, The Netherlands: NL, Canada: CA, Spain: ES, Czech Republic: CZ, China: CN, Denmark: DK, Germany: DE, Japan: JP, France: FR, Belgium: BE, Russia: RU	
Admin. E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address of the administrator (up to 127 characters). If the administrator address has been specified in "Machine Setting" in "System Settings", the registered E-mail address is displayed.	E-mail address of the administrator
Encryption Key Type	Select a type of encryption key.	
[OK]	Click this button to create certificate signing request data.	

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Security Display To Main Menu

PKI Settings

- Device Certificate Setting
- SSL Setting
- Protocol Setting
- External Certificate Setting
- Certificate Verification Settings
- Address Reference Setting
- Restrict User Access
- Auto Logout
- Administrator Password Setting

Certificate Signing Request Data

-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE REQUEST-----
MIICBzCCAQAQAwwgcYxCzAJBgNVBAYTAkVW
MQowCAQYDVQQIEwExMQowCAQYDVQQH
EwExMQowCAQYDVQQKEwExMSMwIwYDVQQLE
xpLT05JQ0EgTUOTD0xUQSBIaXpodWw
QzY1MjEYMBMGAIUECzMMDAyaMDZCMTAzM
EQyMQowCAQYDVQQLEwExMTEwLWYDVQOQ
EyhLTUJUMTAzMEQyLnRyYWluaW5nLmNzby5rb
25pY2FtaW5vbHRhLmpwMRgwFgYJ
KoZlhcNAQkBFgl0b2dlQGhvc2ZUwggZBwDQYJKoZI

Save OK

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Signing Request Data	Displays request data to issue a device certificate. Send the displayed character string to the CA.	
[Save]	Click this button to save certificate signing request data in your computer as a file.	

2.7.4 Install a Certificate

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ► "PKI Setting" ► "Device Certificate Setting" ► [Setting] ► "Install a Certificate".

Ask the CA to issue a certificate, and install the certificate sent from the CA in this machine.

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Security Display To Main Menu

PKI Settings

- Device Certificate Setting
- SSL Setting
- Protocol Setting
- External Certificate Setting
- Certificate Verification Settings
- Address Reference Setting
- Restrict User Access
- Auto Logout
- Administrator Password Setting

Install a Certificate

Install Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
Install a Certificate	Pastes text data sent from the CA.	
[Install]	Click this button to install a certificate.	

2.7.5 Import Certificates

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "Device Certificate Setting" ►► "New Registration" ►► "Import Certificates".

Item	Description	Prior check
File	Specify the file name of the device certificate to be imported. Click [Browse] to specify where to save a certificate file.	
Password	Enter the password to decode the encrypted certificate file (up to 32 characters).	

2.7.6 SSL Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "SSL Setting".

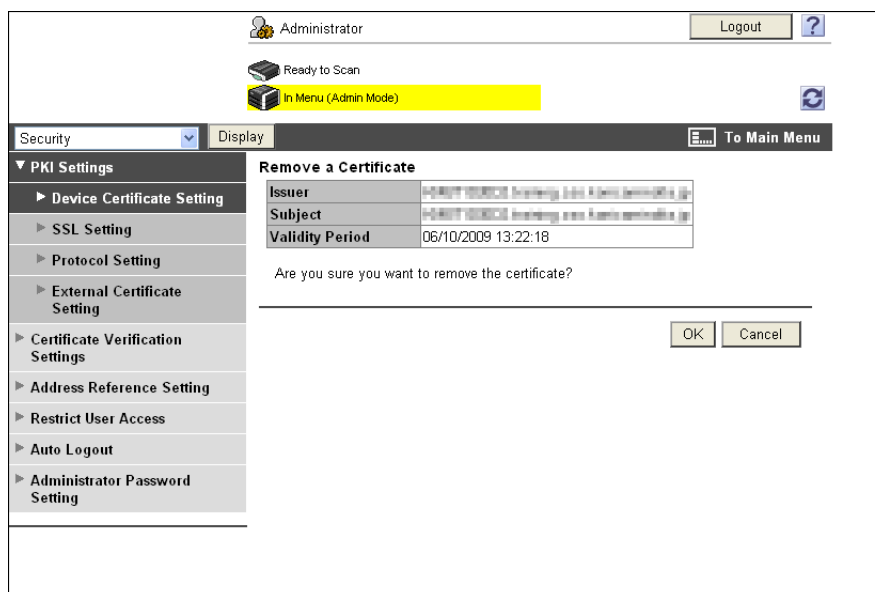
The screenshot shows the administrator interface of PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there is a header bar with 'Administrator' and a 'Logout' button. Below this, there are status indicators: 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. A navigation menu on the left lists various settings under 'PKI Settings', including 'Device Certificate Setting', 'SSL Setting' (which is selected), 'Protocol Setting', 'External Certificate Setting', 'Certificate Verification Settings', 'Address Reference Setting', 'Restrict User Access', 'Auto Logout', and 'Administrator Password Setting'. The main content area is titled 'SSL Setting' and contains two settings: 'Mode using SSL/TLS' set to 'Admin. Mode' and 'Encryption Strength' set to 'AES-256, 3DES-168, RC4-128, DES-56, RC4-40'. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right of the settings area.

Item	Description	Prior check
Mode using SSL/TLS	Select the PageScope Web Connection mode to apply SSL. Click "None" to disable SSL.	
Encryption Strength	Specify the SSL encryption strength.	

2.7.7 Removing a Certificate

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "Device Certificate Setting" ►► [Setting] ►► "Remove a Certificate".

Click [OK] to remove the registered device certificate.



Reference

- To remove the default device certificate while two or more certificates are registered, specify the other one as the default.
- If Enhanced Security Mode is enabled, the device certificate cannot be deleted.

2.8 Using device certificates depending on protocol

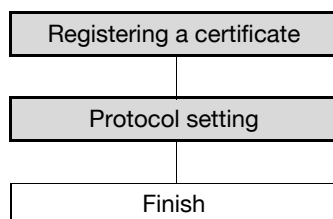
Configure settings to use device certificates depending on protocol.

This machine enables you to use multiple registered device certificates depending on protocols. Configure settings to fit your environment.

You can specify the device certificate to be used for each of the following protocols in this machine.

Protocol1	Protocol2	Description
SSL	http server	If this machine is used as an http server - If the client accesses PageScope Web Connection via HTTPS, it is used to encrypt communication from the client to this machine. - If the client prints data via IPPS, it is used to encrypt communication from the client to this machine.
SSL	E-mail Transmission (SMTP)	If this machine is used as an SMTP client This machine submits a device certificate upon request from the SMTP server.
SSL	E-Mail RX (POP)	If this machine is used as a POP client This machine submits a device certificate upon request from the POP server.
SSL	TCP Socket	If this machine is used as a TCP Socket client This machine submits a device certificate upon request from the TCP Socket server.
SSL	LDAP	If this machine is used as an LDAP client This machine submits a device certificate upon request from the LDAP server.
SSL	WebDAV client	If this machine is used as a WebDAV client This machine submits a device certificate upon request from the WebDAV server.
SSL	OpenAPI	If this machine is used as an OpenAPI server If the OpenAPI client accesses this machine via SSL, it is used to encrypt communication from the client to this machine.
SSL	Web service	If this machine is used as a Web service server If Windows Vista accesses this machine via HTTPS, it is used to encrypt communication from Vista to this machine.
IEEE802.1X		If this machine is used as an IEEE802.1X authentication client - If this machine is authenticated by the IEEE802.1X server via EAP-TLS, it is used to encrypt communication. - This machine submits a device certificate upon request from the server via EAP-TTLS or EAP-PEAP.
S/MIME		This machine attaches a device certificate when sending an S/MIME E-mail message.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

When not using device certificates depending on protocols, specify the device certificate shown in "Default Setting" of "Device Certificate Setting". For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.8.1 Registering a certificate

Register a device certificate.

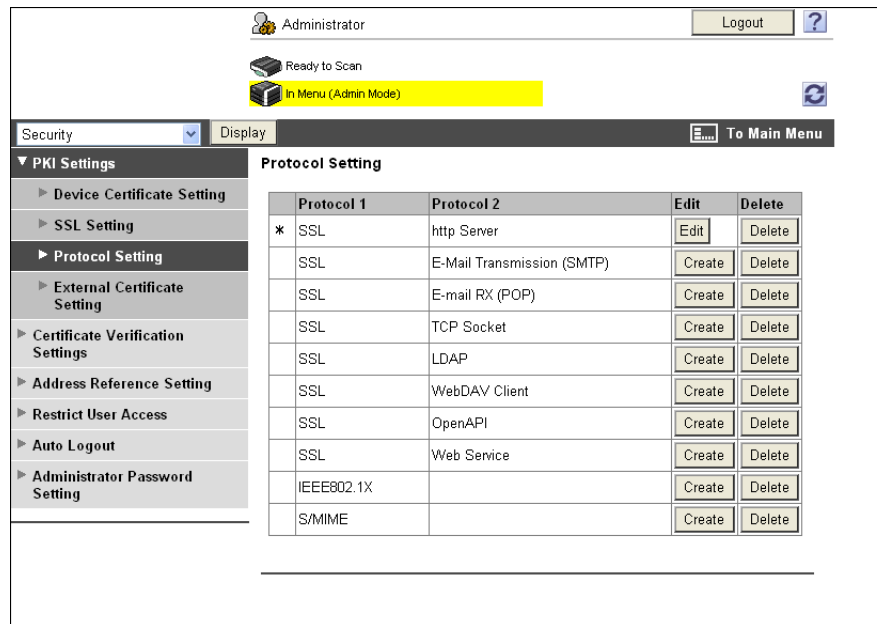
For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.8.2 Protocol setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "Protocol setting".

Reference

- The function that uses device certificates depending on protocols is not available when a device certificate is not registered or is only in the certificate signing request state.



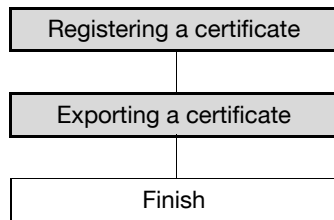
Item	Description	Prior check
Protocol1/2	Displays the classification for each protocol. If the target device certificate is registered, the protocol is marked by "*".	
[Create]	Select the protocol to specify a device certificate, and click [Create]. The device certificate registration page appears, and you can specify the target device certificate. If the device certificate is already registered, [Edit] appears. Clicking [Edit] enables you to change the target device certificate or confirm the details of a device certificate.	
[Delete]	If the target device certificate is registered, click this button to delete the registered information.	

2.9 Managing a device certificate

To manage a device certificate, use PageScope Web Connection to export it.

Obtaining a device certificate enables you to send an encrypted E-mail from the user to this machine using the obtained certificate (public key).

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

The user can also obtain a device certificate by receiving an E-mail with a digital signature from this machine. For details on how to send an E-mail with a digital signature from this machine, refer to page 2-59.

2.9.1 Registering a certificate

Register a device certificate.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.9.2 Exporting a certificate

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "PKI Setting" ►► "Device Certificate Setting" ►► [Setting] ►► "Export Certificate".

The screenshot shows the PageScope Web Connection interface. At the top, there is a header bar with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below the header, there is a 'Ready to Scan' status and an 'In Menu (Admin Mode)' button. The main menu on the left includes 'Security', 'Display', and a list of settings: 'PKI Settings' (expanded), 'Device Certificate Setting', 'SSL Setting', 'Protocol Setting', 'External Certificate Setting', 'Certificate Verification Settings', 'Address Reference Setting', 'Restrict User Access', 'Auto Logout', and 'Administrator Password Setting'. The 'Export Certificates (PKCS#12)' dialog box is open, showing fields for 'Password' and 'Retype Password', and 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Password	Enter the password (up to 32 characters). The entered password is required when importing a certificate.	
Retype Password	Reenter the password for confirmation (up to 32 characters).	
[OK]	Click this button to move to the Download page.	

Clicking [Download] downloads a certificate in your computer.

Preparation for download has been completed. Click the "Download" button to start the save. When the save is completed, click the "Back" button.

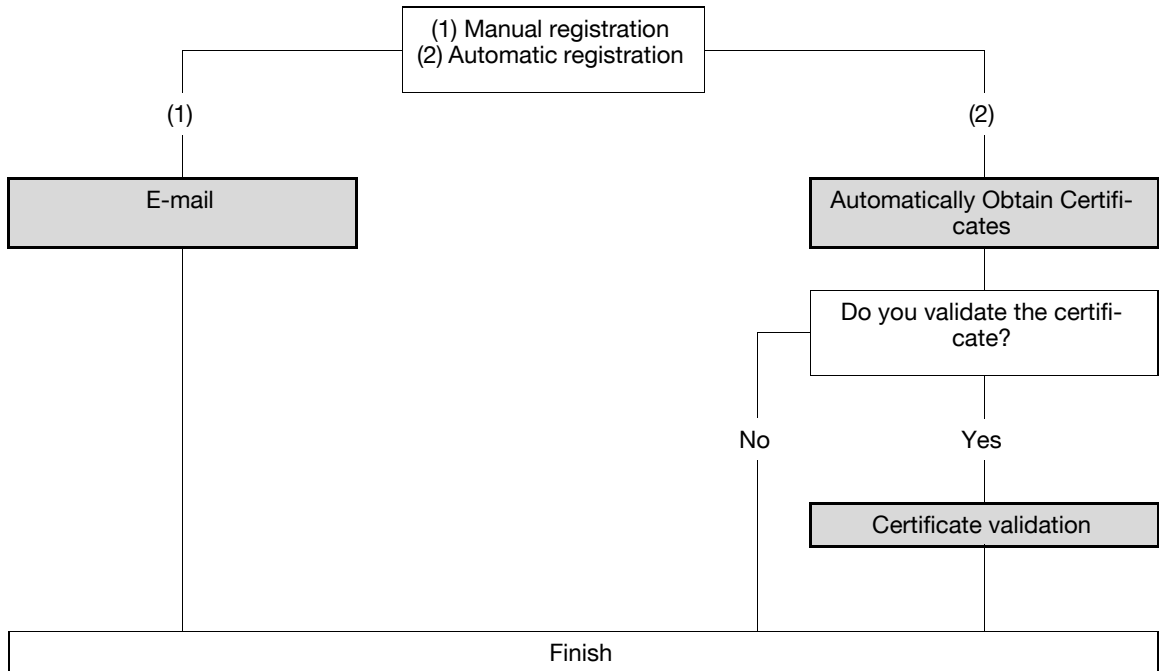
2.10 Registering a user certificate in this machine

Register a user certificate in this machine.

There are two methods of registering a certificate: (1) directly specifying a certificate when registering an E-mail address and (2) automatically registering a certificate by sending an E-mail with a digital signature to this machine.

Registering a user certificate in this machine enables you to send an encrypted E-mail from this machine to the user using the registered certificate (public key).

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.10.1 E-mail

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ► "Address Book" ► "Store Address" ► [New Registration] ► "E-mail".

The screenshot shows the 'Address Book (E-mail)' configuration interface. On the left, a sidebar lists various address book settings, with 'Store Address' currently selected. The main panel is titled 'Address Book (E-mail)' and contains several input fields and checkboxes. The 'No.' field has two radio button options: 'Use opening number' (selected) and 'Direct Input'. Below this is a 'Name' text field. The 'Index' section includes a text field and a dropdown menu set to 'ABC', with a 'Main' checkbox. The 'Destination Information' section features an 'E-mail Address' text field. Below this, the 'Registration of Certification Information' checkbox is checked, and there is a 'Browse...' button next to an empty text field. The 'Deletion of Certification Information' radio button is also present. At the bottom of the main panel is a 'Limiting Access to Destinations' section with a 'Display' button. The footer of the window contains 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Registration of Certification Information	Select the "Registration of Certification Information" check box. Click [Browse], and specify where to save the certificate information to be registered. Certificate information is supported only as a DER (Distinguished Encoding Rules) file. Clicking "Deletion of Certification Information" deletes the registered certificate information. You cannot register a certificate if the E-mail address to be registered as a destination does not match that of the user certificate. Before registering a certificate, check that those E-mail addresses are the same.	Where to save a certificate

2.10.2 Automatically Obtain Certificates

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-Mail Setting" ►► "S/MIME".

The screenshot shows the 'S/MIME' configuration page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The left-hand menu is expanded to 'E-mail Setting', and 'S/MIME' is selected. The main content area displays the following settings:

- S/MIME Comm. Setting:** ON (Note: To select ON, the administrator's e-mail address specified in the device registration needs to correspond with the e-mail address specified at the time of certification creation.)
- Digital Signature:** Do not add signature
- E-Mail Text Encrypt. Method:** 3DES
- Automatically Obtain Certificates:** ON
- Print S/MIME information:** ON
- Certificate Verification Level Settings:**
 - Validity Period: Confirm
 - Key Usage: Do Not Confirm
 - Chain: Do Not Confirm
 - Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm

At the bottom right of the settings area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
Automatically Obtain Certificates	Select "ON".	
Print S/MIME information	To print S/MIME information, select "ON".	

Reference

- Before you register a certificate, you must register the E-mail address of the user for the certificate with this machine.
- "Automatically Obtain Certificates" is available only when this machine can receive an E-mail. For details on settings for receiving an E-mail, refer to page 2-83.
- When the conditions above are satisfied, send an E-mail with a digital signature from a computer connected to a network to this machine. The received certificate is automatically registered if the user's E-mail address registered in this machine matches the E-mail address registered in the certificate.

2.10.3 Certificate validation

Certificate Verification Level Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-Mail Setting" ►► "S/MIME".

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Level Settings	Specify how to validate a certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the target certificate is within the validity period.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check that the target certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Verification Settings' page. At the top, there's a user profile 'Administrator' and a 'Logout' button. Below that, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The left sidebar has a 'Security' dropdown menu with options like 'PKI Settings', 'Certificate Verification Settings' (selected), 'Address Reference Setting', 'Restrict User Access', and 'Auto Logout'. The main content area is titled 'Certificate Verification Settings' and includes:

- 'Certificate Verification Settings' set to 'ON'.
- 'Timeout' set to '0' seconds (range 5-300).
- 'OCSP Service' checkbox is unchecked.
- 'URL' input field.
- 'Proxy Settings' section with:
 - 'Proxy Server Address' input field and a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name'.
 - 'Proxy Server Port Number' set to '0' (range 1-65535).
 - 'User Name' input field.
 - 'Password is changed' checkbox is checked.
 - 'Password' input field.
 - 'Address not using Proxy Server' input field and a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name'.

 At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to validate the certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	

Item	Description	Prior check
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

2.11 Specifying the date and time of this machine

Specify the date and time of the clock built into this machine.

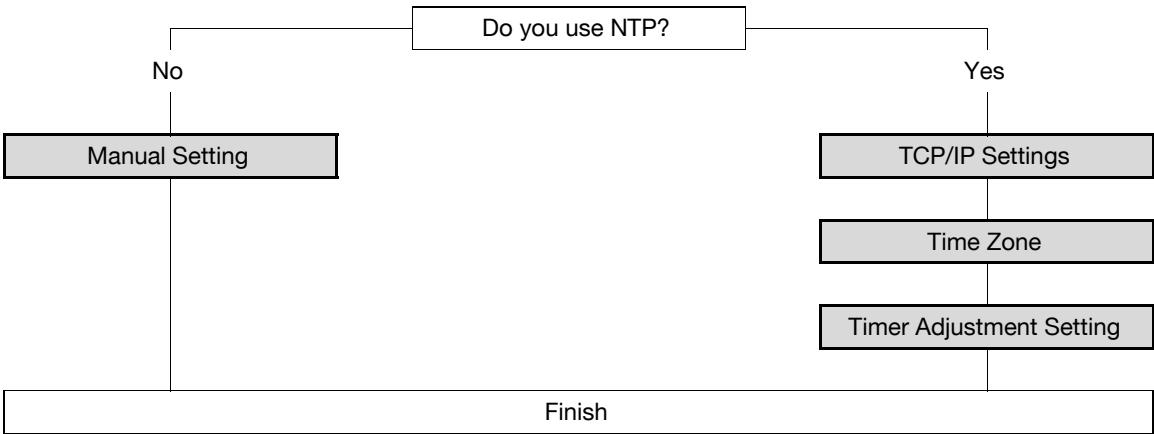
Select one of two procedures: manually specifying the date and time and obtaining them from the NTP server via the network.

Before using Fax in this machine, specify the date and time of this machine. When logging in to Active Directory, specify the date and time of this machine as required.

When using the following options, specify the date and time. For details, refer to the relevant reference page.

- Searching for the E-mail address in the LDAP server (p. 2-65)
- Restricting users of this machine (Active Directory) (p. 2-149)

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.11.1 Manual Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Date/Time Setting" ►► "Manual Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Manual Setting' screen in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The interface includes a top navigation bar with 'Maintenance' and 'Display' tabs, and a sidebar menu with various settings categories. The 'Date/Time Setting' category is expanded, and 'Manual Setting' is selected. The main content area displays fields for setting the date and time. The date is set to 2008-10-8, and the time is set to 11:58. The time zone is set to GMT 0:00. There is also a checkbox for 'Daylight Saving Time' and 'OK'/'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Year	Enter the year.	
Month	Enter the month.	
Day	Enter the day.	
Hour	Enter the hour.	
Minute	Enter the minute.	
Time Zone	Specify the time difference from GMT.	Time Zone
Daylight Saving Time	Specify the daylight saving time as required.	

2.11.2 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.11.3 Time Zone

Specify the time zone on the Manual Setting screen.

For details, refer to page 2-36.

2.11.4 Timer Adjustment Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Date/Time Setting" ►► "Timer Adjustment Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Time Adjustment Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The sidebar on the left lists various maintenance settings, with 'Date/Time Setting' expanded and 'Time Adjustment Setting' selected. The main content area displays the following settings:

- Time Adjustment Setting:** ON (dropdown menu)
- Auto IPv6 Retrieval:** ON (dropdown menu)
- NTP Server Address:** 0.0.0.0 (text input field, with a note: "Please check to enter host name.")
- Port No.:** 123 (text input field, with a range note: "(1-65535)")
- Auto Time Adjustment:** OFF (dropdown menu)
- Polling Interval:** 24 (text input field, with a range note: "(1-240)")

At the bottom right of the settings area, there are three buttons: 'Adjust', 'OK', and 'Cancel'.

Item	Description	Prior check
Timer Adjustment Setting	Select "ON".	
Auto IPv6 Retrieval	To automatically obtain the IPv6 address of the NTP server, select "ON". This item is necessary when IPv6 is used while DHCPv6 is enabled.	Can the IPv6 address be obtained automatically?
NTP Server Address	Enter the NTP server address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Port No.	Enter the port number. Default setting: 123	Server port number
Auto Timer Adjustment	To automatically connect to the NTP server and correct the time, select "ON".	Can the time be corrected automatically?
Polling Interval	When automatically correcting the time, specify its interval on a hour basis.	
[Adjust]	Click this button to connect to the NTP server in the specified conditions and adjust the time.	

2.12 Sending scanned data to a computer on network

Configure settings to send scanned data to a computer on network (SMB transmission).

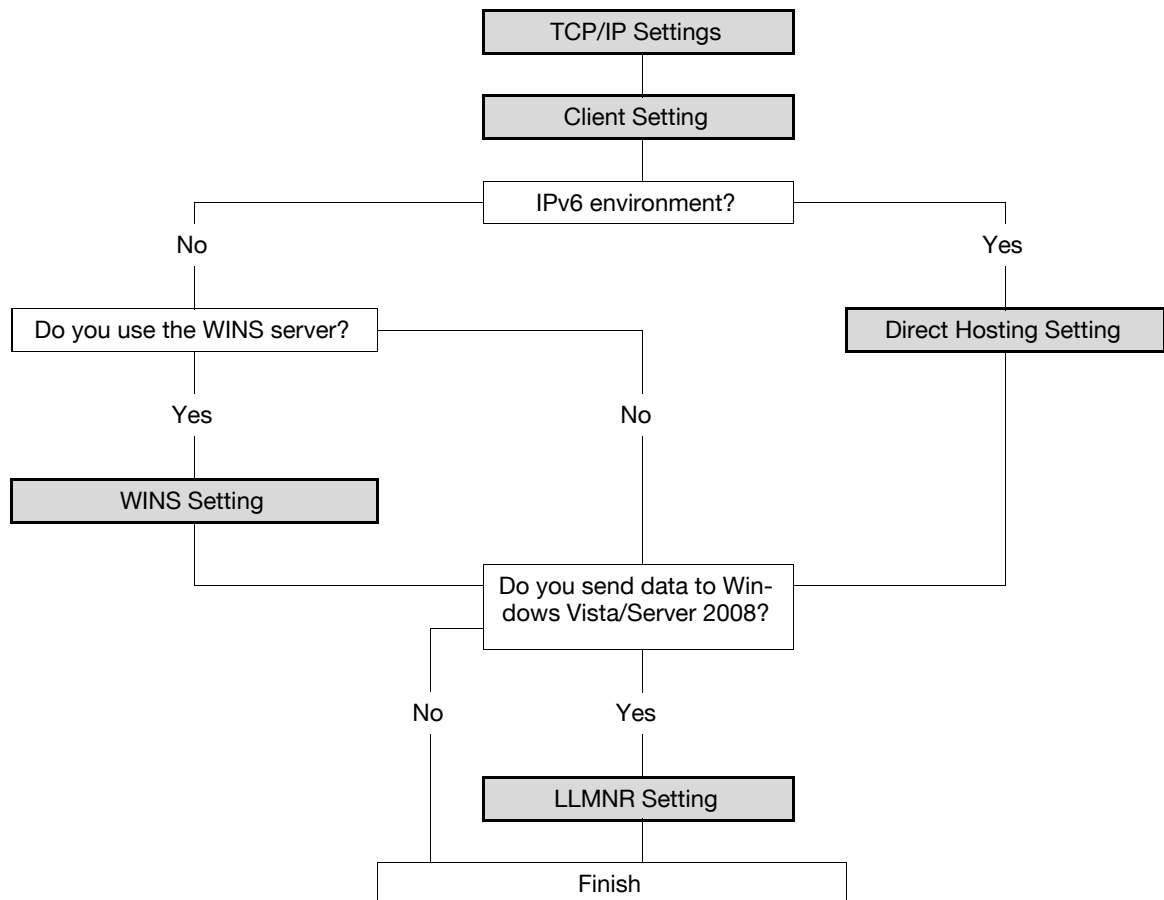
Before SMB transmission, specify a Windows shared file in the computer to receive data in. If Samba is installed, data can be transmitted to a computer that is equipped with a non-Windows OS. SMB transmission is also available for the CIFS service (TCP/IP) that is running on the NetWare server.

To specify a computer over a router using the Windows name (NetBIOS name), use the WINS server.

To perform SMB sending in the IPv6 environment, enable the direct hosting service. Enabling the direct hosting service allows you to specify the destination computer with the IPv6 address or computer name (host name). When specify the destination with the computer name (host name), use the DNS server to obtain the IPv6 address.

To send data to a computer with Windows Vista/Server 2008 installed, you can perform name resolution using the LLMNR function even if DNS server is not present. To perform the name resolution especially in the IPv6-only communication environment under Windows Vista/Server 2008, it will be convenient to enable the LLMNR function.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to register the SMB address, refer to page 2-250.

For details on SMB file sending, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.12.1 TCP/IP Settings

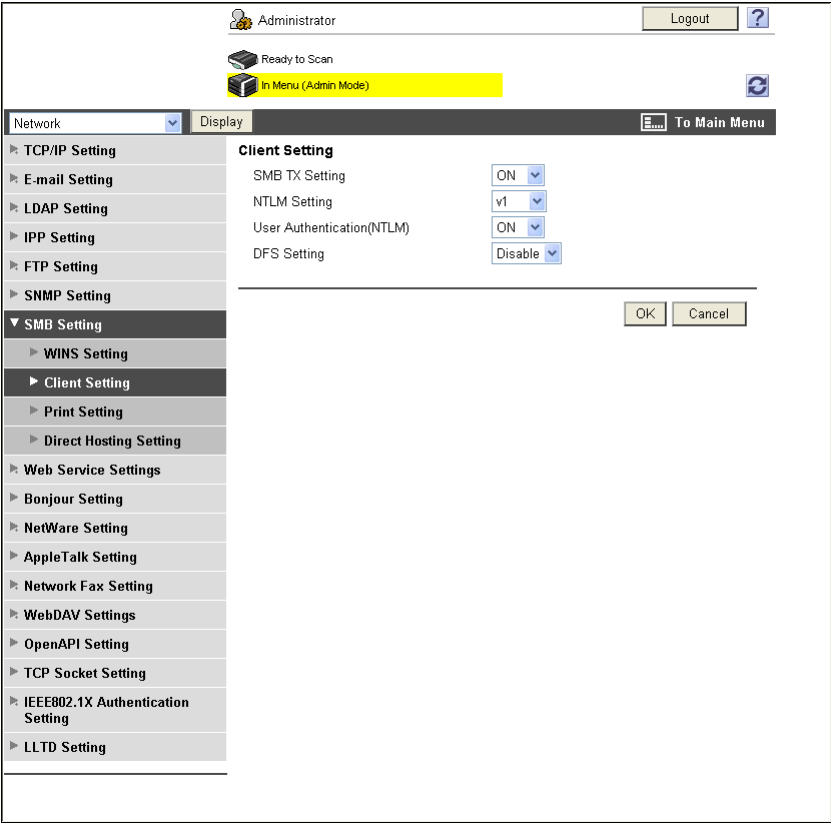
Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

- To specify the destination computer with the computer name (host name) for SMB transmission in IPv6 environment, prepare a DNS server and configure DNS settings in this machine.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.12.2 Client Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SMB Setting" ►► "Client Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
SMB TX Setting	Select "ON".	
NTLM setting	Specify the NTLM version. To perform SMB transmission for Windows sharing (Mac OSX) or Samba (Linux/Unix), select "v1". To perform SMB transmission for Windows 98SE or Windows Me, select "v1/v2" or "v1".	OS of destination computer
DFS setting	To perform SMB transmission in a DFS (Distributed File System) environment, select "Enable".	DFS environment?

2.12.3 WINS Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SMB Setting" ►► "WINS Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'WINS Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The top bar indicates the user is 'Administrator' and the system is 'Ready to Scan'. The left sidebar shows a tree view of settings, with 'SMB Setting' expanded and 'WINS Setting' selected. The main content area displays the following settings:

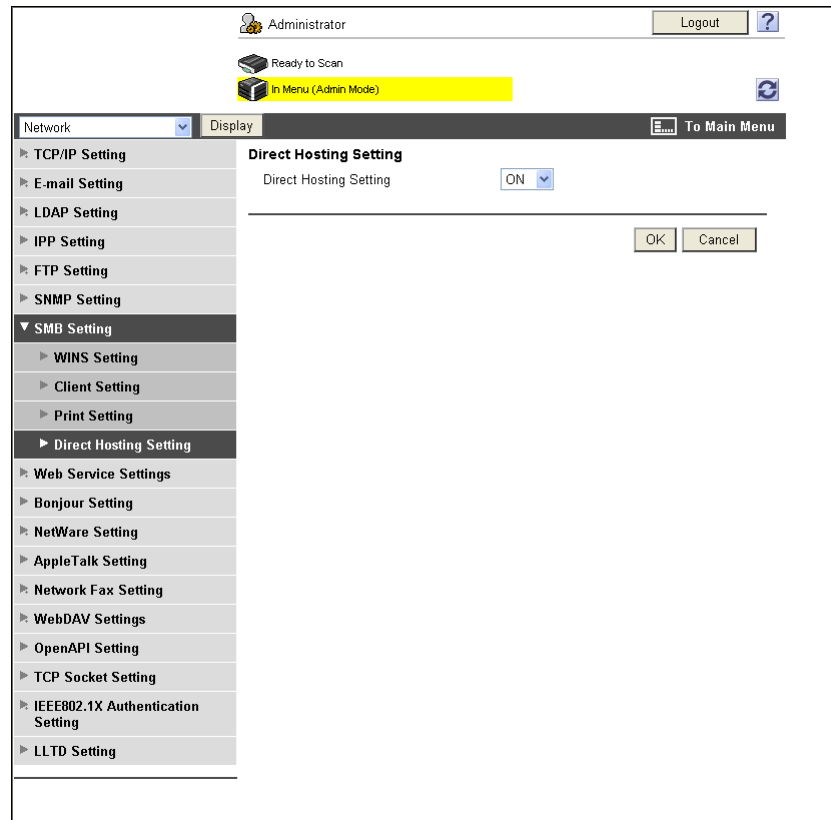
- WINS:** ON (dropdown)
- Auto Obtain Setting:** Enable (dropdown)
- WINS Server Address1:** 0.0.0.0 (text input)
- WINS Server Address2:** 0.0.0.0 (text input)
- Node Type Setting:** B Node (dropdown)

At the bottom right of the settings area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
WINS	To use the WINS server, select "ON".	
WINS Auto Obtain Setting	To automatically obtain the WINS server address, select "Enable". This item is necessary when DHCP is enabled.	Can it be obtained automatically using DHCP?
WINS Server Address 1 to WINS Server Address 2	Enter the WINS server address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255)	Server address
Node Type Setting	Specify the name resolution method. • B Node: Query by broadcast • P Node: Query the WINS server • M Node: Query by broadcast, and then query the WINS server • H Node: Query the WINS server, and then query by broadcast	

2.12.4 Direct Hosting Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SMB Setting" ►► "Direct Hosting Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
Direct Hosting Setting	To use IPv6 addresses for communication, select "ON".	IPv6 environment?

2.12.5 LLMNR Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "TCP/IP Settings" ►► "TCP/IP Settings".

Item	Description	Prior check
LLMNR Setting	To perform name resolution to send data to a computer with Windows Vista/Server 2008 installed in the environment where the DNS server is not running, select "Enable". To perform the name resolution especially in the IPv6-only communication environment, enable this setting.	- Is the computer Windows Vista/Server 2008? - Is the DNS server not used?

2.13 Sending scanned data to your computer (Scan to Home)

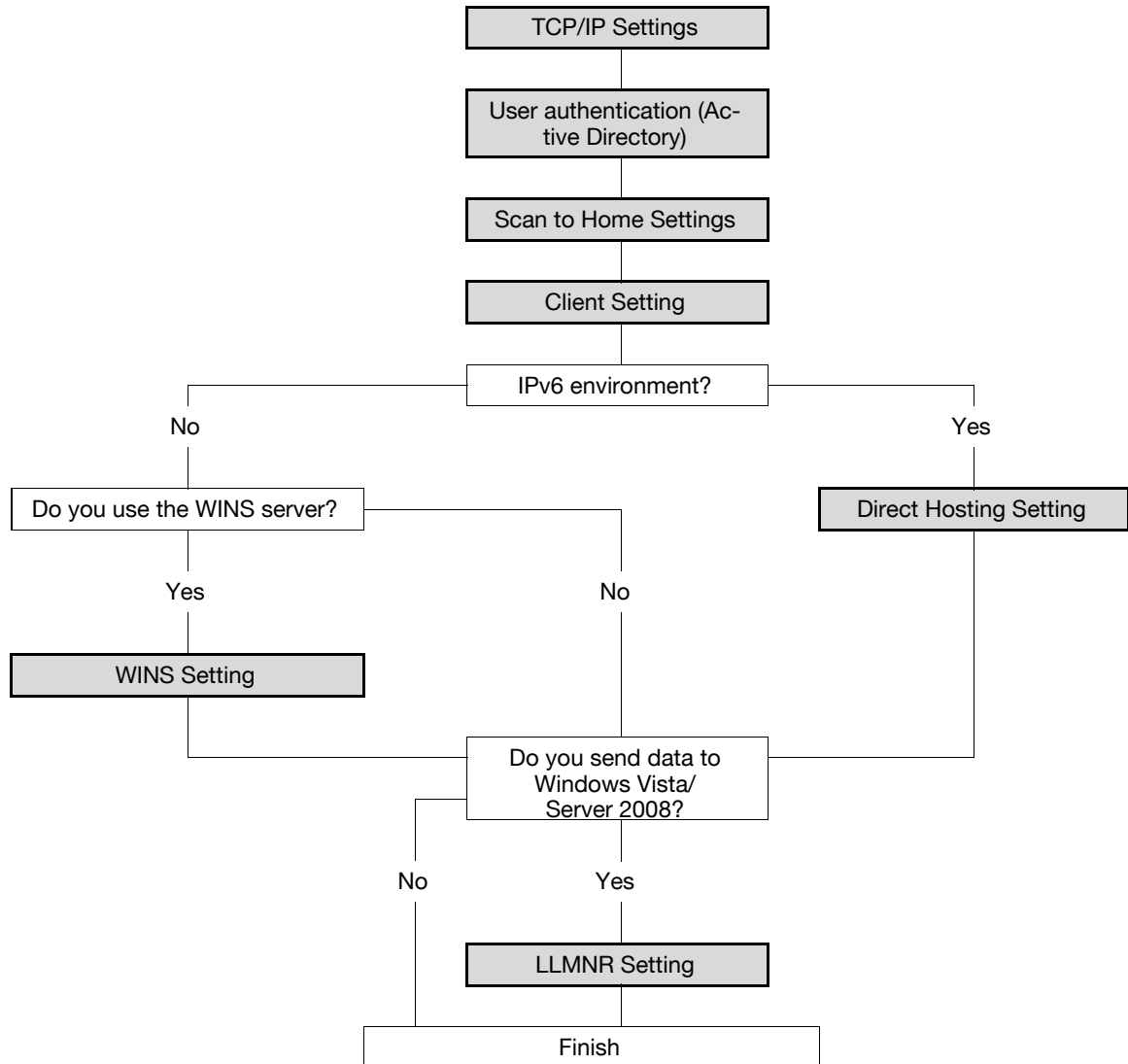
Configure settings to send scanned data to your computer.

This function is available when the user's Home folder position is registered after user authentication has been performed with Active Directory.

If the login user's Home folder is registered in Active Directory, the [Home] is displayed when the destination has been selected. Click the [Home] to enable you to easily send data to your Home folder.

To authenticate the user to send data to the Home folder, use the user name and password specified in "User Name" and "Password" that are authenticated by Active Directory.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

- To use the Scan to Home function, the Home folder of the user must be registered in Active Directory. Also, the user's E-mail address or fax number must be registered.
- When you register the location of the Home folder in Active Directory, use uppercase letters to specify a computer that has the Home folder using the NetBIOS name.
- For details on how to send a file to the Home folder using SMB, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.13.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

- To specify the destination computer with the computer name (host name) for SMB transmission in IPv6 environment, prepare a DNS server and configure DNS settings in this machine.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

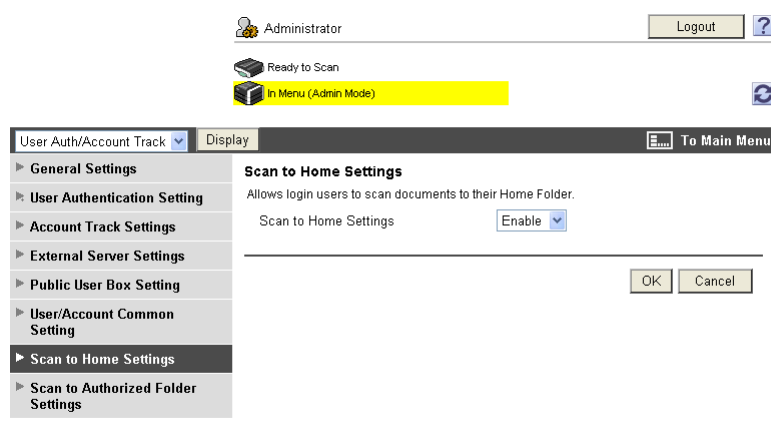
2.13.2 User authentication (Active Directory)

Configure settings to restrict users who use this machine with Active Directory.

For details, refer to page 2-149.

2.13.3 Scan to Home Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Authentication/Account Track" ►► "Scan to Home Settings".



Item	Description	Prior check
Scan to Home Settings	Select "Enable".	

2.13.4 Client Setting

Configure SMB client settings.

For details, refer to page 2-39.

2.13.5 WINS Setting

To perform SMB transmission via routers, configure the WINS server settings.

For details, refer to page 2-40.

2.13.6 Direct Hosting Setting

To perform SMB transmission in an IPv6 environment, enable the Direct Hosting service.

For details, refer to page 2-41.

2.13.7 LLMNR Setting

To perform name resolution in the environment configured to communicate with Windows Vista/Server 2008, and where the DNS server is not running, enable the LLMNR function.

For details, refer to page 2-41.

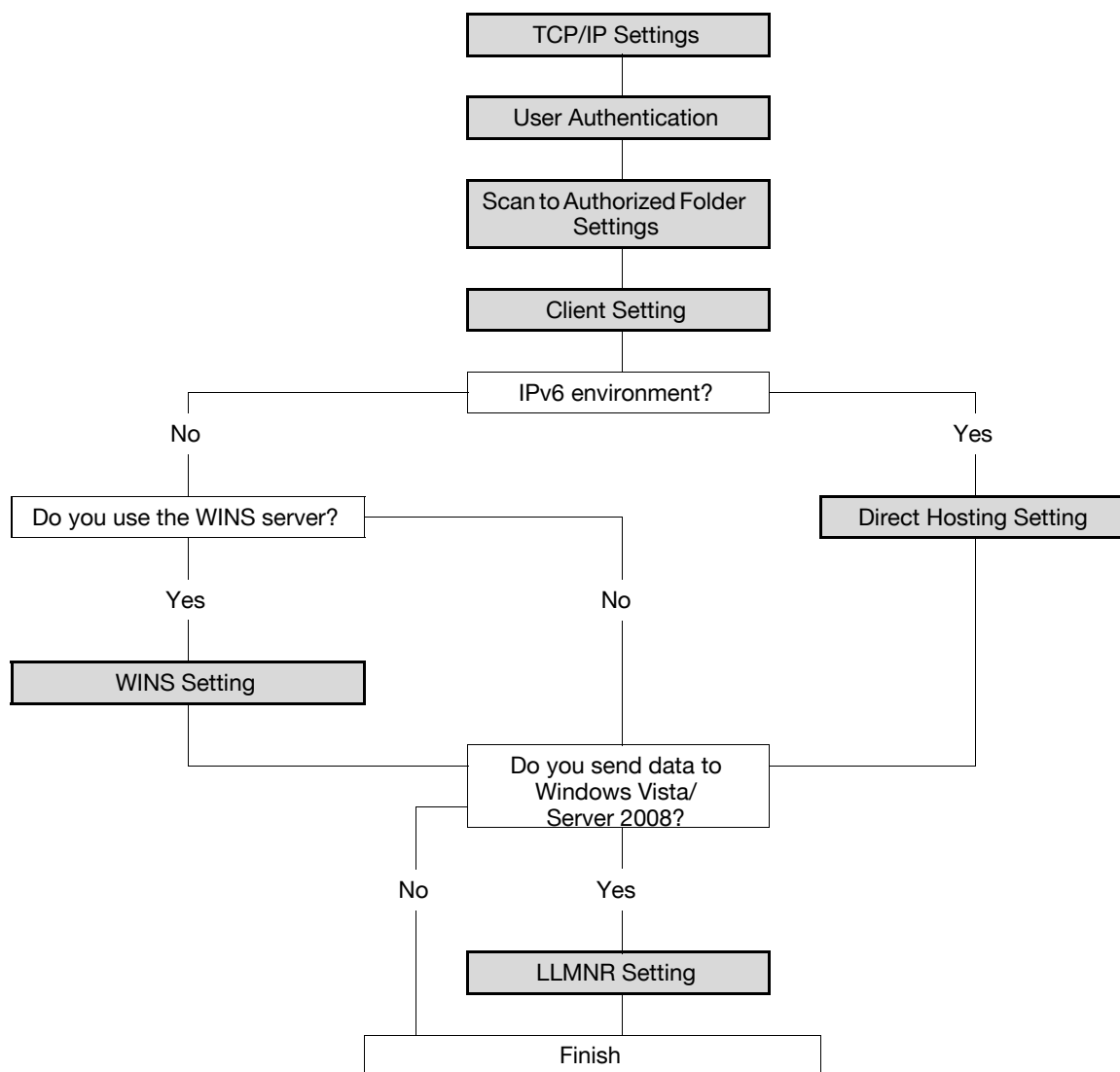
2.14 Restricting the use of the SMB address registered in the address book

Configure settings to restrict the use of the SMB address registered in the address book.

When the login user selects the required SMB address from the address book to send data, the system performs SMB authentication using the user name and password, which are specified in "User Name" and "Password" for user authentication. This allows you to restrict third party use of the SMB address because you do not need to register "User ID" and "Password" of the SMB address in the address book that anyone can access.

To use this function, do not enter any characters in "User ID" and "Password" of the SMB address.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

If "Scan to Authorized Folder Settings" is set to "Limit", you cannot use some functions. For details, refer to page 2-235.

For details on how to register the SMB address, refer to page 2-250.

2.14.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

- To specify the destination computer with the computer name (host name) for SMB transmission in IPv6 environment, prepare a DNS server and configure DNS settings in this machine.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.14.2 User Authentication

Configure settings to restrict users who use this machine.

For details, refer to the following reference pages.

- Restricting users of this machine (MFP authentication) (p. 2-139)
- Restricting users of this machine (Active Directory) (p. 2-149)
- Restricting users of this machine (Windows domain or workgroup) (p. 2-154)
- Restricting users of this machine (NDS over TCP/IP) (p. 2-161)
- Restricting users of this machine (LDAP) (p. 2-165)

2.14.3 Scan to Authorized Folder Settings

Configure settings to restrict the sending destinations.

For details, refer to page 2-235.

2.14.4 Client Setting

Configure SMB client settings.

For details, refer to page 2-39.

2.14.5 WINS Setting

To perform SMB transmission via routers, configure the WINS server settings.

For details, refer to page 2-40.

2.14.6 Direct Hosting Setting

To perform SMB transmission in an IPv6 environment, enable the Direct Hosting service.

For details, refer to page 2-41.

2.14.7 LLMNR Setting

To perform name resolution in the environment configured to communicate with Windows Vista/Server 2008, and where the DNS server is not running, enable the LLMNR function.

For details, refer to page 2-41.

2.15 Sending scanned data by E-mail

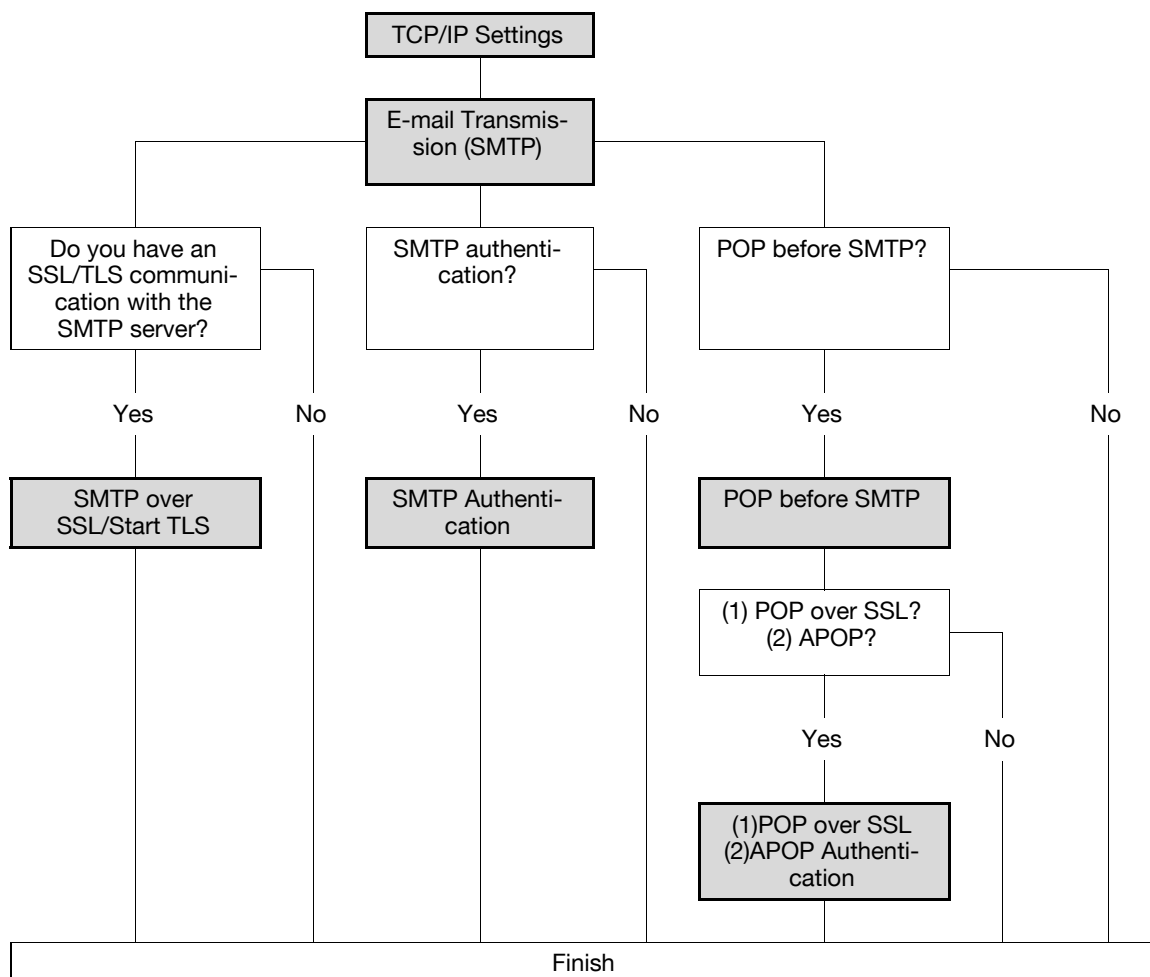
Configure settings to send scanned data to the specified E-mail address as an attachment file.

These settings are available when the SMTP server supports SMTP over SSL or Start TLS. SSL/TLS enables data encryption, assuring a secure communication between this machine and the SMTP server.

If SMTP authentication is requested from the SMTP server, configure its settings.

If POP before SMTP authentication is requested from the SMTP server, configure its settings. These settings are available when the POP server supports POP over SSL or APOP authentication.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings.



Reference

For details on how to register E-mail addresses, refer to page 2-250.

For details on how to send a file by E-mail, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.15.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.15.2 E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail Transmission (SMTP)".

The screenshot displays the "E-mail TX (SMTP)" configuration page. On the left, a navigation menu lists various settings categories, with "E-mail TX (SMTP)" selected. The main area contains the following settings:

- E-mail TX Setting:** Checked.
- Scan to E-mail:** ON (dropdown).
- E-mail Notification:** ON (dropdown).
- Total Counter Notification:** ON (dropdown).
- SMTP Server Address:** 0.0.0.0 (text field). A checkbox "Please check to enter host name." is present.
- Use SSL/TLS:** OFF (dropdown).
- Port Number:** 25 (text field, range 1-65535).
- Port No. (SSL):** 465 (text field, range 1-65535).
- Certificate Verification Level Settings:**
 - Validity Period: Confirm (dropdown).
 - CN: Do Not Confirm (dropdown).
 - Key Usage: Do Not Confirm (dropdown).
 - Chain: Do Not Confirm (dropdown).
 - Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm (dropdown).
- Connection Timeout:** 60 sec. (dropdown).
- Max Mail Size:** No Limit (dropdown).
- Server Capacity:** (text field, range 1-100) Mbyte.
- Admin. E-mail Address:** admin@test.local (text field).
- Device Mail Address:** (text field).
- Authentication Setting:**
 - POP before SMTP: OFF (dropdown).
 - POP before SMTP Time: 5 sec. (0-60) (text field).
 - SMTP Authentication: (checkbox, unchecked).
 - User ID: (text field).
 - Password is changed: (checkbox, unchecked).
 - Password: (text field).
 - Domain Name: (text field).
 - Authentication Setting: Set Value (dropdown).
- Binary Division:** (checkbox, unchecked).
- Divided Mail Size:** (text field, range 100-15000, Step 100) Kbyte.

At the bottom right, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
E-mail TX Setting	Select the "E-mail TX Setting" check box.	
Scan to E-mail	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Enter the SMTP server address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 25	Server port number
Connection Timeout	Specify the timeout period for a communication with a server.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of an E-mail to be sent.	
Server Capacity	Enter the SMTP server capacity. A mail that exceeds the upper limit of the server capacity will be discarded. If an E-mail is divided, this setting is made invalid.	Server reception limit

Item	Description	Prior check
Admin. E-mail Address	Displays the E-mail address of the administrator.	
Binary Division	Select this check box to divide an E-mail. If the E-mail software that received an E-mail does not have a restoration function, you may not be able to read the E-mail.	Restoration function of E-mail software
Divided Mail Size	Enter the divided mail size to divide an E-mail.	Server reception limit

Admin. E-mail Address

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ►► "Machine Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Machine Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The page has a sidebar on the left with various settings categories. The main content area is titled 'Machine Setting' and contains several input fields for configuration. The fields are: Device Location, Administrator Registration, Administrator Name, E-mail Address, Extension No., Input Machine Address, Device Name, and E-mail Address. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right of the form.

Item	Description	Prior check
E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address of the administrator (up to 128 characters). If the administrator's E-mail address is omitted, you will not be able to send an E-mail. Usually, the administrator's E-mail address is set to the From address of the E-mail to be sent from this machine. To enable user authentication, the user's E-mail address is set to the From address. However, when the user's E-mail address is not registered or S/MIME is used to send an E-mail, the administrator's E-mail address is set to the From address. If "Security" ►► "Restrict User Access" ►► "Change the "From" Address" is set to "Enable", the user can change the From address before sending an E-mail.	E-mail address of the administrator

2.15.3 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail Transmission (SMTP)".

Item	Description	Prior check
Use SSL/TLS	To encrypt a communication between this machine and the SMTP server using SSL/TLS, select "SMTP over SSL" or "Start TLS".	Does the server support SSL or Start TLS?
Port Number	Enter a port number if "Start TLS" is selected. Default setting: 25	Server port number
Port Number (SSL)	Enter the port number to be used for SSL communication if "SMTP over SSL" is selected. Default setting: 465	Server port number
Certificate Verification Level Settings	To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.	
CN	Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Verification Settings' page. The sidebar on the left has 'Security' selected, and the main area displays the following settings:

- Certificate Verification Settings:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- Timeout:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(5-300) sec'.
- OCSP Service:** An unchecked checkbox.
- URL:** A text input field.
- Proxy Settings:**
 - Proxy Server Address:** A text input field with a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name'.
 - Proxy Server Port Number:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(1-65535)'.
 - User Name:** A text input field.
 - Password is changed:** A checked checkbox.
 - Password:** A text input field.
 - Address not using Proxy Server:** A text input field with a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name'.

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to verify the server certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

2.15.4 SMTP Authentication

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail Transmission (SMTP)".

Item	Description	Prior check
SMTP Authentication	Select this check box to perform SMTP authentication. For SMTP authentication, the authentication method with the highest strength that is supported by the SMTP server is automatically selected from Digest-MD5, CRAM-MD5, PLAIN, and LOGIN.	Is SMTP authentication requested by the server?
User ID	Enter the user ID for SMTP authentication (up to 255 bytes).	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password for SMTP authentication (up to 128 bytes, excluding space and double quotation ("")).	
Domain name	Enter the domain name (realm) for SMTP authentication (up to 255 characters). This setting is required when the authentication method is set to Digest-MD5. If there is only one user domain (realm), you do not need to enter this item because the domain name is reported from the SMTP server at initial communication, and with the domain name, a communication is established automatically. If there are two or more user domains (realm), specify the user domain name.	Authentication Method
Authentication Setting	For user authentication, select whether to synchronize SMTP authentication with user authentication. Selecting "User Authentication" uses the user name and password for user authentication as those for SMTP authentication. Selecting "Set Value" uses the values specified in "User ID" and "Password".	Synchronized with user authentication?

2.15.5 POP before SMTP

POP before SMTP

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail Transmission (SMTP)".

Item	Description	Prior check
POP before SMTP	Select "ON" to perform POP before SMTP authentication.	Is POP before SMTP authentication requested by the server?
POP before SMTP Time	Enter the period from a time you log in to the POP server to a time you access the SMTP server. If the POP and SMTP servers are in different computers, it will take time to notify the SMTP server that you have logged in to the POP server. Therefore, if a too short time is specified, sending of E-mails may fail.	Are the POP and SMTP servers in different computers?

E-Mail RX (POP)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail RX (POP)".

The screenshot displays the 'E-mail RX (POP)' configuration window. On the left, a sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'E-mail RX (POP)' selected. The main area contains the following settings:

- E-mail RX Setting:** ON (dropdown)
- POP Server Address:** 0.0.0.0 (text field). A checkbox 'Please check to enter host name.' is present.
- Login Name:** (text field)
- Password:** (text field). A checkbox 'Password is changed.' is present.
- APOP Authentication:** OFF (dropdown)
- MDN Response:** ON (dropdown)
- Connection Timeout:** 30 (dropdown) sec.
- Port Number:** 110 (text field) (1-65535)
- Use SSL/TLS:** (checkbox)
- Port No. (SSL):** 995 (text field) (1-65535)
- Certificate Verification Level Settings:**
 - Validity Period: Confirm (dropdown)
 - CN: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Key Usage: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Chain: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
- Check for New Messages:** (checkbox)
- Polling Interval:** 15 (text field) min. (1-60)

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
E-mail RX Setting	Select "ON" to perform POP before SMTP authentication.	
POP Server Address	Enter the POP server address. Format: *.*.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Login Name	Enter the login name of the POP server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the POP server (up to 15 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the timeout period for a communication with a server.	
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 110	Server port number

2.15.6 POP over SSL

E-Mail RX (POP)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail RX (POP)".

Item	Description	Prior check
Use SSL/TLS	Select this check box to encrypt a communication between this machine and POP server.	Does the server support SSL?
Port Number (SSL)	Enter the port number to be used for SSL communication. Default setting: 995	Server port number
Certificate Verification Level Settings	To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.	
CN	Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Security Display To Main Menu

PKI Settings

Certificate Verification Settings

Address Reference Setting

Restrict User Access

Auto Logout

Certificate Verification Settings

Certificate Verification Settings

Timeout sec. (5-300)

☐ OCSP Service

URL

Proxy Settings

Proxy Server Address ☐ Please check to enter host name.

Proxy Server Port Number (1-65535)

User Name

☒ Password is changed.

Password

Address not using Proxy Server ☐ Please check to enter host name.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to verify the server certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.*. (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

2.15.7 APOP Authentication

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail RX (POP)".

Item	Description	Prior check
APOP Authentication	Select "ON" to encrypt the login name and password when logging in to the POP server. The password is encrypted with MD5 to log in to the POP server using APOP. Before you select "ON", check whether the POP server supports APOP. If the POP server does not support APOP, it results in an error, causing a communication failure.	Is APOP authentication requested by the server?

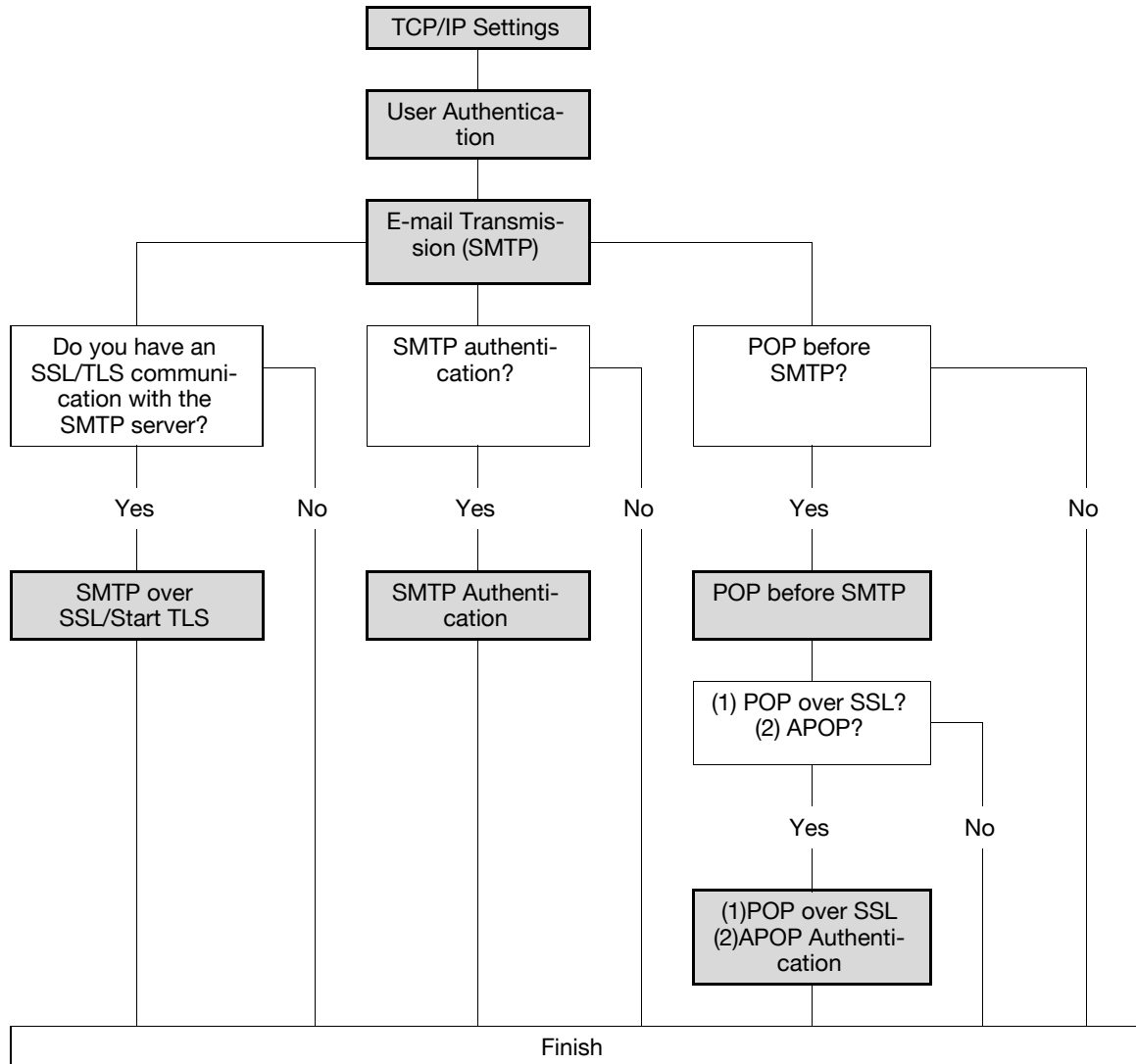
2.16 Sending scanned data to the user's E-mail address (Scan to Me)

Configure settings to send scanned data to the user's E-mail address.

This function is available when user authentication is enabled and the E-mail address of the user is registered as user information.

If the E-mail address of a logged in user is registered, the [Me] is displayed as a destination, and the user can simply select the [Me] to send the data to the user's own E-mail address.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to send a file to the user's own E-mail address, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.16.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.16.2 User Authentication

Configure settings to restrict users who use this machine.

When the MFP authentication is selected

When the MFP authentication is selected, do the following.

- Configure the settings required for the MFP authentication
- Register the E-mail address of each user when registering users

For details on the settings for the MFP authentication and user registration, refer to page 2-139.

When the Active Directory authentication is selected

When the Active Directory authentication is selected, do the following.

- Configure the settings required for the Active Directory authentication
- Register the E-mail address of each of the users from this machine with the server to enable this machine to obtain the address using the LDAP protocol

For details on Active Directory authentication settings, refer to page 2-149.

When the NTLM or NDS authentication is selected

When the NTLM or NDS authentication is selected, do the following.

- Configure the settings required for the NTLM or NDS authentication
- Register the E-mail address of each user in User Registration

For details on NTLM authentication settings, refer to page 2-154.

For details on NDS over IPX/SPX authentication settings, refer to page 2-158.

For details on NDS over TCP/IP authentication settings, refer to page 2-161.

2.16.3 E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

Configure settings to send an E-mail.

For details, refer to page 2-48.

2.16.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Configure the settings for SMTP over SSL or Start TLS.

For details, refer to page 2-50.

2.16.5 SMTP Authentication

Configure SMTP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.16.6 POP before SMTP

Configure the settings for POP before SMTP.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.16.7 POP over SSL

Configure the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-54.

2.16.8 APOP Authentication

Configure APOP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-55.

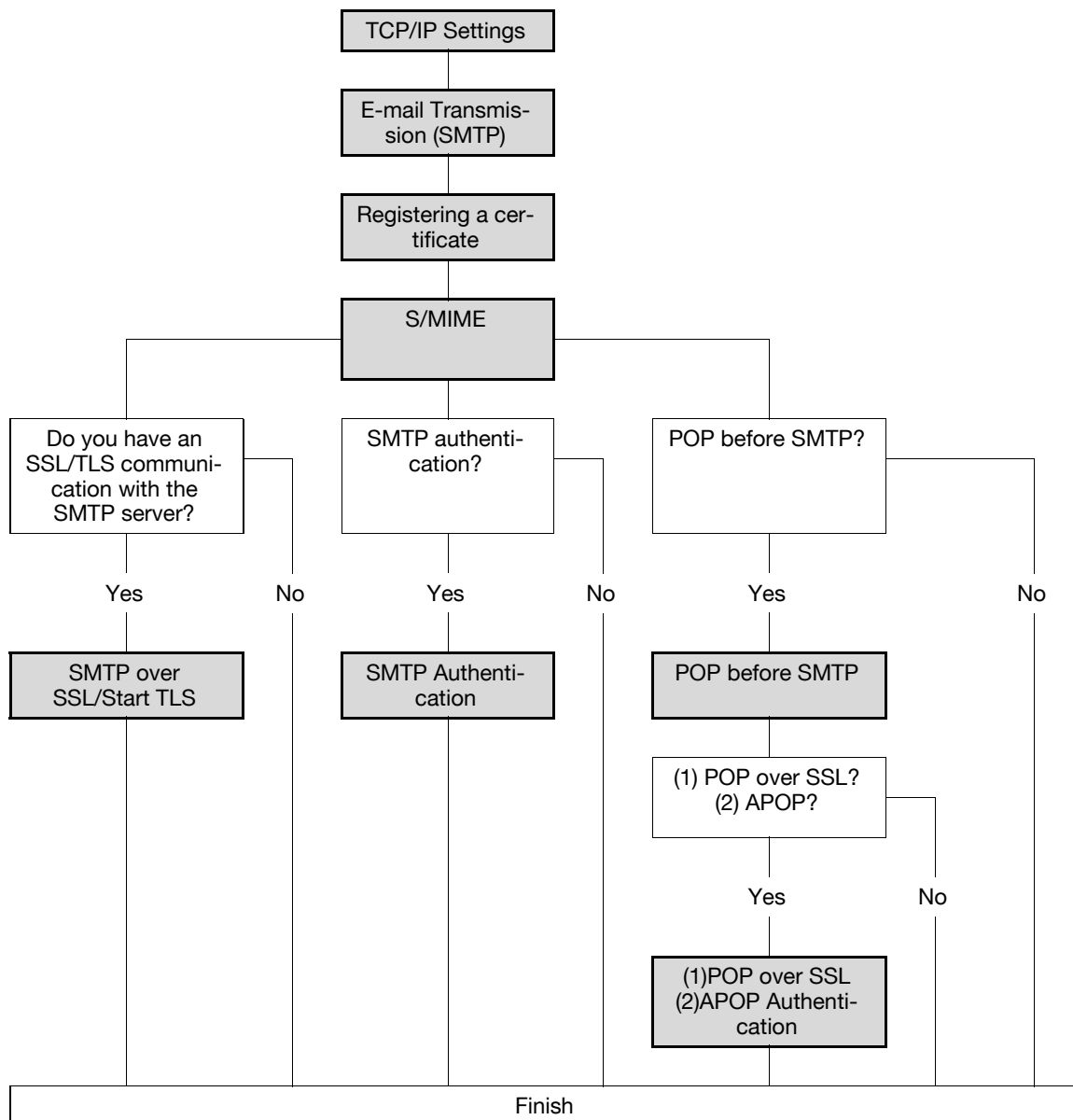
2.17 Sending scanned data by E-mail (with digital signature)

Configure settings to send scanned data by E-mail with a digital signature.

Sending an E-mail with a digital signature enables you to prove that the E-mail has been sent from this machine and also to send a device certificate to the user. Using the obtained certificate (public key), the user can send an encrypted E-mail to this machine.

If necessary, you can combine POP before SMTP authentication, APOP authentication, SMTP authentication, and SSL/TLS encryption to have a communication.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.17.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.17.2 E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

Configure settings to send an E-mail.

For details, refer to page 2-48.

2.17.3 Registering a certificate

Register a device certificate.

- You cannot send an E-mail if the administrator address of the device certificate used for digital signature does not match the From address of the E-mail.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.17.4 S/MIME

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-Mail Setting" ►► "S/MIME".

The screenshot displays the 'S/MIME' configuration page. On the left is a navigation menu with options like TCP/IP Setting, E-mail Setting, LDAP Setting, etc. The 'S/MIME' section is expanded. The main area contains the following settings:

- S/MIME Comm. Setting:** ON (dropdown)
- Digital Signature:** Always add signature (dropdown)
- E-Mail Text Encrypt. Method:** 3DES (dropdown)
- Automatically Obtain Certificates:** OFF (dropdown)
- Print S/MIME information:** OFF (dropdown)
- Certificate Verification Level Settings:**
 - Validity Period: Confirm (dropdown)
 - Key Usage: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Chain: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)

At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
Digital Signature	Select "Always add signature" or "Select when sending".	

2.17.5 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Configure the settings for SMTP over SSL or Start TLS.

For details, refer to page 2-50.

2.17.6 SMTP Authentication

Configure SMTP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.17.7 POP before SMTP

Configure the settings for POP before SMTP.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.17.8 POP over SSL

Configure the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-54.

2.17.9 APOP Authentication

Configure APOP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-55.

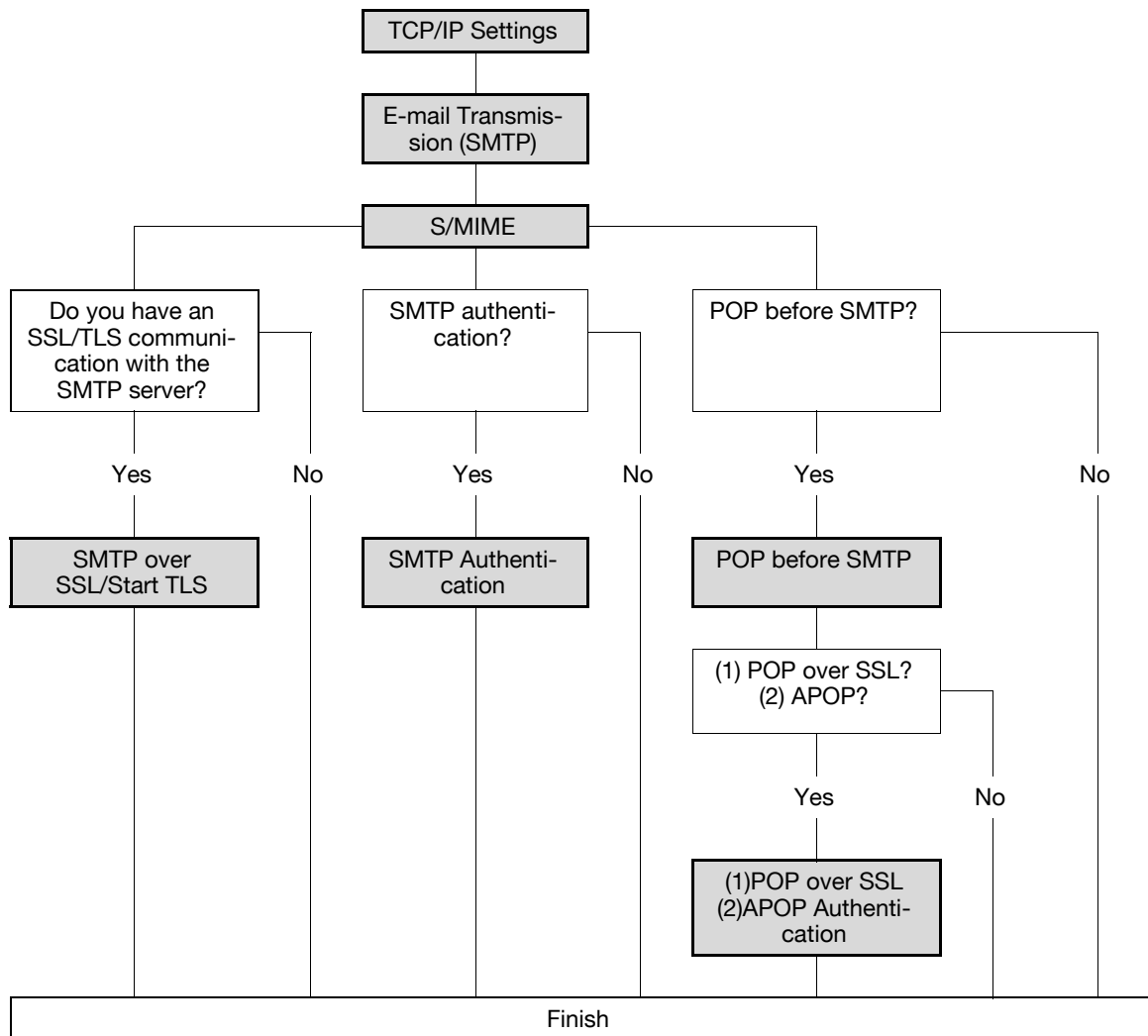
2.18 Sending scanned data by E-mail (Encryption by public key)

Configure settings to encrypt an E-mail using the user certificate (public key) registered in this machine when sending scanned data by E-mail.

Sending an encrypted E-mail prevents information from being leaked to the third party on the transmission route. Combining a digital signature with an E-mail also enables you to perform the authentication of this machine and message. For details on settings for attaching a digital signature to an E-mail, refer to page 2-59.

If necessary, you can combine POP before SMTP authentication, APOP authentication, SMTP authentication, and SSL/TLS encryption to have a communication.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

You cannot select an address with no certificate registered. To send an encrypted E-mail, pre-register the user certificate in this machine. For details, refer to page 2-30.

2.18.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.18.2 E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

Configure settings to send an E-mail.

For details, refer to page 2-48.

2.18.3 S/MIME

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-Mail Setting" ►► "S/MIME".

Item	Description	Prior check
S/MIME Comm. Setting	Select "ON".	
E-Mail Text Encrypt. Method	Specify the E-mail text encryption format.	

2.18.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Configure the settings for SMTP over SSL or Start TLS.

For details, refer to page 2-50.

2.18.5 SMTP Authentication

Configure SMTP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.18.6 POP before SMTP

Configure the settings for POP before SMTP.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.18.7 POP over SSL

Configure the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-54.

2.18.8 APOP Authentication

Configure APOP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-55.

2.19 Searching for the E-mail address in the LDAP server

Configure settings to search for the E-mail address in the LDAP server.

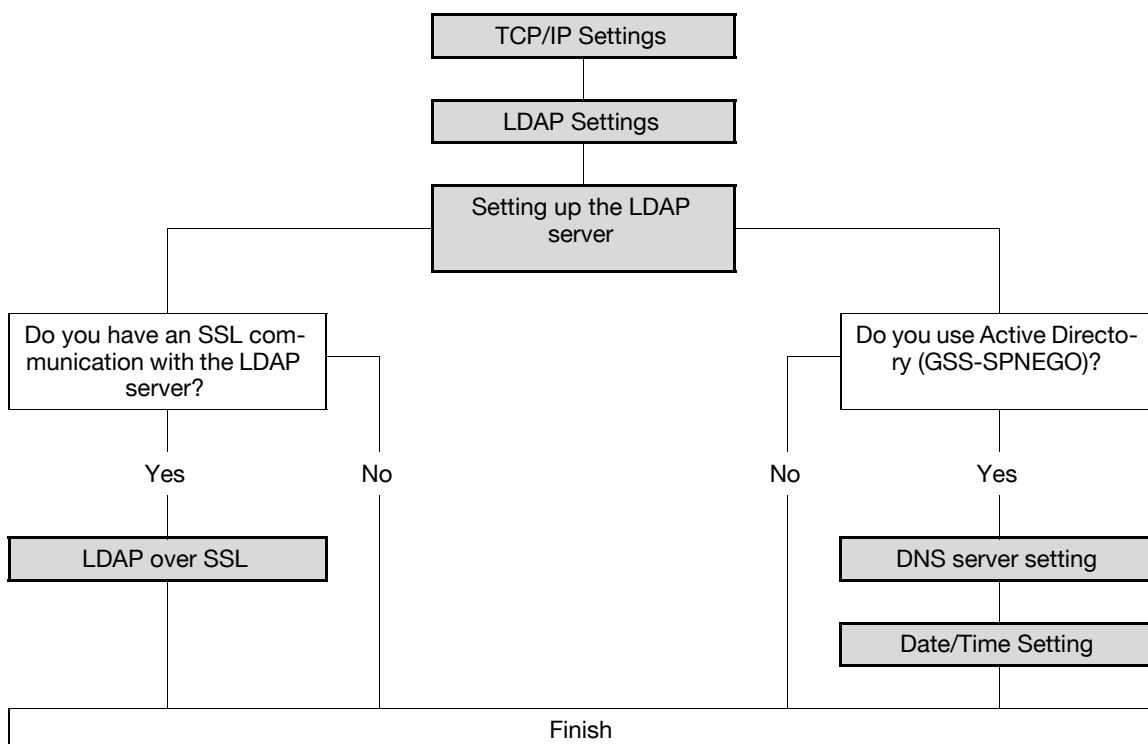
When the LDAP server is used for user management, you can search for the E-mail address in the LDAP server. Configuring these settings displays [Address Search] on the control panel. This function saves many steps to register E-mail addresses in this machine by using the LDAP server when specifying recipient addresses.

To select Active Directory as the LDAP server and "GSS-SPNEGO" as the authentication method, specify the DNS server associated with Active Directory in the DNS server settings of this machine, and also specify the date and time of this machine.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.

Reference

- To use the same LDAP server for destination search and for user authentication, the LDAP server certificate verification setting for destination search specified in "Setting Up LDAP" is also applicable to the LDAP server certificate verification setting for user authentication specified in "User Authentication/ Account Track" ► "External Server Settings". For details on configuring the LDAP server for user authentication and certificate verification, refer to page 2-165.



Reference

For details on how to send an E-mail using the LDAP search function, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

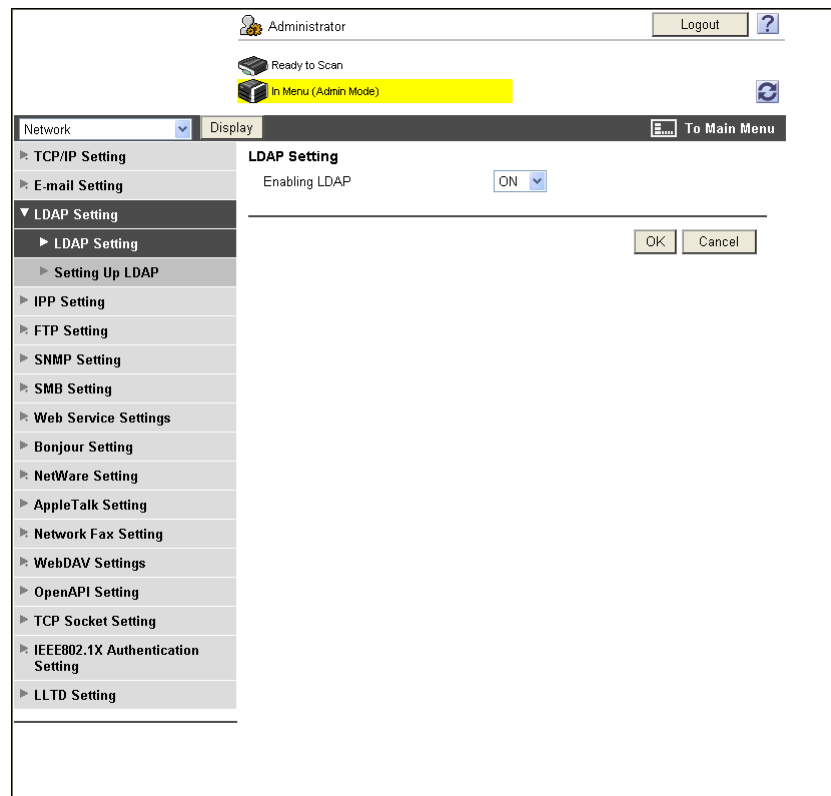
2.19.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.19.2 LDAP Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "LDAP Setting" ►► "LDAP Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
Enabling LDAP	Select "ON".	

2.19.3 Setting up the LDAP server

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "LDAP Setting" ►► "Setting Up LDAP" ►► [Edit].

Reference

- If the LDAP server is registered, press [Check Connection] on the LDAP Server List screen; you can check if the LDAP server is available.

The screenshot shows the 'Setting Up LDAP' configuration page. The left sidebar contains a list of settings: TCP/IP Setting, E-mail Setting, LDAP Setting (selected), Setting Up LDAP, IPP Setting, FTP Setting, SNMP Setting, SMB Setting, Web Service Settings, Bonjour Setting, NetWare Setting, AppleTalk Setting, Network Fax Setting, WebDAV Settings, OpenAPI Setting, TCP Socket Setting, IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting, and LLTD Setting. The main area is titled 'Setting Up LDAP' and contains the following fields:

- No.: 1
- LDAP Server Name: [Text Field]
- Server Address: ☐ Please check to enter host name. [Text Field: 0.0.0.0]
- Port Number: [Text Field: 389] (1-65535)
- ☐ Enable SSL
- Port Number (SSL): [Text Field: 636] (1-65535)
- Certificate Verification Level Settings:
 - Validity Period: Confirm
 - CN: Do Not Confirm
 - Key Usage: Do Not Confirm
 - Chain: Do Not Confirm
 - Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm
- Search Base: [Text Field]
- Timeout: [Text Field: 60] sec. (5-300)
- Max. Search Results: [Text Field: 100] (5-1000)
- Authentication Method: anonymous
- Login Name: anonymous
- ☐ Password is changed.
- Password: [Text Field]
- Domain Name: [Text Field]
- Select Server Authentication Method: Set Value
- Use Referral: ON
- Search Condition Attributes: Name
- Initial Setting for Search Details:
 - Name: OR
 - E-mail: OR
 - Fax Number: OR
 - Last Name: OR
 - First Name: OR
 - City: OR
 - Organization: OR
 - Organizational Unit: OR

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
LDAP Server Name	Enter the name of an LDAP server (up to 32 characters).	
Server Address	Specify the LDAP server address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 389	
Search base	Enter the search starting point in the directory structure under the LDAP server (up to 255 characters). This search function also covers subdirectories under the entered starting point.	Search base
Timeout	Enter the timeout period for LDAP search.	

Item	Description	Prior check
Max. Search Results	Enter the maximum number of items that can be received as LDAP search results.	
Authentication Method	Select the authentication method to log in to the LDAP server. The authentication method must match that used in the LDAP server. If "anonymous" is selected, "Login Name", "Password", and "Domain Name" can be omitted. If "GSS-SPNEGO" is selected, log in to the server in the Kerberos authentication method. The Kerberos authentication method is supported by Active Directory.	Server authentication method
Login Name	Enter the login name to log in to the LDAP server (up to 255 bytes).	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the LDAP server (up to 128 bytes, excluding space and double quotation ("")).	
Domain name	Enter the domain name to log in to the LDAP server (up to 64 characters). If "GSS-SPNEGO" is selected, enter the domain name of Active Directory.	• Authentication Method • Domain name
Select Server Authentication Method	Select the server authentication method. Select "Use Setting" to use the specified login name, password, and domain name. Select "Use User Authentication" to use the user name and password specified for user authentication. If "Dynamic Authentication" is selected, the system prompts you to enter the user name and password at LDAP searching.	
Use Referral	Select whether to use the referral function. Make an appropriate choice to fit the LDAP server environment.	
Search Condition Attributes	Select the attribute of the name used for LDAP searching. You can toggle this attribute between "Name" (cn) and "Nickname" (displayName).	Name attribute
Initial Setting for Search Details	Specify LDAP search conditions.	

2.19.4 LDAP over SSL

Setting up the LDAP server

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "LDAP Setting" ► "Setting Up LDAP" ► [Edit].

Item	Description	Prior check
SSL Setting	Select this check box to encrypt an SSL communication between this machine and the LDAP server.	Does the server support SSL?
Port Number (SSL)	Enter the port number to be used for SSL communication. Default setting: 636	Server port number
Certificate Verification Level Settings	To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.	
CN	Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ► "Certificate Verification Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Verification Settings' page. The sidebar on the left has 'Security' selected, and 'Certificate Verification Settings' is highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Certificate Verification Settings' and contains the following fields:

- Certificate Verification Settings:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- Timeout:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(sec. (5-300))'.
- OCSP Service:** An unchecked checkbox.
- URL:** A text input field.
- Proxy Settings:** An unchecked checkbox.
- Proxy Server Address:** A text input field with a label 'Please check to enter host name.'
- Proxy Server Port Number:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(1-65535)'.
- User Name:** A text input field.
- Password is changed:** A checked checkbox.
- Password:** A text input field.
- Address not using Proxy Server:** A text input field with a label 'Please check to enter host name.'

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to verify the server certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

2.19.5 DNS server setting

To select Active Directory as the LDAP server and "GSS-SPNEGO" as the authentication method, specify the DNS server associated with Active Directory in DNS Server Setting of this machine.

For details on DNS Server Setting, refer to page 2-8.

2.19.6 Date/Time Setting

To use Active Directory, specify the date and time of this machine.

For details, refer to page 2-35.

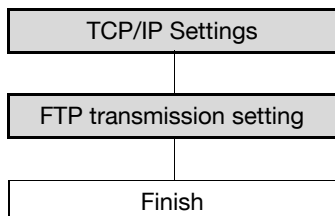
2.20 Sending scanned data to the FTP server

Configure settings to send scanned data to the FTP server.

You can send scanned data to the specified folder in the FTP server via the network, which contains the FTP server. This allows you to download the data sent to the FTP server from a computer via the network. This function is suitable to send a large amount of data such as high-resolution data.

If a proxy server is in network environment, you can configure settings to access the FTP server on Internet via the proxy server.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to register the FTP address, refer to page 2-250.

For details on FTP file sending, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.20.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.20.2 FTP transmission setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "FTP Setting" ►► "FTP TX Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'FTP TX Setting' window in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The window has a title bar with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below the title bar, there are status indicators: 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main content area is divided into a left sidebar and a right pane. The sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'FTP Setting' expanded and 'FTP TX Setting' selected. The right pane displays the 'FTP TX' settings, including a toggle switch set to 'ON', a checkbox for 'Please check to enter host name.', and input fields for 'Proxy Server Address' (0.0.0.0), 'Proxy Server Port Number' (21), 'Connection Timeout' (60 sec), and 'Port Number' (21). The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Item	Description	Prior check
FTP TX	Select "ON".	
Proxy Server Address	To perform transmissions via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
Connection Timeout	Enter the timeout period for a communication with a server.	
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 21	Server port number

2.21 Sending scanned data to the WebDAV server

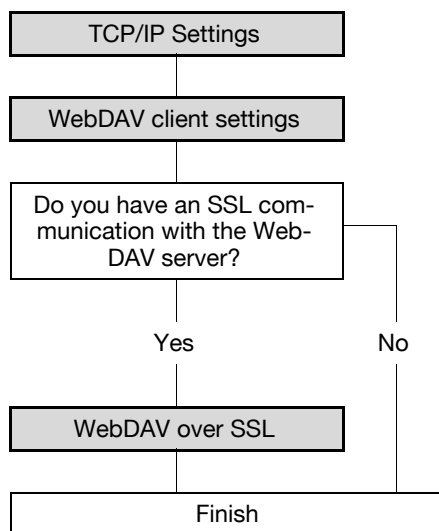
Configure settings to send scanned data to the WebDAV server.

You can send scanned data to the specified folder in the WebDAV server via the network, which contains the WebDAV server. This allows you to download the data sent to the WebDAV server from a computer via the network.

WebDAV, which is an extension to the HTTP specification, provides the same security technologies as HTTP. Use SSL to encrypt a communication with the WebDAV server; you can send a file more securely.

If a proxy server is in network environment, you can configure settings to access the WebDAV server on Internet via the proxy server.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to register the WebDAV address, refer to page 2-250.

When registering the address, specify whether to send a file encrypted with SSL. For details, refer to page 2-250.

For details on WebDAV file sending, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.21.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.21.2 WebDAV client settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "WebDAV Settings" ►► "WebDAV Client Settings".

Item	Description	Prior check
WebDAV TX Setting	Select "ON".	
Proxy Server Address	To perform transmissions via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Chunk TX	Select whether to enable chunk TX (batch transmission) or non-chunk TX (split transmission) when sending data to the WebDAV server. By default, it is set to "Non-Chunk TX". Change the setting to fit the target WebDAV server.	Method supported by the server
Connection Timeout	Enter the timeout period for a communication with a server.	
Server Authentication Character Code	Select a character code to perform the authentication under the WebDAV server. You can use this setting when "Japanese" is specified for the display language.	

2.21.3 WebDAV over SSL

Certificate Verification Level Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "WebDAV Setting" ►► "WebDAV Client Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Level Settings	To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.	
CN	Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Security Display To Main Menu

PKI Settings

Certificate Verification Settings

Address Reference Setting

Restrict User Access

Auto Logout

Certificate Verification Settings

ON

Timeout 0 sec. (5-300)

☐ OCSP Service

URL

Proxy Settings

☐ Please check to enter host name.

Proxy Server Address

Proxy Server Port Number 0 (1-65535)

User Name

☒ Password is changed.

Password

Address not using Proxy Server

☐ Please check to enter host name.

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to verify the server certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

2.22 Sending Internet faxes

Configure settings to send Internet fax.

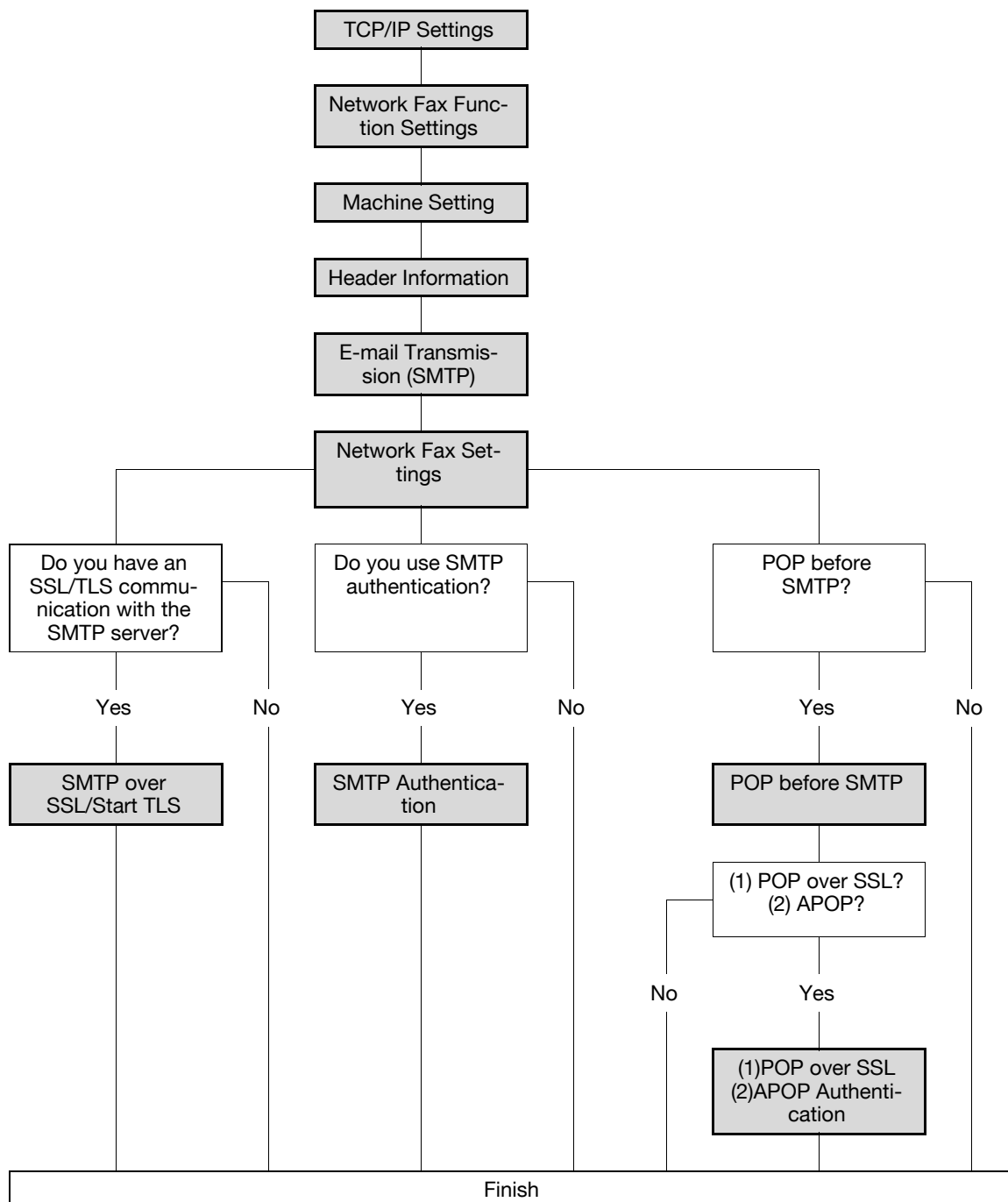
To use the Internet fax function, ask your service representative to configure settings. For details, contact your service representative.

Internet faxing sends and receives the read original as an E-mail attachment file (TIFF format) via Intranet or Internet. It also allows you to send and receive a colored original.

The Internet fax function establishes a communication via Intranet or Internet; therefore, you can reduce the communication cost compared with a general Fax communication when frequently handling remote or overseas communications.

If necessary, you can combine POP before SMTP authentication, APOP authentication, SMTP authentication, and SSL/TLS encryption to have a communication.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.





Reference

For details on how to register Internet fax destinations, refer to page 2-250.

For details on the Internet fax function, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.22.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.22.2 Network Fax Function Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "Network Fax Function Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Network Fax Function Settings' page. The sidebar on the left lists various settings, with 'Network Fax Setting' expanded to show 'SMTP TX Setting', 'SMTP RX Setting', 'Network Fax Function Settings', 'WebDAV Settings', 'OpenAPI Setting', 'TCP Socket Setting', 'IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting', and 'LLTD Setting'. The main content area is titled 'Network Fax Function Settings' and contains the following settings:

- IP Address Fax Function Settings: ON (dropdown)
- SIP Fax Function Settings: OFF (dropdown)
- (Turn the machine power OFF and ON after changing the SIP Fax Function Settings.)
- IP Address: [text input field]
- Port Number: [text input field] (0-65535)
- I-Fax Function Setting: ON (dropdown)

At the bottom right of the settings area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
I-Fax Function Setting	Select "ON".	

2.22.3 Machine Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ►► "Machine Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Machine Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The top navigation bar includes 'System Settings' (selected), 'Display', and 'To Main Menu'. The left sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'Machine Setting' highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Machine Setting' and contains the following fields:

- Device Location:
- Administrator Registration:
 - Administrator Name:
 - E-mail Address:
 - Extension No.:
- Input Machine Address:
 - Device Name:
 - E-mail Address:

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Device Name	Enter the device name (up to 80 characters). This name is used as a part of an Internet fax subject name.	
E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address of this machine (up to 320 characters). This setting is required when sending Internet faxes.	E-mail Address

2.22.4 Header Information

Register sender information for fax sending.

For details, refer to page 2-293.

2.22.5 E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

Configure settings to send an E-mail.

For details, refer to page 2-48.

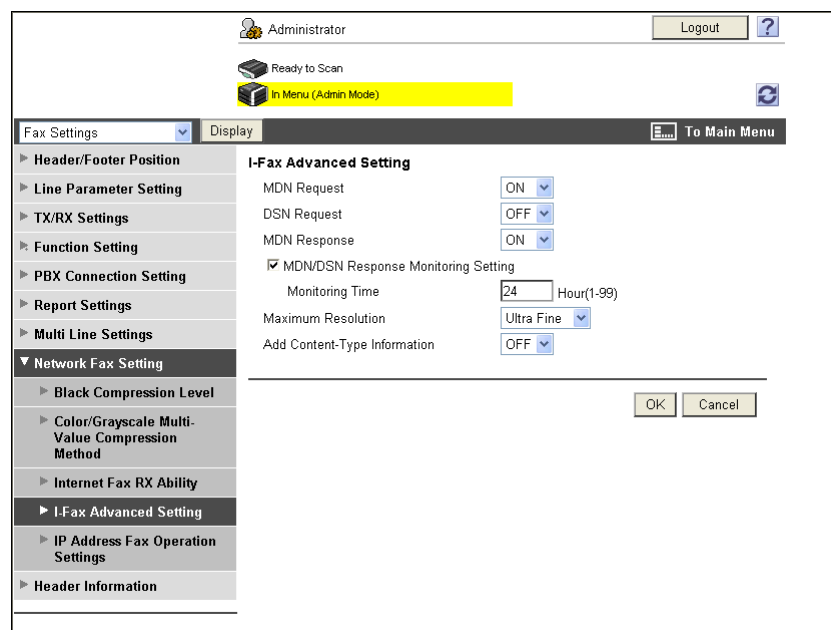
2.22.6 Network Fax Settings

(This menu item will not be displayed if the Network Fax function is not available.)

I-Fax Advanced Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ► "Network Fax Setting" ► "I-Fax Advanced Setting".

(This menu item will not be displayed if the Internet Fax function is not available.)

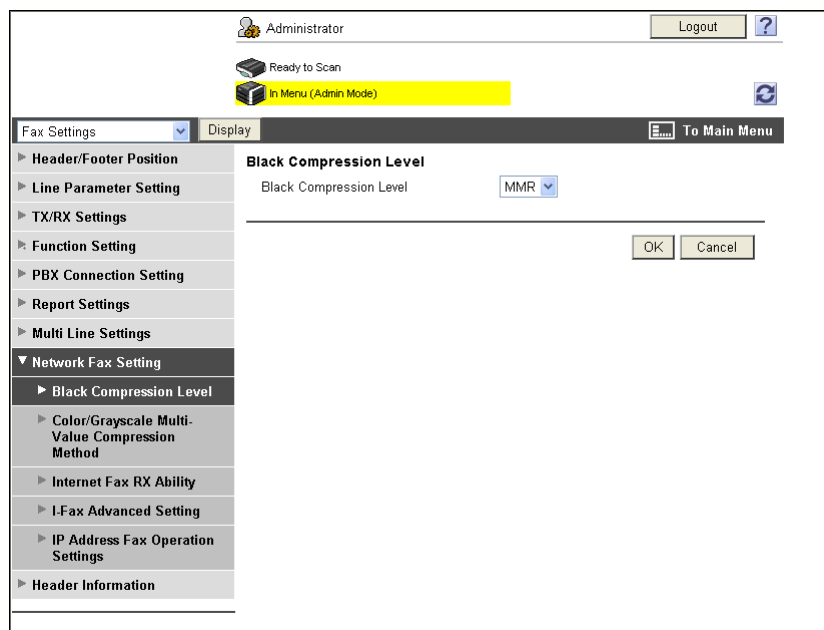


Item	Description	Prior check
MDN Request	Select "ON". You can receive an MDN response when an Internet fax is printed in the receiver side. By receiving an MDN response, you can obtain information on the reception capability of the remote machine. When an MDN response is received from a remote machine that is already registered in the address book, the information on the reception capability that has been obtained will be overwritten.	
DSN Request	Select "ON". You can receive a DSN response when an Internet fax arrives in the mail server of the receiver side. The DSN request is not issued when MDN is set to "ON".	
MDN/DSN Response Monitoring Setting	Select this check box to specify the MDN/DSN response monitoring time.	

Item	Description	Prior check
Monitoring Time	Enter the MDN/DSN response receiving wait time. An MDN/DSN response is ignored if it does not reach within this wait time.	
Maximum Resolution	Select the highest resolution of read or transfer logs.	
Add Content-Type Information	Select whether to add Content-Type information to the MIME header.	

Black Compression Level

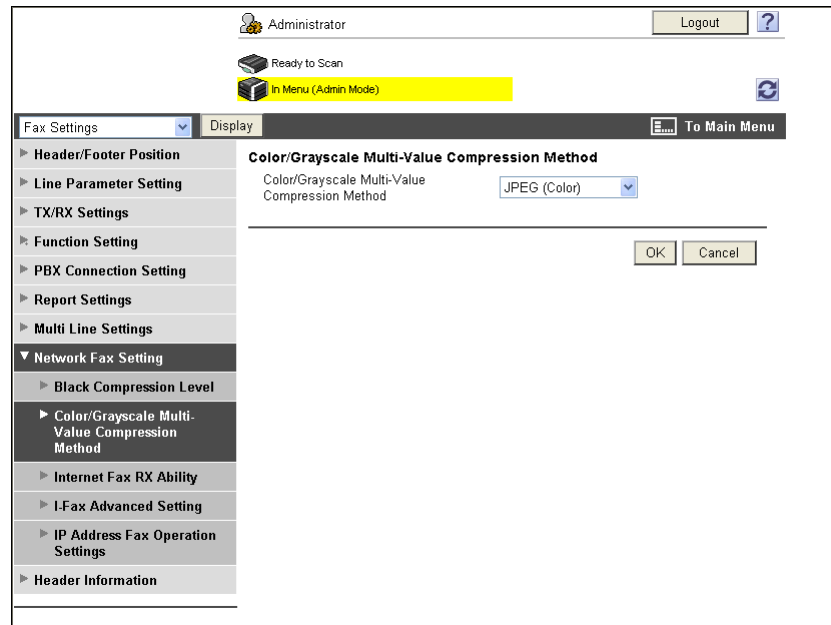
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "Black Compression Level".



Item	Description	Prior check
Black Compression Level	Select the default setting of the black compression level in the black and white sending mode.	

Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method".



Item	Description	Prior check
Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method	Select the default setting of the color/grayscale multi-value compression method in the color sending mode.	

2.22.7 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Configure the settings for SMTP over SSL or Start TLS.

For details, refer to page 2-50.

2.22.8 SMTP Authentication

Configure SMTP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.22.9 POP before SMTP

Configure the settings for POP before SMTP.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.22.10 POP over SSL

Configure the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-54.

2.22.11 APOP Authentication

Configure APOP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-55.

2.23 Receiving Internet faxes

Configure settings to receive Internet faxes.

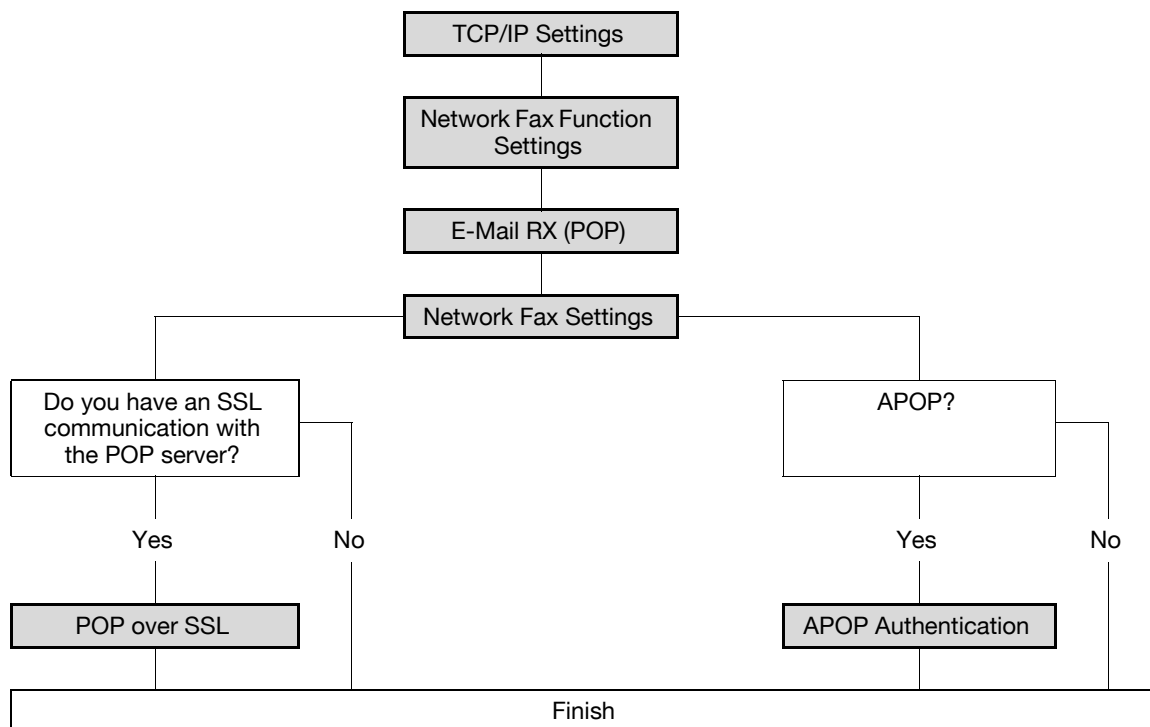
To use the Internet fax function, ask your service representative to configure settings. For details, contact your service representative.

Internet faxing sends and receives the read original as an E-mail attachment file (TIFF format) via Intranet or Internet. It also allows you to send and receive a colored original.

The Internet fax function establishes a communication via Intranet or Internet; therefore, you can reduce the communication cost compared with a general Fax communication when frequently handling remote or overseas communications.

This function performs SSL/TLS encryption or APOP authentication when receiving Internet faxes, assuring more secure communications.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on the Internet fax function, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.23.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.23.2 Network Fax Function Settings

Enables the Internet fax function of this machine.

For details, refer to page 2-78.

2.23.3 E-Mail RX (POP)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail RX (POP)".

The screenshot shows the 'E-mail RX (POP)' configuration page. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'E-mail RX (POP)' selected. The main area contains the following settings:

- E-mail RX Setting:** ON (dropdown)
- POP Server Address:** 0.0.0.0 (text field). A checkbox 'Please check to enter host name.' is present.
- Login Name:** (text field)
- Password:** (text field). A checkbox 'Password is changed.' is present.
- APOP Authentication:** OFF (dropdown)
- MDN Response:** ON (dropdown)
- Connection Timeout:** 30 (dropdown) sec.
- Port Number:** 110 (text field) (1-65535)
- Use SSL/TLS:** OFF (checkbox)
- Port No. (SSL):** 995 (text field) (1-65535)
- Certificate Verification Level Settings:**
 - Validity Period: Confirm (dropdown)
 - CN: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Key Usage: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Chain: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
 - Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm (dropdown)
- Check for New Messages:** checked (checkbox)
- Polling Interval:** 15 (text field) min. (1-60)

Buttons for 'OK' and 'Cancel' are at the bottom right.

Item	Description	Prior check
E-mail RX Setting	Select "ON".	
POP Server Address	Enter the POP server address. Format: *.*.*. (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Login Name	Enter the login name of the POP server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the POP server (up to 15 characters).	
Connection Timeout	Specify the timeout period for a communication with a server.	
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 110	Server port number
Check for New Messages	Select this check box to automatically receive an E-mail. To manually receive an E-mail, press [Receive I-FAX] in the Fax/Scan screen of the control panel.	
Polling Interval	Enter the interval to check the arrival by automatically connecting to the POP server.	

2.23.4 Network Fax Settings

(This menu item will not be displayed if the Network Fax function is not available.)

I-Fax Advanced Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "I-Fax Advanced Setting".

(This menu item will not be displayed if the Internet Fax function is not available.)

The screenshot displays the 'I-Fax Advanced Setting' web interface. At the top, there's a header bar with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below this, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main interface is divided into a left sidebar and a right content area. The sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'Network Fax Setting' expanded to show sub-items like 'Black Compression Level', 'Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method', 'Internet Fax RX Ability', 'I-Fax Advanced Setting' (highlighted), 'IP Address Fax Operation Settings', and 'Header Information'. The content area is titled 'I-Fax Advanced Setting' and contains several configuration options: 'MDN Request' (ON), 'DSN Request' (OFF), 'MDN Response' (ON), 'MDN/DSN Response Monitoring Setting' (checked), 'Monitoring Time' (24 Hour), 'Maximum Resolution' (Ultra Fine), and 'Add Content-Type Information' (OFF). At the bottom right of the content area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
MDN Response	Select "ON" to respond to an MDN request (reception confirmation request) from the remote side.	

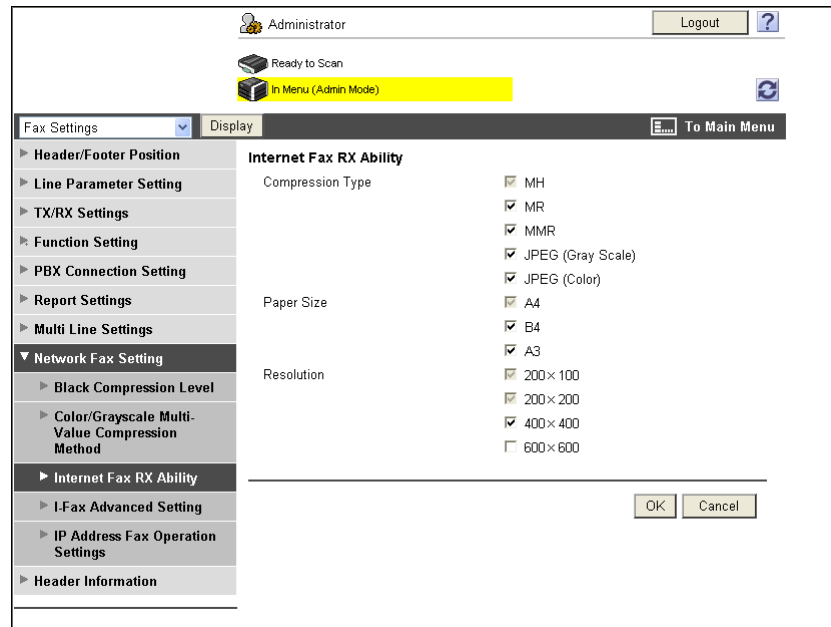
Internet Fax RX Ability

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "Internet Fax RX Ability".

(This menu item will not be displayed if the Internet Fax function is not available.)

Reference

- The recipient is notified of the RX Ability specified here when this machine sends an MDN response. To enable the RX Ability, set "MDN Response" to "ON" in "I-Fax Advanced Settings".



Item	Description	Prior check
Compression Type	Select the check box of the compression format that is available for this machine to receive Internet fax. All the compression formats available for this machine are selected in Initial Setting.	
Paper Size	Select the check box of the paper size that is available for this machine to receive Internet faxes. All the paper sizes available for this machine are selected by default.	
Resolution	Select the check box of the resolution that is available for this machine to receive Internet faxes.	

2.23.5 POP over SSL

Configure the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-54.

2.23.6 APOP Authentication

Configure APOP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-55.

2.24 Sending and receiving IP address faxes

Configure settings to send and receive IP address faxes.

IP Address Fax means FAX that is available on the IP network. To send a fax, specify the IP address, host name, or E-mail address of the remote machine.

The SMTP protocol is used to send and receive IP address faxes. Because the SMTP server function of this machine sends and receives data, no server is required when sending or receiving a fax by specifying the IP address of the remote machine. (However, the DNS server is required to send or receive a fax by specifying the host name or E-mail address.)

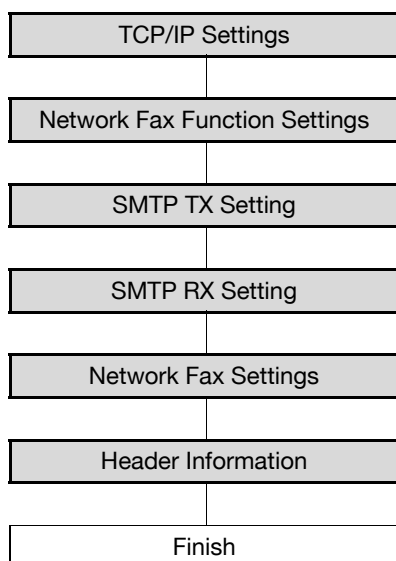
This machine supports the following two IP address fax operation modes. Switch the operation mode according to your environment.

- "Mode 1": This mode allows communication between Konica Minolta models capable of transmitting IP address faxes, and between models compatible with the direct SMTP standard defined by CIAJ (Communications and Information Network Association of Japan). However, because a unique method developed by Konica Minolta is used to send a color fax, only the Konica Minolta models can receive such a color fax. This machine can receive color faxes in any mode.
- "Mode 2": This mode allows communication between Konica Minolta models capable of transmitting IP address faxes, and between models compatible with the direct SMTP standard defined by CIAJ (Communications and Information Network Association of Japan). The method compatible with the direct SMTP standard (Profile-C format) is used to send a color fax. This machine can receive color faxes in any mode.

To use the IP Address Fax function, check the following.

- Install the optional fax kit FK-502 in this machine.
- To use the IP Address Fax function, ask your service representative to configure settings. For details, contact your service representative.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to register IP address fax destinations refer to page 2-250.

For details on IP Address Fax, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.24.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.24.2 Network Fax Function Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "Network Fax Function Settings".

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of the PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there is a header bar with "Administrator" and a "Logout" button. Below this, a status bar indicates "Ready to Scan" and "In Menu (Admin Mode)". The main navigation menu on the left lists various settings categories, with "Network Fax Setting" expanded to show sub-options like "SMTP TX Setting", "SMTP RX Setting", and "Network Fax Function Settings". The "Network Fax Function Settings" page is displayed on the right, featuring a "Display" button and a "To Main Menu" button. The settings include "IP Address Fax Function Settings" (set to ON), "SIP Fax Function Settings" (set to OFF), a note about turning machine power OFF and ON after changing SIP settings, "IP Address" (text input), "Port Number" (text input with a range of 0-65535), and "I-Fax Function Setting" (set to ON). "OK" and "Cancel" buttons are at the bottom right.

Item	Description	Prior check
IP Address Fax Function Settings	Select "ON".	

2.24.3 SMTP TX Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "SMTP TX Setting".

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there is a header bar with "Administrator" on the left, a "Logout" button, and a help icon. Below the header, there is a status bar with "Ready to Scan" and "In Menu (Admin Mode)". The main content area is divided into a left sidebar and a right main panel. The sidebar contains a list of settings categories, with "Network" selected. Under "Network", "Network Fax Setting" is expanded, and "SMTP TX Setting" is selected. The main panel displays the "SMTP TX Setting" configuration. It includes two input fields: "Port Number" with a value of 25 and a range of (1-65535), and "Connection Timeout" with a value of 60 and a range of sec. (30-300). At the bottom right of the main panel, there are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 25	Required port number
Connection Time-out	Enter the timeout period for a communication with a server.	

2.24.4 SMTP RX Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "SMTP RX Setting".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan
In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network Display To Main Menu

▶ TCP/IP Setting
 ▶ E-mail Setting
 ▶ LDAP Setting
 ▶ IPP Setting
 ▶ FTP Setting
 ▶ SNMP Setting
 ▶ SMB Setting
 ▶ Web Service Settings
 ▶ Bonjour Setting
 ▶ NetWare Setting
 ▶ AppleTalk Setting
 ▼ Network Fax Setting
 ▶ SMTP TX Setting
 ▶ SMTP RX Setting
 ▶ Network Fax Function Settings
 ▶ WebDAV Settings
 ▶ OpenAPI Setting
 ▶ TCP Socket Setting
 ▶ IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting
 ▶ LLTD Setting

SMTP RX Setting

SMTP RX

Port Number (1-65535)

Connection Timeout sec. (5-1000)

OK Cancel

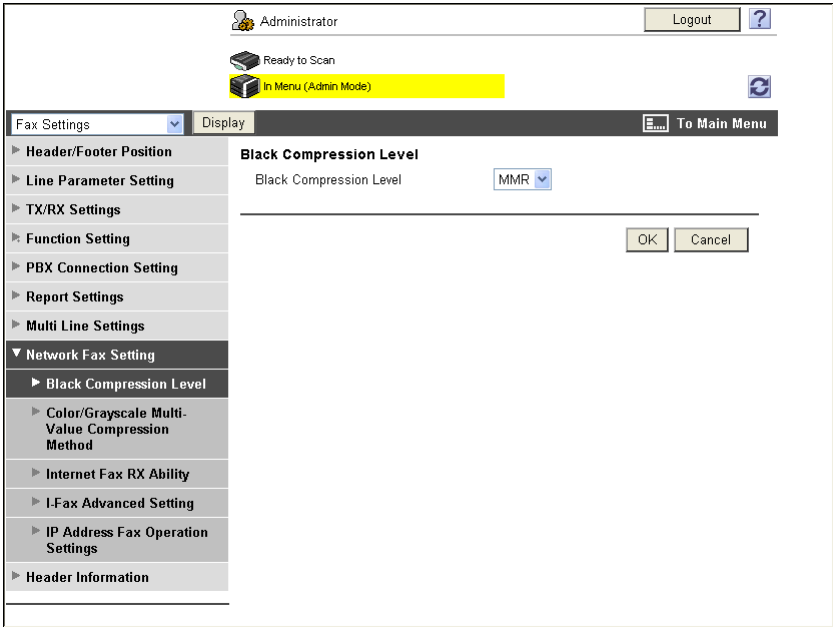
Item	Description	Prior check
SMTP RX	Select "ON".	
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 25	Required port number
Connection Time-out	Enter the timeout period for a communication with a server.	

2.24.5 Network Fax Settings

(This menu item will not be displayed if the Network Fax function is not available.)

Black Compression Level

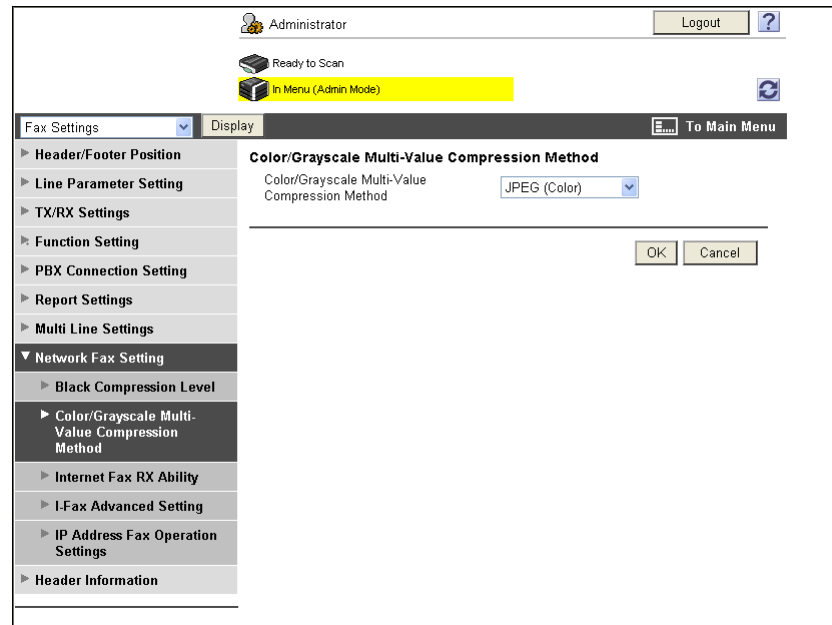
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "Black Compression Level".



Item	Description	Prior check
Black Compression Level	Select the default setting of the black compression level in the black and white sending mode.	

Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method

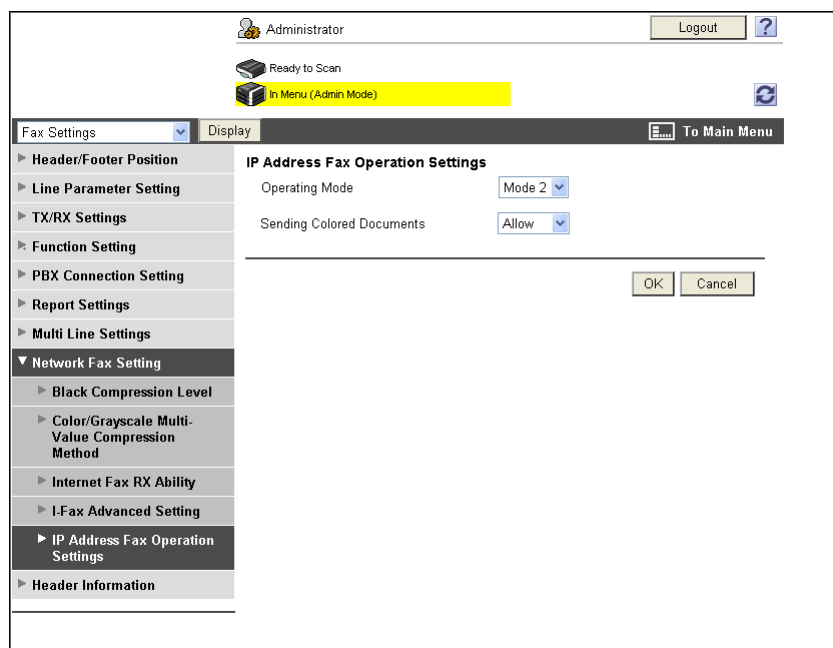
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method".



Item	Description	Prior check
Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method	Select the default setting of the color/grayscale multi-value compression method in the color sending mode.	

2.24.6 IP Address Fax Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Network Fax Setting" ►► "IP Address Fax Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
Operation mode	Select the operation mode for IP address fax according to your environment. "Mode 1": This mode allows communication between Konica Minolta models capable of transmitting IP address faxes, and between models compatible with the direct SMTP standard defined by CIAJ (Communications and Information Network Association of Japan). However, because a unique method developed by Konica Minolta is used to send a color fax, only the Konica Minolta models can receive such a color fax. This machine can receive color faxes in any mode. "Mode 2": This mode allows communication between Konica Minolta models capable of transmitting IP address faxes, and between models compatible with the direct SMTP standard defined by CIAJ (Communications and Information Network Association of Japan). The method compatible with the direct SMTP standard (Profile-C format) is used to send a color fax. This machine can receive color faxes in any mode.	
Sending Colored Documents	Select whether or not to accept sending and receiving of colored originals when selecting "Mode 2" for "Operating Mode". If you select "Restrict", color originals are converted to black and white before being sent. To send a fax to a machine that is not capable of receiving a color fax using the direct SMTP standard, select "Restrict".	Can the recipient machine receive a color fax using the direct SMTP standard?

2.24.7 Header Information

Register sender information for fax sending.

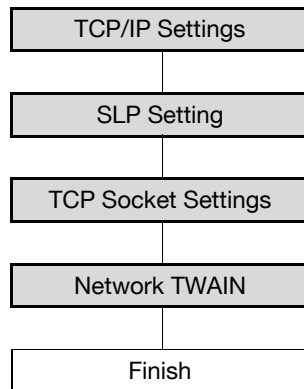
For details, refer to page 2-293.

2.25 Importing images by TWAIN scan

Configure settings to use this machine as a scanner.

Using the TWAIN driver enables you to use this machine as a scanner. This function controls this machine from a computer via the network, and imports scanned data to application on network.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to install the TWAIN driver, refer to the TWAIN driver manual in the Driver DVD-ROM.

2.25.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.25.2 SLP Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "TCP/IP Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
SLP	Select "Enable" to search for this machine using TWAIN.	

2.25.3 TCP Socket Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "TCP Socket Setting".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network Display To Main Menu

► TCP/IP Setting

► E-mail Setting

► LDAP Setting

► IPP Setting

► FTP Setting

► SNMP Setting

► SMB Setting

► Web Service Settings

► Bonjour Setting

► NetWare Setting

► AppleTalk Setting

► Network Fax Setting

► WebDAV Settings

► OpenAPI Setting

► TCP Socket Setting

► IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting

► LLTD Setting

TCP Socket Setting

(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing TCP Socket.)

☒ TCP Socket

Port Number (1-65535)

☐ Use SSL/TLS

Port No. (SSL) (1-65535)

☒ TCP Socket(ASCII Mode)

Port No. (ASCII Mode) (1-65535)

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
TCP Socket	Select this check box to use the TWAIN driver.	
Port Number	Enter the port number.	

2.25.4 Network TWAIN

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ►► "Network TWAIN".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

System Settings Display To Main Menu

► Machine Setting

► Register Support Information

► Network TWAIN

► User Box Setting

► Stamp Settings

► Blank Page Print Settings

► Skip Job Operation Settings

Network TWAIN

TWAIN Lock Time sec. (30-300)

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
TWAIN Lock Time	Enter the time to automatically release the operation lock using the TWAIN scan function.	

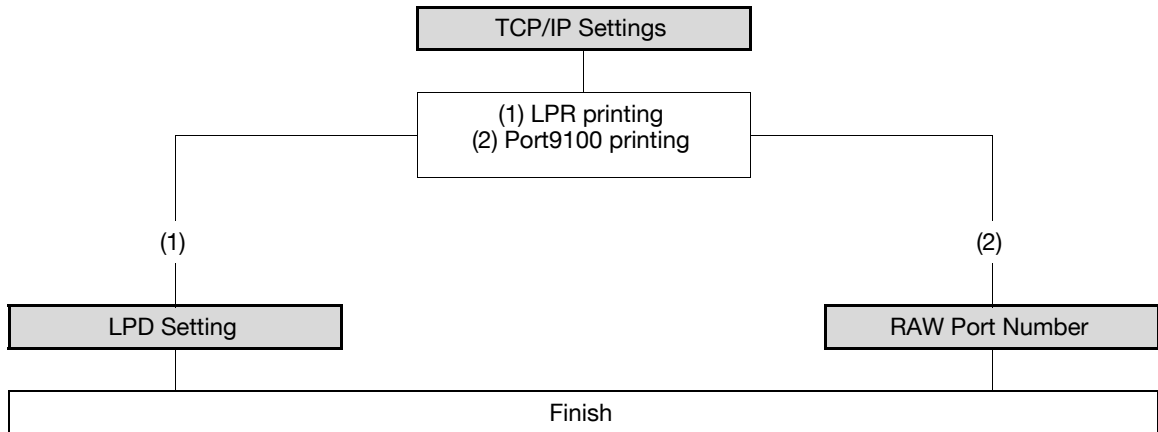
2.26 Printing (LPR/Port9100)

Configure settings for LPR or Port9100 printing.

LPR printing is performed via the network using the LPR protocol. It is mainly used in UNIX-based operating systems.

Port9100 printing is performed via the network by directly specifying the RAW port (Port9100) of this machine connected to the TCP/IP network as a destination printer.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

2.26.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.26.2 LPD Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "TCP/IP Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
LPD	Select "Enable".	

2.26.3 RAW Port Number

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "TCP/IP Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
RAW Port Number	Select the check box of the required port, and enter the RAW port number.	

Reference

- If you select [OK] after changing multiple port numbers together in PageScope Web Connection or on the control panel, a port number duplication error may be displayed. When this error is displayed, first change one port number and select [OK]. Then change another one and select [OK].

2.27 Print (SMB)

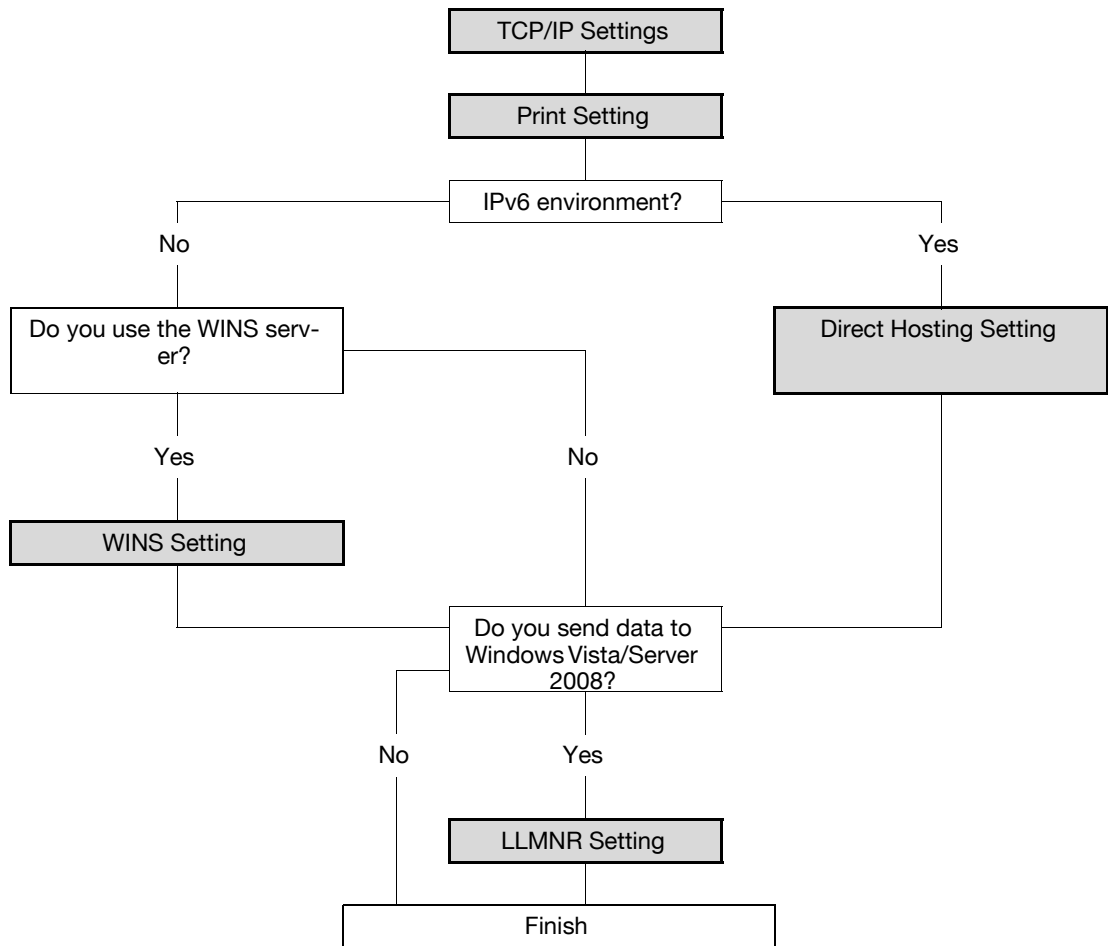
Configure settings for SMB printing.

A printer can be shared on the Windows network using the SMB protocol. The SMB printing allows a computer to directly specify this machine running on the Windows network to print information.

To use SMB printing in the IPv6 environment, you must enable the direct hosting service.

To perform the SMB printing from a computer with Windows Vista/Server 2008 installed, you can perform the name resolution using the LLMNR function even if DNS server is not present. To perform the name resolution especially in the IPv6-only communication environment under Windows Vista/Server 2008, it will be convenient to enable the LLMNR function.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

2.27.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.27.2 Print Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SMB Setting" ►► "Print Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Print Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The top bar includes 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below the top bar, there's a 'Ready to Scan' status and an 'In Menu (Admin Mode)' button. The left sidebar shows a tree view with 'Network' selected, and 'SMB Setting' expanded, with 'Print Setting' highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Print Setting' and includes a note '* is reflected after reset.' The settings are as follows:

- SMB Print: ON (dropdown menu)
- NetBIOS Name*: (empty text field)
- Print Service Name*: (empty text field)
- Workgroup*: WORKGROUP (text field)

At the bottom right of the settings area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Print Setting	Select "ON".	
NetBIOS Name	Enter the NetBIOS name in uppercase letters (up to 15 characters, the only symbol allowed is a hyphen (-)).	
Print Service Name	Enter a print service name in uppercase letters (up to 12 characters, excluding / \).	
Workgroup	Enter a workgroup name in uppercase letters (up to 15 characters, excluding " \ ; , * < > + = ?).	The workgroup this machine belongs to

2.27.3 WINS Setting

When you start SMB printing via the router, you must set up the WINS server.

For details, refer to page 2-40.

2.27.4 Direct Hosting Setting

To use SMB printing in the IPv6 environment, enable the direct hosting service.

For details, refer to page 2-41.

2.27.5 LLMNR Setting

To perform name resolution in the environment configured to communicate with Windows Vista/Server 2008, and where the DNS server is not running, enable the LLMNR function.

For details, refer to page 2-41.

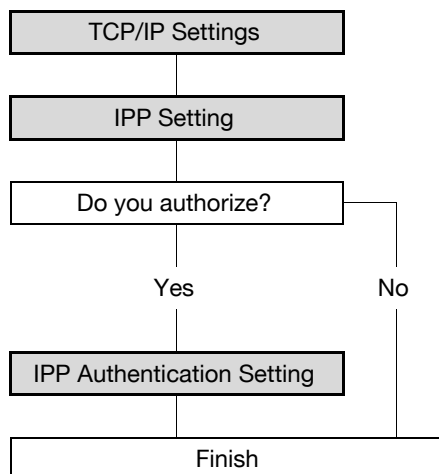
2.28 Print (IPP)

Configure settings for IPP printing.

IPP printing uses the Internet Printing Protocol (IPP) and prints information via the network. Because the IPP printing allows the print data to be transferred to a network printer using HTTP protocol, you can also output the data to a remote printer via the Internet.

If you have set the authentication for IPP printing, you can prevent illegal access by a third party.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

2.28.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.28.2 IPP Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "IPP Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'IPP Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator mode. The left sidebar lists various settings, with 'IPP Setting' highlighted. The main content area displays the following configuration options:

- IPP Setting:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- Accept IPP job:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- Printer Name:** A text input field.
- Printer Location:** A text input field.
- Printer Information:** A text input field.
- Printer URI:** A list of URIs: URI://TestData00, URI://TestData01, URI://TestData02, URI://TestData03, URI://TestData04, URI://TestData05.
- Support Operation:** A group of checkboxes:
 - ☒ Print Job
 - ☒ Valid Job
 - ☒ Cancel Job
 - ☒ Open Job Attributes
 - ☒ Open Job
 - ☒ Open Printer Attributes
- IPP Authentication Setting:**
 - Authentication Method:** A dropdown menu set to 'requesting-user-name'.
 - User Name:** A text input field containing 'user'.
 - ☐ Password is changed. (Password is currently set.)
 - Password:** A text input field.
 - realm:** A text input field.

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
IPP Setting	Select "ON".	
Accept IPP job	Select "ON".	
Printer Name	Enter a printer name (up to 127 characters).	
Printer Location	Enter the location of the printer (up to 127 characters).	
Printer Information	Enter printer information (up to 127 characters).	
Printer URI	Displays the URI of the printer that can print data using the IPP.	
Support Operation	Select the check box of each job to be executed using the IPP.	
Print Job	Select whether to allow a print job. Select this check box to enable IPP printing.	
Valid Job	Select whether to allow confirmation of a valid job.	
Cancel Job	Select whether to allow canceling the job.	
Open Job At-tributes	Select whether to obtain job attributes.	
Open Job	Select whether to obtain a list of job attributes.	
Open Printer At-tributes	Select whether to obtain printer attributes.	

2.28.3 IPP Authentication Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "IPP Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
IPP Authentication Setting	Select this check box to force an authentication for IPP printing.	
Authentication Method	Select an authentication method.	
User Name	Enter a user name (up to 20 characters, excluding a colon (:)). This entry is required if you have selected "basic" or "digest" for the authentication method.	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password (up to 20 characters). This entry is required if you have selected "basic" or "digest" for the authentication method.	
realm	Enter realm (up to 127 characters). This entry is required if you have selected "digest" for the authentication method.	

2.29 Print (IPPS)

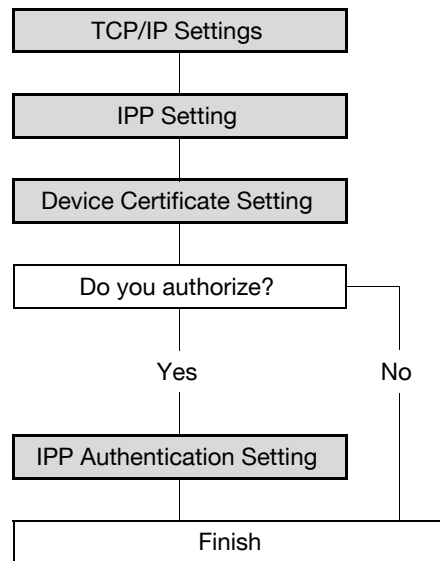
Configure settings for IPPS printing.

When this machine starts IPP printing, the communication between the computer and this machine is encrypted using the SSL. The encryption using the SSL can enhance the security during IPP printing.

To use IPPS printing on the Windows Vista/Server 2008 system, check the following points.

- Enter "https://[host-name].[domain-name]/ipp". These [host-name] and [domain-name] must be the "DNS Host Name" and "DNS Default Domain Name" that you have set for the "TCP/IP Setting".
- Your computer must be able to resolve the name of this machine using the DNS. Register this machine in the DNS server and configure the DNS settings in your computer in advance.
- If the certificate of this machine is not the one issued by the Certificate Authority (CA), you must register the device certificate on the Windows Vista system as the Trusted Root Certification Authorities certificate for local computers.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

2.29.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

- To use IPPS printing on the Windows Vista/Server 2008 system, correctly set the "DNS Host Name" and "DNS Default Domain Name" that have been registered on the DNS server before creating its certificate. If their settings are incorrect, you cannot establish the communication connection in IPPS.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.29.2 IPP Setting

Configure settings for IPP printing.

For details, refer to page 2-100.

2.29.3 Device Certificate Setting

Configure settings for SSL communication.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.29.4 IPP Authentication Setting

Configure these settings to force an authentication for IPP printing.

For details, refer to page 2-101.

2.30 Printing (Bonjour)

Configure these settings when you connect this machine to a Macintosh computer using the Bonjour protocol for printing.

Before starting Bonjour protocol communication between this machine and a Macintosh computer, configure the Bonjour protocol for this machine.



Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

Bonjour Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Bonjour Setting".

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of the PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there is a header bar with "Administrator" and a "Logout" button. Below the header, there are status indicators: "Ready to Scan" and "In Menu (Admin Mode)". A left sidebar contains a list of settings categories, with "Bonjour Setting" highlighted. The main content area is titled "Bonjour Setting" and contains two fields: "Bonjour" with a dropdown menu set to "ON", and "Bonjour Name" with a text input field. At the bottom right of the main area are "OK" and "Cancel" buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Bonjour	Select "ON".	
Bonjour Name	Enter a Bonjour name that is displayed as the name of connected device (up to 63 characters).	

2.31 Printing (AppleTalk)

Configure these settings when you connect this machine to a Macintosh computer using the AppleTalk protocol for printing.

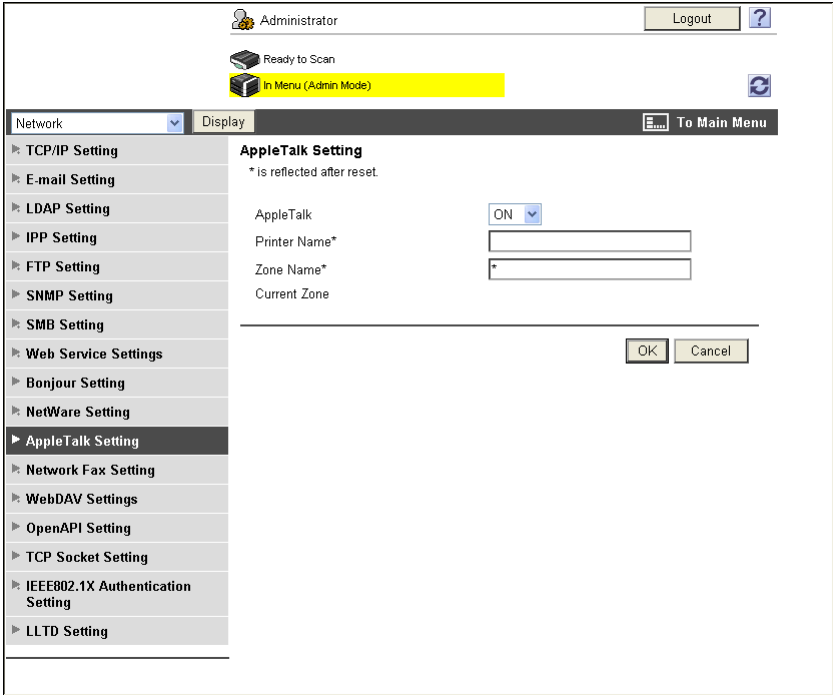
Before starting AppleTalk protocol communication between this machine and a Macintosh computer, set the AppleTalk protocol for this machine.

 Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

AppleTalk Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "AppleTalk Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
AppleTalk	Select "ON".	
Printer Name	Enter a printer name to be displayed on the selector (up to 31 characters, excluding = and ~).	
Zone Name	Enter a name of zone this machine belongs to (up to 31 characters).	
Current Zone	The current zone name is displayed.	

2.32 Printing (Netware)

Configure settings for printing in a NetWare environment.

Before you start printing in a NetWare environment, you must set the NetWare file system on this machine.



Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

The current NetWare connection can be checked if necessary. For details, refer to page 2-111.

2.32.1 NetWare Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "NetWare Setting" ►► "NetWare Setting".

The required items depend on your operating environment. Set the items by referring to the following figure.

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network Display To Main Menu

▶ TCP/IP Setting
 ▶ E-mail Setting
 ▶ LDAP Setting
 ▶ IPP Setting
 ▶ FTP Setting
 ▶ SNMP Setting
 ▶ SMB Setting
 ▶ Web Service Settings
 ▶ Bonjour Setting
 ▼ NetWare Setting
 ▶ NetWare Setting
 ▶ NetWare Status
 ▶ AppleTalk Setting
 ▶ Network Fax Setting
 ▶ WebDAV Settings
 ▶ OpenAPI Setting
 ▶ TCP Socket Setting
 ▶ IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting
 ▶ LLTD Setting

NetWare Setting

* is reflected after reset.

IPX Setting*

(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)

Ethernet Frame Type*

NetWare Print Mode*

PServer

Print Server Name*

☐ Password is changed.

Print Server Password*

Polling Interval* sec. (1-65535)

Bindery/NDS Setting*

Bindery

File Server Name*

NDS

NDS Context Name*

NDS Tree Name*

Nprinter/Rprinter

Print Server Name*

Printer Number* (0-255, 255: Auto)

User Authentication Setting

OK Cancel

In Remote Printer mode using the NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation

- ✓ When you use the Bindery Emulation, make sure that the Bindery Emulation has been enabled on the NetWare server.
- 1** From the client, log in the NetWare file system as Bindery with the administrator authority.
- 2** Start Pconsole.
- 3** Select "Quick Setup" from "Available Options" list box, and press the [Enter] key.
- 4** Fill in "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", and "Print Queue Name". Set the "Type" of the printer to "Other/Unknown", and save them.
- 5** Terminate Pconsole by pressing the [Esc] key.
- 6** Load the PSERVER.NLM file on the NetWare Server console.

Then, configure the following settings in "NetWare Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Select a frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode	Select "Nprinter/Rprinter".	
Print Server Name	Enter a print server name to be operated as the Nprinter/Rprinter (up to 63 characters, excluding / \ ; , * [] < > + = ? .).	The print server name specified in Step 4
Printer Number	Enter the Nprinter/Rprinter number.	

In Print Server mode using the NetWare 4.x Bindery Emulation

- ✓ When you use the Bindery Emulation, make sure that the Bindery Emulation has been enabled on the NetWare server.
- ✓ When you select the Print Server mode, the IPX protocol must already be loaded on the NetWare server.
- 1** From the client, log in the NetWare file system as Bindery with the administrator authority.
- 2** Start Pconsole.
- 3** Select "Quick Setup" from "Available Options" list box, and press the [Enter] key.
- 4** Fill in "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", and "Print Queue Name". Set the "Type" of the printer to "Other/Unknown", and save them.
- 5** Terminate Pconsole by pressing the [Esc] key.

Then, configure the following settings in "NetWare Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Select a frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode	Select "PServer".	
Print Server Name	Enter a print server name to be operated as Pserver (up to 63 characters, excluding / \ ; , * [] < > + = ? .).	The print server name specified in Step 4
Print Server Password	Enter a print server password if necessary (up to 63 characters).	
Polling Interval	Set a job inquiry interval.	
Bindery/NDS Setting	Select "Bindery/NDS Setting".	
File Server Name	Enter the priority file server name to be used in the Bindery emulation mode (up to 47 characters, excluding / \ ; , * [] < > + = ? .).	

In NetWare 4.x Remote Printer mode (NDS)

- 1 From the client, log in the NetWare file system with administrator authority.
- 2 Start NWAdmin.
- 3 Select an organization or department container for the print service, and select "Print Services Quick Setup" from the Tools menu.
- 4 Fill in "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", "Print Queue Name", and "Print Queue Volume". Then, set the "Type" of the printer to "Other/Unknown" and save them.
- 5 Load the PSERVER.NLM file on the NetWare Server console.

Then, configure the following settings in "NetWare Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Select a frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode	Select "Nprinter/Rprinter".	
Print Server Name	Enter a print server name to be operated as the Nprinter/Rprinter (up to 63 characters, excluding / \ ; , * [] < > + = ? .).	The print server name specified in Step 4
Printer Number	Enter the Nprinter/Rprinter number.	

In the NetWare 4.x/5.x/6 Print Server mode (NDS)

- ✓ When you select the Print Server mode, the IPX protocol must already be loaded on the NetWare server.
- 1 From the client, log in the NetWare file system with administrator authority.
- 2 Start NWAdmin.
- 3 Select an organization or department container for the print service, and select "Print Services Quick Setup (non-NDPS)" from the Tools menu.
- 4 Fill in "Print Server Name", "Printer Name", "Print Queue Name", and "Print Queue Volume". Then, set the "Type" of the printer to "Other/Unknown" and click [Create].

Then, configure the following settings in "NetWare Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Select a frame type to be used.	Frame type
NetWare Print Mode	Select "PServer".	
Print Server Name	Enter a print server name to be operated as Pserver (up to 63 characters, excluding / \ ; , * [] < > + = ?).	The print server name specified in Step 4
Print Server Password	Enter a print server password if necessary (up to 63 characters).	
Polling Interval	Set a job inquiry interval.	
Bindery/NDS Setting	Select "NDS".	
NDS Context Name	Enter an NDS context name for print server connection (up to 191 characters, excluding / \ ; , * [] < > + = ?).	
NDS Tree Name	Enter an NDS tree name for print server connection (up to 63 characters, excluding / \ ; , * [] < > + = ?).	

For NetWare 5.x/6 Novell Distributed Print Service (NDPS)

- ✓ Before starting the NDPS setting, make sure that an NDPS broker and NDPS manager have already been created and loaded.
 - ✓ Make sure that the TCP/IP protocol has been set on the NetWare server, an IP address of this machine has been set, and this machine has already been started.
- 1 From the client, log in the NetWare file system with administrator authority.
 - 2 Start NWAdmin.
 - 3 Right-click the "Organization" and "Organizational unit" containers for printer agent creation, and select "NDPS Printer" from Create.
 - 4 Enter a "printer name" in the "NDPS Printer Name" field.
 - 5 Select "Create a New Printer Agent" in the "Printer Agent Source" field, and click "Create".
 - 6 Confirm the printer agent name, and browse and register the NDPS manager in the "NDPS Manager Name" field.
 - 7 Set the "Gateway Types" to "Novell Printer Gateway", and register it.
 - 8 In the "Configure Novell NDPS for Printer Agent" window, set the Printer to "(None)" and the port handler to "Novell Port Handler", and register the settings.
 - 9 Set the "Connection type" to "Remote (LPR on IP)" and register the setting.
 - 10 For the host address, enter the IP address of this machine you have configured. Enter "Print" for the printer name, and then press "Finish" to register the settings.
 - 11 When printer driver registration windows appear, select "None" for each OS and finish the registration.

2.32.2 NetWare Status

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "NetWare Setting" ►► "NetWare Status".

The current NetWare connection can be checked if necessary.

Administrator

Logout

?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

↺

Network

▼

Display

⌂ To Main Menu

► TCP/IP Setting

► E-mail Setting

► LDAP Setting

► IPP Setting

► FTP Setting

► SNMP Setting

► SMB Setting

► Web Service Settings

► Bonjour Setting

▼ NetWare Setting

► NetWare Setting

► NetWare Status

► AppleTalk Setting

► Network Fax Setting

► WebDAV Settings

► OpenAPI Setting

► TCP Socket Setting

► IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting

► LLTD Setting

NetWare Status

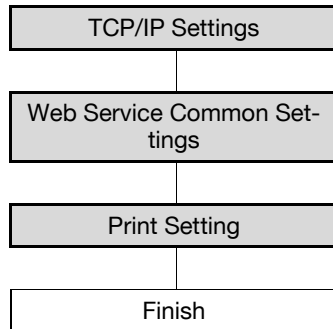
Server Name	Queue Name
ServerName1	QueueNameName1
ServerName2	QueueNameName2
ServerName3	QueueNameName3
ServerName4	QueueNameName4
ServerName5	QueueNameName5
ServerName6	QueueNameName6
ServerName7	QueueNameName7
ServerName8	QueueNameName8
ServerName9	QueueNameName9
ServerName10	QueueNameName10

2.33 Using the WS print function

Configure the following settings when you print data using the Web services function of Windows Vista/Server 2008.

The Web services function can automatically detect this network-connected machine and install it as a WS printer. When you select this machine (installed as the WS printer), you can use the HTTP for communication and print data.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on how to install the printer driver, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

2.33.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.33.2 Web Service Common Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Web Service Settings" ►► "Web Service Common Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Web Service Common Settings' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The left sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'Web Service Settings' expanded to show 'Web Service Common Settings'. The main area displays settings for 'Web Service Common Settings', including 'Friendly Name*', 'SSL Setting' (OFF), 'Publication Service' (Enable), and 'Certificate Verification Level Settings' (Validity Period: Confirm, Key Usage: Do Not Confirm, Chain: Do Not Confirm, Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm). The top bar shows 'Administrator' and 'Logout' buttons. The bottom right has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Friendly Name	Enter a Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	
Publication Service	If you use this machine in an environment where NetBIOS is disabled or only the IPv6 protocol communication is used by the Windows Vista or Server 2008 system, set this item to "Enable".	

2.33.3 Print Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Web Service Settings" ►► "Print Setting".

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there's a header with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below that, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The left sidebar contains a tree view of settings: Network, TCP/IP Setting, E-mail Setting, LDAP Setting, IPP Setting, FTP Setting, SNMP Setting, SMB Setting, Web Service Settings (expanded), Web Service Common Settings, Printer Settings (selected), Scanner Settings, Bonjour Setting, NetWare Setting, AppleTalk Setting, Network Fax Setting, WebDAV Settings, OpenAPI Setting, TCP Socket Setting, IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting, and LLTD Setting. The main content area is titled 'Printer Settings' and includes a note '* is reflected after reset.' The form contains four fields: 'Print Function' (a dropdown menu set to 'ON'), 'Printer Name*' (a text input field), 'Printer Location*' (a text input field), and 'Printer Information*' (a text input field). At the bottom right of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Print Function	Select "ON".	
Printer Name	Enter a printer name (up to 63 characters, excluding a colon ! \ ,).	
Printer Location	Enter the location of the printer (up to 63 characters).	
Printer Information	Enter printer information (up to 63 characters).	

2.34 Using Data Saved in a Cellular Phone or PDA

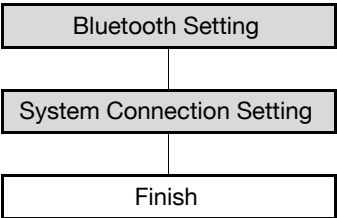
Configure settings to wirelessly connect this machine to a cellular phone or PDA with the Bluetooth function installed and to use data stored in such a terminal.

You can print data saved in a cellular phone or PDA or save data in a User Box of this machine. Once data is saved in a User Box, it can be sent to an external device if necessary.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.

Reference

- To use this function, install the optional "local connection kit EK-605" in this machine.



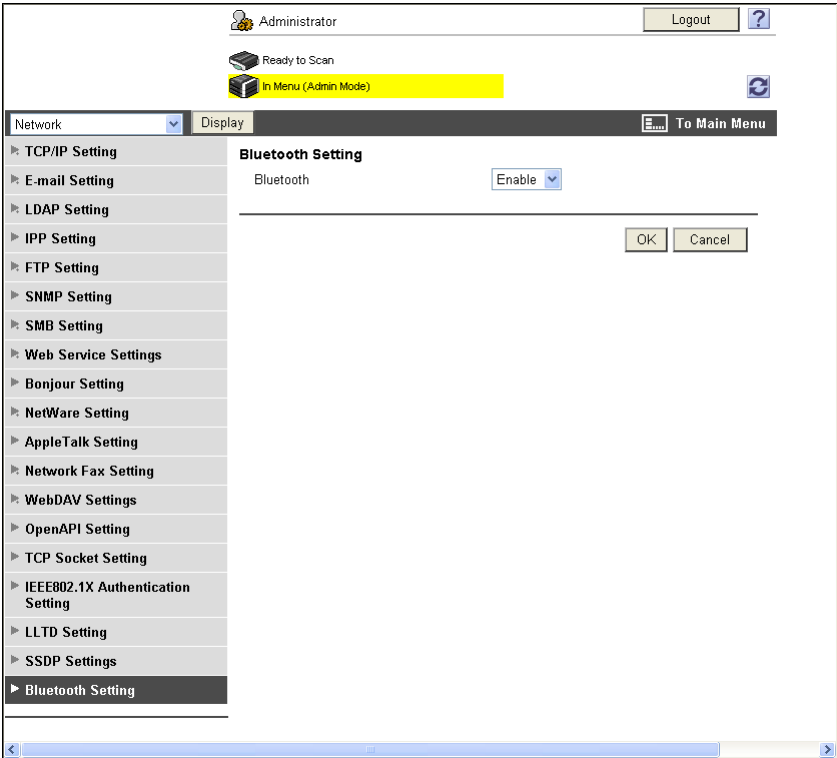
Reference

For details on printing data saved in a cellular phone or PDA or save data in a User Box of this machine, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

For details on using the saved data in User Boxes of this machine, refer to the "User's Guide [Box Operations]".

2.34.1 Bluetooth Setting

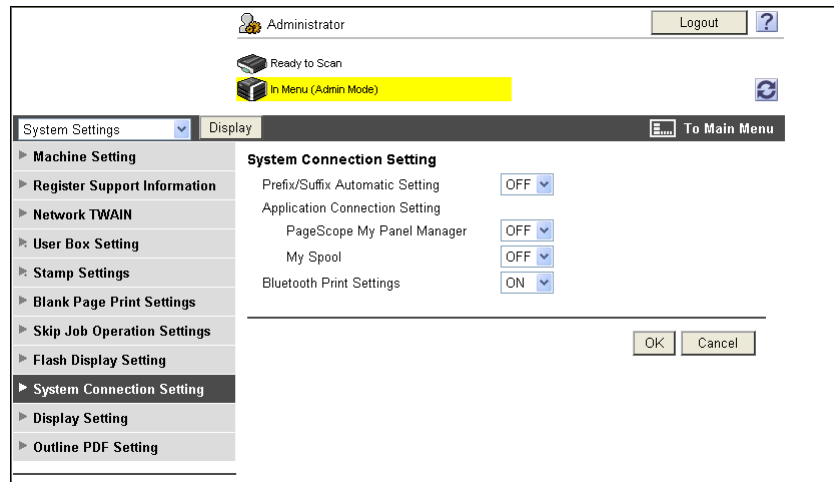
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Bluetooth Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
Bluetooth	Select "Enable".	

2.34.2 System Connection Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "System Connection Setting".



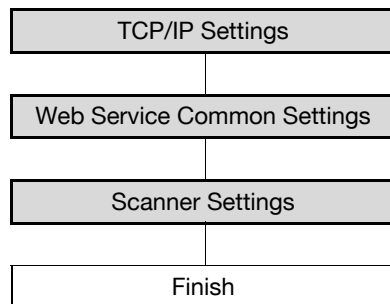
Item	Description	Prior check
Bluetooth Print Settings	Select "ON". This item is not displayed when "Bluetooth" is set to "Disable".	

2.35 Using the WS scan function

Configure the following settings when you scan data using the Web services function of Windows Vista/Server 2008.

The Web services function can automatically detect this network-connected machine and install it as a WS scanner. When you select this machine (installed as the WS scanner), you can use the HTTP for communication and scan data.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

For details on the WS scan functions, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.35.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.35.2 Web Service Common Settings

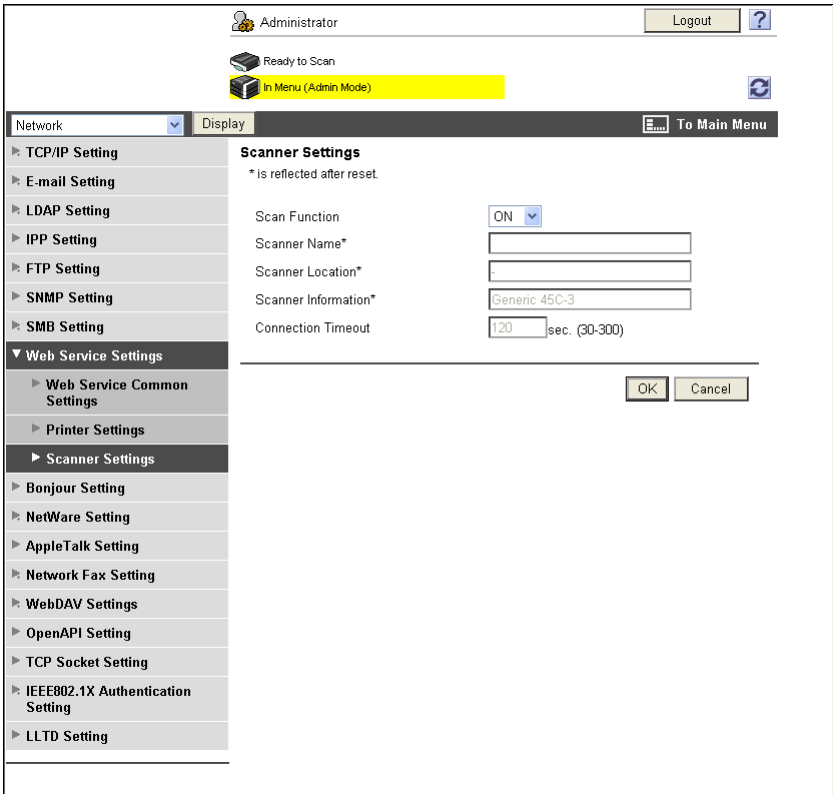
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Web Service Settings" ►► "Web Service Common Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Web Service Common Settings' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The left sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'Web Service Settings' expanded and 'Web Service Common Settings' selected. The main area displays settings for 'Web Service Common Settings', including 'Friendly Name*', 'SSL Setting' (OFF), 'Publication Service' (Enable), and 'Certificate Verification Level Settings' (Validity Period: Confirm, Key Usage: Do Not Confirm, Chain: Do Not Confirm, Expiration Date Confirmation: Do Not Confirm). The top bar shows 'Administrator' mode and a 'Logout' button. The bottom right has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Friendly Name	Enter a Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	
Publication Service	If you use this machine in an environment where NetBIOS is disabled or only the IPv6 protocol communication is used by the Windows Vista or Server 2008 system, set this item to "Enable". The Publication Service function can detect up to 512 destinations, including those detected with the NetBIOS service.	

2.35.3 Scanner Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Web Service Settings" ►► "Scanner Settings".



Item	Description	Prior check
Scan Function	Select "ON".	
Scanner Name	Enter a scanner name (up to 63 characters).	
Printer Location	Enter a scanner location (up to 63 characters).	
Scanner Informa-tion	Enter scanner information (up to 63 characters).	
Connection Time-out	Enter a connection timeout.	

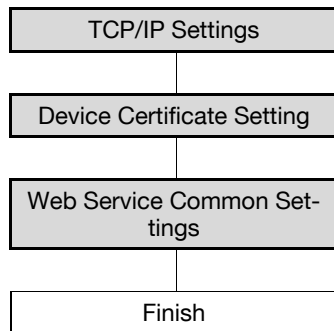
2.36 Using Web services to secure communication from Vista/Server 2008 to this machine via SSL

Configure settings to use the encrypted SSL communication from a computer running on the Windows Vista/Server 2008 to this machine in a Web services environment. Security of Web services communication can be enhanced using the SSL protocol encryption.

When you configure the SSL communication settings, check the following points.

- To use the encrypted SSL communication between this machine and the computer, you must set the bidirectional SSL communication between them. Configure both the following settings and the settings for Using Web services to establish an SSL communication from this machine to Vista/Server 2008.
- Your computer must be able to resolve the name of this machine using the DNS. Register this machine in the DNS server and configure the DNS settings in your computer in advance.
- If the certificate of this machine is not the one issued by the Certificate Authority (CA), you must register the device certificate on the Windows Vista system as the Trusted Root Certification Authorities certificate for local computers.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.36.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.36.2 Device Certificate Setting

Configure settings for SSL communication.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.36.3 Web Service Common Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Web Service Settings" ►► "Web Service Common Settings".

Item	Description	Prior check
Friendly Name	Enter a Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	
SSL Settings	Select "ON".	
Publication Service	If you use this machine in an environment where NetBIOS is disabled or only the IPv6 protocol communication is used by the Windows Vista or Server 2008 system, set this item to "Enable".	

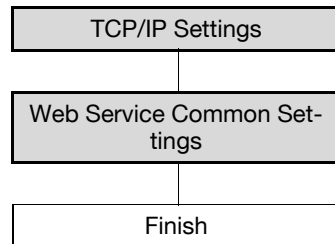
2.37 Using Web services to establish an SSL communication from this machine to Vista/Server 2008

Configure settings to use the encrypted SSL communication from this machine to a computer running on the Windows Vista/Server 2008 in a Web services environment. Security of Web services communication can be enhanced using the SSL protocol encryption.

When you configure the SSL communication settings, check the following points.

- To use the encrypted SSL communication between this machine and the computer, you must set the bidirectional SSL communication between them. Configure both the following settings and the settings for Using Web services to secure communication from Vista/Server 2008 to this machine via SSL.
- Create a certificate at the computer first, and then associate the TCP/IP communication port (the default port number is 5358).

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.37.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.37.2 Web Service Common Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "Web Service Settings" ►► "Web Service Common Settings".

Item	Description	Prior check
Friendly Name	Enter a Friendly Name (up to 62 characters).	
SSL Settings	Select "ON".	
Publication Service	If you use this machine in an environment where NetBIOS is disabled or only the IPv6 protocol communication is used by the Windows Vista or Server 2008 system, set this item to "Enable". The Publication Service function can detect up to 512 destinations, including those detected with the NetBIOS service.	
Certificate Verification Level Settings	Specify how to validate a certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the target certificate is within the validity period.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check that the target certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Verification Settings' page. The sidebar on the left has 'Security' selected, and the main area displays the following settings:

- Certificate Verification Settings:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- Timeout:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(5-300) sec'.
- OCSP Service:** An unchecked checkbox.
- URL:** A text input field.
- Proxy Settings:**
 - Proxy Server Address:** A text input field with a label 'Please check to enter host name.'
 - Proxy Server Port Number:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(1-65535)'.
 - User Name:** A text input field.
 - Password is changed:** A checked checkbox.
 - Password:** A text input field.
 - Address not using Proxy Server:** A text input field with a label 'Please check to enter host name.'

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to validate the certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

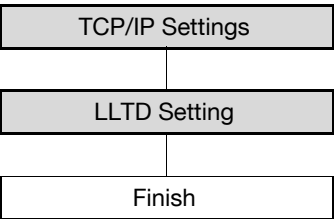
2.38 Displaying this machine on the network map

Configure settings to display this machine on the network map in Windows Vista or Server 2008.

When the LLTD function of this machine is enabled, the network position of this machine can be displayed on the network map. Also, when you click the icon of this machine on the network map, you can access PageScope Web Connection.

The network map is very useful for checking the location and information of this machine and for network troubleshooting.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



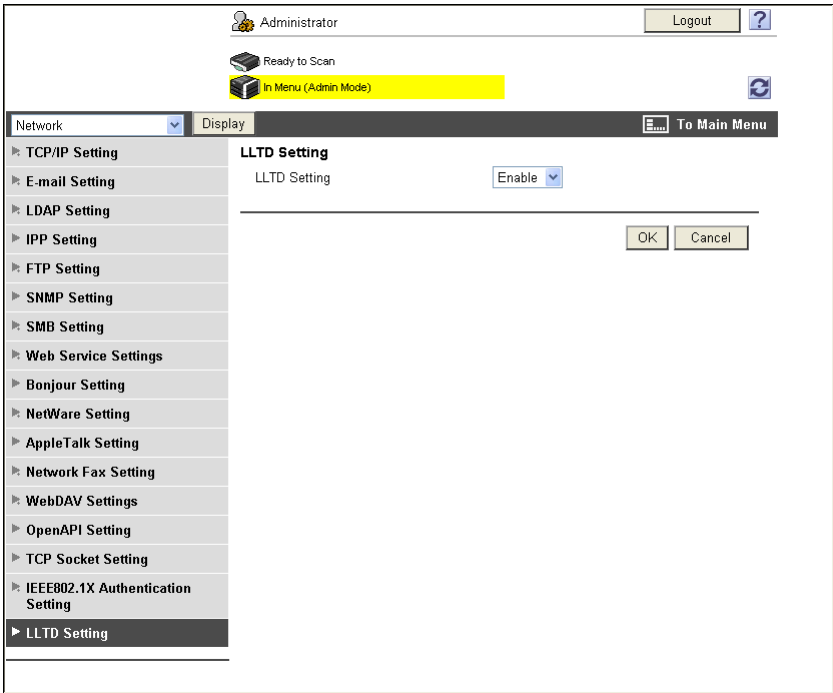
2.38.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.38.2 LLTD Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "LLTD Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
LLTD Setting	Select "Enable".	

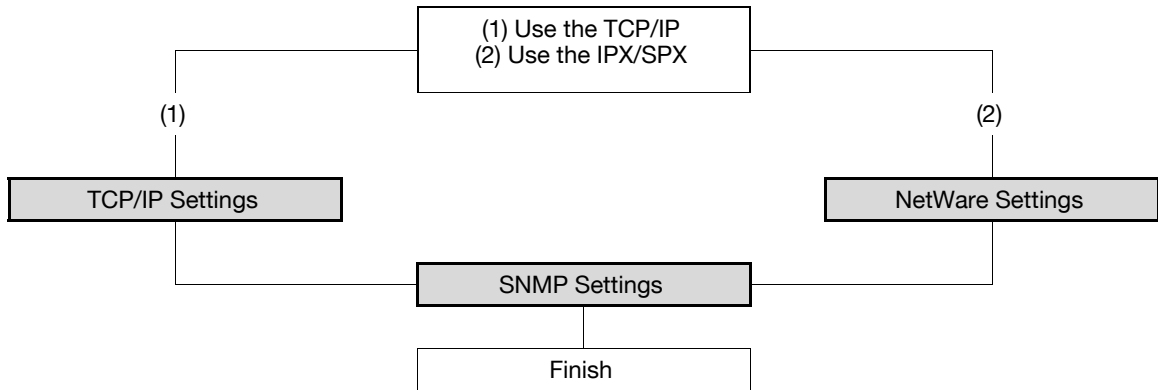
2.39 Monitoring this machine by SNMP Manager

Configure settings to monitor this machine using the SNMP manager.

Using the SNMP manager, you can communicate with the SNMP agent of this machine and get, manage, and supervise this machine information via the network. The SNMP can be used in the TCP/IP environment or IPX/SPX environment.

Also, you can send this machine status information to others using the SNMP TRAP function. For details, refer to page 2-132.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.39.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.39.2 NetWare Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "NetWare Setting" ►► "NetWare Setting".

Administrator

Logout

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network

Display

To Main Menu

► TCP/IP Setting

► E-mail Setting

► LDAP Setting

► IPP Setting

► FTP Setting

► SNMP Setting

► SMB Setting

► Web Service Settings

► Bonjour Setting

▼ NetWare Setting

► NetWare Status

► AppleTalk Setting

► Network Fax Setting

► WebDAV Settings

► OpenAPI Setting

► TCP Socket Setting

► IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting

► LLTD Setting

NetWare Setting

* is reflected after reset.

IPX Setting*

ON

(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)

Ethernet Frame Type*

Auto Detect

NetWare Print Mode*

OFF

PServer

Print Server Name*

☐ Password is changed.

Print Server Password*

Polling Interval*

1

sec. (1-65535)

Bindery/NDS Setting*

NDS

Bindery

File Server Name*

NDS

NDS Context Name*

NDS Tree Name*

Nprinter/Rprinter

Print Server Name*

Printer Number*

255

 (0-255, 255: Auto)

User Authentication Setting

ON

OK

Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Select a frame type to be used.	Frame type

2.39.3 SNMP Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SNMP Setting".

The screenshot displays the 'SNMP Setting' page within the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with options like TCP/IP Setting, E-mail Setting, LDAP Setting, IPP Setting, FTP Setting, **SNMP Setting**, SMB Setting, Web Service Settings, Bonjour Setting, NetWare Setting, AppleTalk Setting, Network Fax Setting, WebDAV Settings, OpenAPI Setting, TCP Socket Setting, IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting, and LLTD Setting. The main content area is titled 'SNMP Setting' and includes sections for:

- SNMP**: A dropdown menu set to 'ON', with checkboxes for 'SNMP v1/v2c(IP)', 'SNMP v3(IP)', and 'SNMP v1(IPX)'.
- UDP Port Setting**: A text field with '161' and a range '(1-65535)'.
- SNMP v1/v2c Setting**: Fields for 'Read Community Name' (public) and 'Write Community Name' (private).
- SNMP v3 Setting**: Fields for 'Context Name', 'Discovery User Name' (public), 'Read User Name' (initial), and 'Write User Name' (restrict). It also includes 'Security Level' dropdowns and password change sections for both read and write users.
- TRAP Setting**: 'Allow Setting' (Allow) and 'Trap Setting when Authentication Fails' (Disable).
- Administrator Information**: Fields for 'Device Name', 'Device Location', and 'Administrator Name'.

 At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
SNMP Setting	Select "ON". When you use the SNMP, select whether to use "SNMP v1/v2c (IP)", "SNMP v3(IP)", or "SNMP v1 (IPX)". You can select "SNMP v1 (IPX)" only when the IPX is enabled.	The protocol you use (TCP/IP or IPX/SPX)
UDP Port Setting	Enter a UDP port number. Default setting: 161	
SNMP v1/v2c Settings	Configure the settings for SNMP v1/v2c.	
Read Community Name	Enter a community name used for reading (up to 15 characters, excluding space and \).	

Item	Description	Prior check
Write Community Name	Enter a community name used for reading and writing (up to 15 characters).	
SNMP v3 Setting	Set the settings for SNMP v3.	
Context Name	Enter a context name (up to 63 characters, excluding space and \).	
Discovery User Name	Enter a context name for detection (up to 32 characters, excluding space and \).	
Read User Name	Enter a user name of the read-only user (up to 32 characters, excluding space and \).	
Security Level	Select a security level of the read-only user.	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
auth-password	Enter the password of the read-only user for authentication (up to 8 to 32 characters, excluding space and \).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
priv-password	Enter the privacy password of the read-only user to be used for privacy (encryption) (up to 8 to 32 characters, excluding space and \).	
Write User Name	Enter a user name used of the read and write-only user (up to 32 characters, excluding space and \).	
Security Level	Select a security level of the read and write-only user.	
auth-password	Enter the password of the read and write-only user for authentication (up to 8 to 32 characters, excluding space and \).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
priv-password	Enter the privacy password of the read and write-only user to be used for privacy (encryption) (up to 8 to 32 characters, excluding space and \).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Encryption Algorithm	Select an encryption algorithm.	
Authentication Method	Select an authentication method.	
Device Name	Enter the name of this machine (up to 255 characters).	
Device Location	Enter the location to install this machine (up to 255 characters).	
Administrator Name	Enter the administrator name (up to 255 characters).	

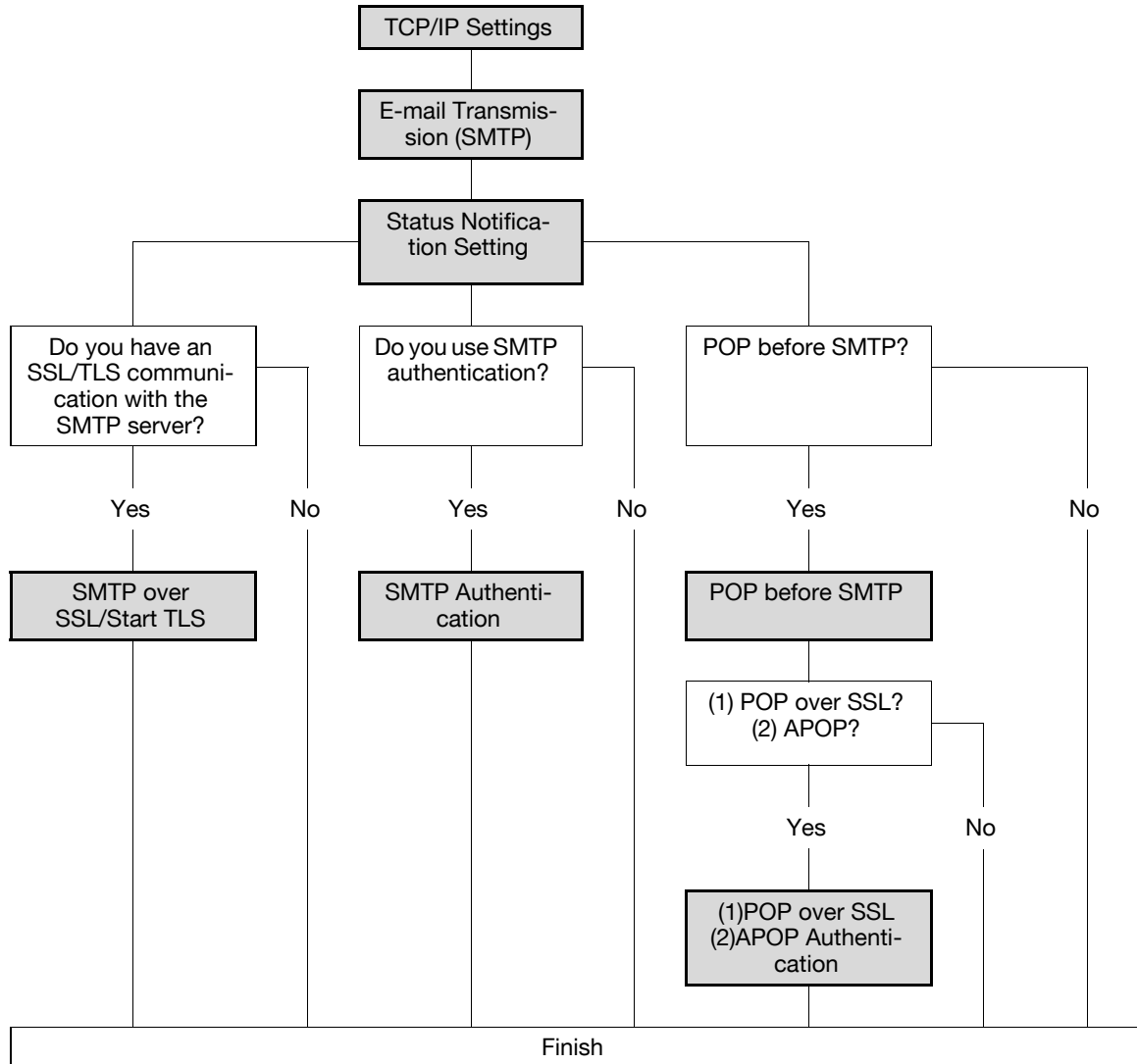
2.40 Reporting the status of this machine (by E-mail)

Configure settings to report the status of this machine to the administrator by E-mail.

If an alarm has occurred on this machine, it can be reported to the specified destination by E-mail.

A combination of POP before SMTP authentication, APOP authentication, SMTP authentication and SSL/TLS encryption can be used for notification by E-mail.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.40.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.40.2 E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail Transmission (SMTP)".

Item	Description	Prior check
E-mail TX Setting	Select the "E-mail TX Setting" check box.	
E-mail Notification	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Enter the SMTP server address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 25	Server port number
Connection Timeout	Specify the timeout period for a communication with a server.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of an E-mail to be sent.	
Server Capacity	Enter the SMTP server capacity. A mail that exceeds the upper limit of the server capacity will be discarded. If an E-mail is divided, this setting is made invalid.	Server reception limit
Admin. E-mail Address	Displays the E-mail address of the administrator. If the administrator address has not been specified, enter the E-mail address of the administrator by selecting "System Settings" and "Machine Setting".	
Binary Division	Select this check box to divide an E-mail. If the E-mail software that received an E-mail does not have a restoration function, you may not be able to read the E-mail.	Restoration function of E-mail software
Divided Mail Size	Enter the divided mail size to divide an E-mail.	Server reception limit

2.40.3 Status Notification Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ► "Status Notification Setting" ► "E-mail" ► [Edit].

Item	Description	Prior check
Notification address	Enter the destination E-mail address.	Notification address
Replenish Paper Tray	Sends a notification when the paper tray is empty.	
JAM	Sends a notification when a page has been jammed.	
PM Call	Sends a notification when the periodical inspection is required.	
Replace Staples	Sends a notification when there are no staples remaining.	
Replenish Toner	Sends a notification when the toner is empty.	
Finisher Tray Full	Sends a notification when the capacity of the finisher tray has been exceeded.	
Service Call	Sends a notification when a service call has occurred.	
Job Finished	Sends a notification when the job has finished.	
Hole-Punch Scrap Box Full	Sends a notification when you need to empty the punch scrap box.	
Waste Toner Box Full	Sends a notification when the waste toner box needs to be replaced.	
Imaging Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the imaging unit (IU) needs to be replaced.	
Fusing Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the fusing unit needs to be replaced.	
Transfer Roller Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the transfer roller unit needs to be replaced.	
Transfer Belt Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the transfer belt needs to be replaced.	
Ozon Filter Yield	Sends a notification when the ozon filter needs to be replaced.	

2.40.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Configure the settings for SMTP over SSL or Start TLS.

For details, refer to page 2-50.

2.40.5 SMTP Authentication

Configure SMTP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.40.6 POP before SMTP

Configure the settings for POP before SMTP.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.40.7 POP over SSL

Configure the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-54.

2.40.8 APOP Authentication

Configure APOP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-55.

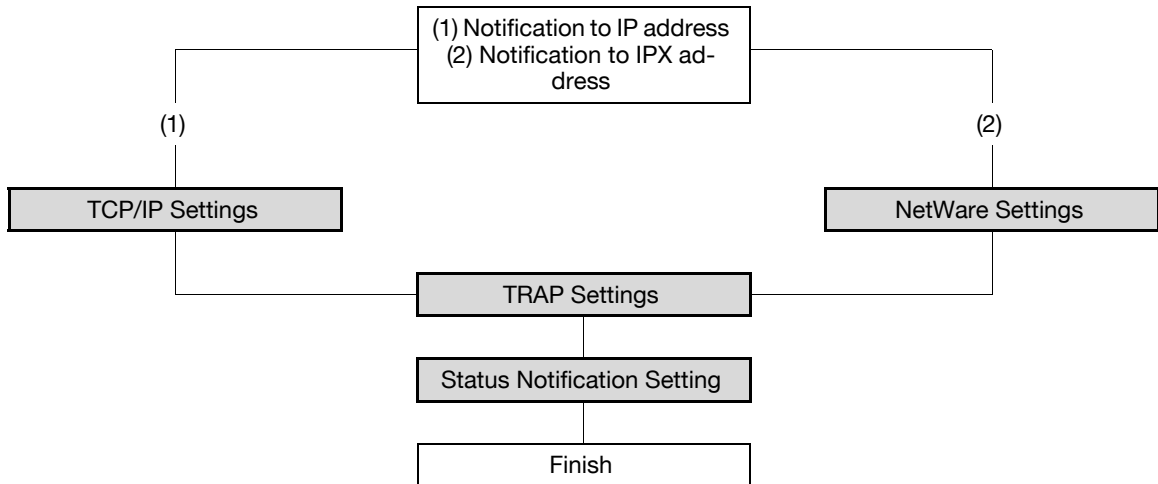
2.41 Reporting the status of this machine (TRAP)

Configure settings to report the status of this machine to the administrator using the SNMP TRAP functions.

If an alarm has occurred on this machine, it can be reported to the specified IP address or IPX address by the SNMP TRAP.

To use the SNMP TRAP functions, you must set the SNMP in advance. For details, refer to page 2-124.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.41.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.41.2 NetWare Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "NetWare Setting" ►► "NetWare Setting".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network Display To Main Menu

NetWare Setting

* is reflected after reset.

IPX Setting* ON

(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)

Ethernet Frame Type* Auto Detect

NetWare Print Mode* OFF

PServer

Print Server Name*

Password is changed.

Print Server Password*

Polling Interval* 1 sec. (1-65535)

Bindery/NDS Setting* NDS

Bindery

File Server Name*

NDS

NDS Context Name*

NDS Tree Name*

Nprinter/Rprinter

Print Server Name*

Printer Number* 255 (0-255, 255: Auto)

User Authentication Setting ON

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Select a frame type to be used.	Frame type

2.41.3 TRAP Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SNMP Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
Allow Setting	Select "Allow".	
Trap Setting when Authentication Fails	Select whether to enable TRAP transmission at the time of authentication failure.	

2.41.4 Status Notification Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Status Notification Setting" ►► "IP (IPX) Address" ►► [Edit].

Item	Description	Prior check
Notification address	If the destination has an "IP address", enter it. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. "If IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address. If the destination has an "IPX address", enter it using an 8-digit hexadecimal value.	Notification address
Port Number	If the destination has an "IP address", enter its port number.	
Node Address	If the destination has an "IPX address", enter the node address using a 12-digit hexadecimal value.	
Community Name	Enter a community name (up to 15 characters).	
Replenish Paper Tray	Sends a notification when the paper tray is empty.	
JAM	Sends a notification when a page has been jammed.	
PM Call	Sends a notification when the periodical inspection is required.	
Replace Staples	Sends a notification when there are no staples remaining.	
Replenish Toner	Sends a notification when the toner is empty.	
Finisher Tray Full	Sends a notification when the capacity of the finisher tray has been exceeded.	
Service Call	Sends a notification when a service call has occurred.	
Job Finished	Sends a notification when the job has finished.	
Hole-Punch Scrap Box Full	Sends a notification when you need to empty the punch scrap box.	
Waste Toner Box Full	Sends a notification when the waste toner box needs to be replaced.	
Imaging Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the imaging unit (IU) needs to be replaced.	
Fusing Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the fusing unit needs to be replaced.	
Transfer Roller Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the transfer roller unit needs to be replaced.	
Transfer Belt Unit Yield	Sends a notification when the transfer belt needs to be replaced.	
Ozon Filter Yield	Sends a notification when the ozon filter needs to be replaced.	

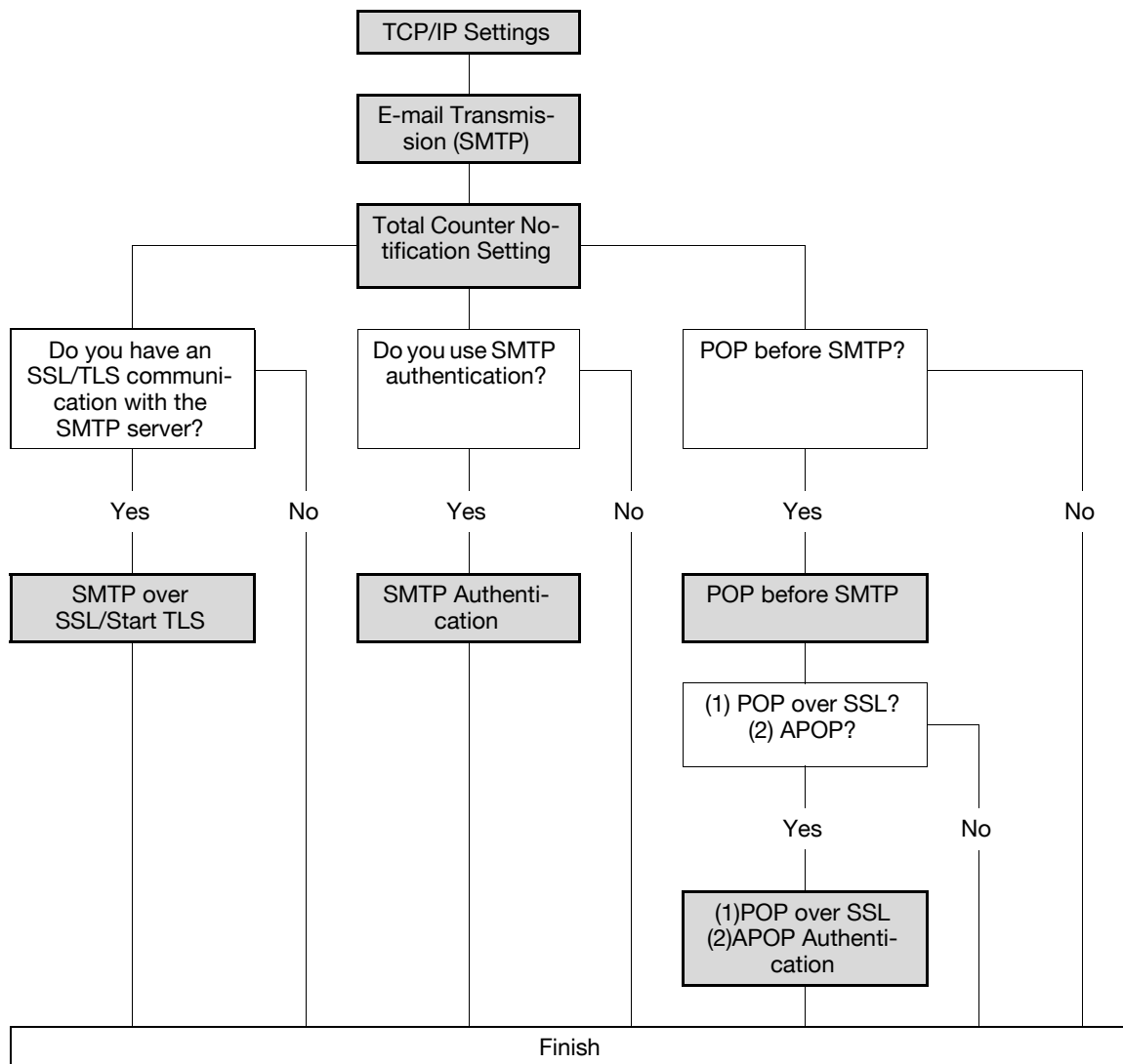
2.42 Reporting the counter information of this machine (by E-mail)

Configure settings to report the counter information of this machine by E-mail.

You can send the counter information being managed on this machine to the specified destination by E-mail.

A combination of POP before SMTP authentication, APOP authentication, SMTP authentication and SSL/TLS encryption can be used for notification by E-mail.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.42.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.42.2 E-mail Transmission (SMTP)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "E-mail Setting" ►► "E-mail Transmission (SMTP)".

Item	Description	Prior check
E-mail TX Setting	Select the "E-mail TX Setting" check box.	
Total Counter Notification	Select "ON".	
SMTP Server Address	Enter the SMTP server address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Port Number	Enter the port number. Default setting: 25	Server port number
Connection Timeout	Specify the timeout period for a communication with a server.	
Max Mail Size	Select whether to limit the size of an E-mail to be sent.	
Server Capacity	Enter the SMTP server capacity. A mail that exceeds the upper limit of the server capacity will be discarded. If an E-mail is divided, this setting is made invalid.	Server reception limit
Admin. E-mail Address	Displays the E-mail address of the administrator. If the administrator address has not been specified, enter the E-mail address of the administrator by selecting "System Settings" and "Machine Setting".	
Binary Division	Select this check box to divide an E-mail. If the E-mail software that received an E-mail does not have a restoration function, you may not be able to read the E-mail.	Restoration function of E-mail software
Divided Mail Size	Enter the divided mail size to divide an E-mail.	Server reception limit

2.42.3 Total Counter Notification Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Total Counter Notification Setting".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Maintenance ▼ Display To Main Menu

► Meter Count

► ROM Version

► Import/Export

► Status Notification Setting

► **Total Counter Notification Setting**

► Date/Time Setting

► Timer Setting

► Network Error Code Display Setting

► Reset

► License Settings

► Edit Font/Macro

Total Counter Notification Setting

Model Name

Schedule Setting

Schedule 1

☐ Daily

Interval of Day(s) (1-31)

☐ Weekly

Interval of Week(s) (1-6)

Day of the Week

☒ Monthly

Interval of Month(s) (1-6)

Date of the Month (1-31)

Schedule 2

☐ Daily

Interval of Day(s) (1-31)

☐ Weekly

Interval of Week(s) (1-6)

Day of the Week

☒ Monthly

Interval of Month(s) (1-6)

Date of the Month (1-31)

Register Notification Address

Address 1

E-mail Address

☐ Notifies by Schedule1

☐ Notifies by Schedule2

Address 2

E-mail Address

☐ Notifies by Schedule1

☐ Notifies by Schedule2

Address 3

E-mail Address

☐ Notifies by Schedule1

☐ Notifies by Schedule2

Test Notice

Send notice after setting complete,

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
Model Name	Enter a model name to be included in the notification mail message (up to 20 characters).	
Schedule Setting	Specify the conditions for the notification schedule. Schedules 1 and 2 can be registered with different settings.	Notification schedule
Register Notification Address	Enter the destination E-mail address (up to 320 characters). In addition, select a notification schedule.	Destination
Send notice after setting complete	If "ON" is selected, a notification is tested when you press [OK].	

2.42.4 SMTP over SSL/Start TLS

Configure the settings for SMTP over SSL or Start TLS.

For details, refer to page 2-50.

2.42.5 SMTP Authentication

Configure SMTP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.42.6 POP before SMTP

Configure the settings for POP before SMTP.

For details, refer to page 2-52.

2.42.7 POP over SSL

Configure the settings for POP over SSL.

For details, refer to page 2-54.

2.42.8 APOP Authentication

Configure APOP authentication settings.

For details, refer to page 2-55.

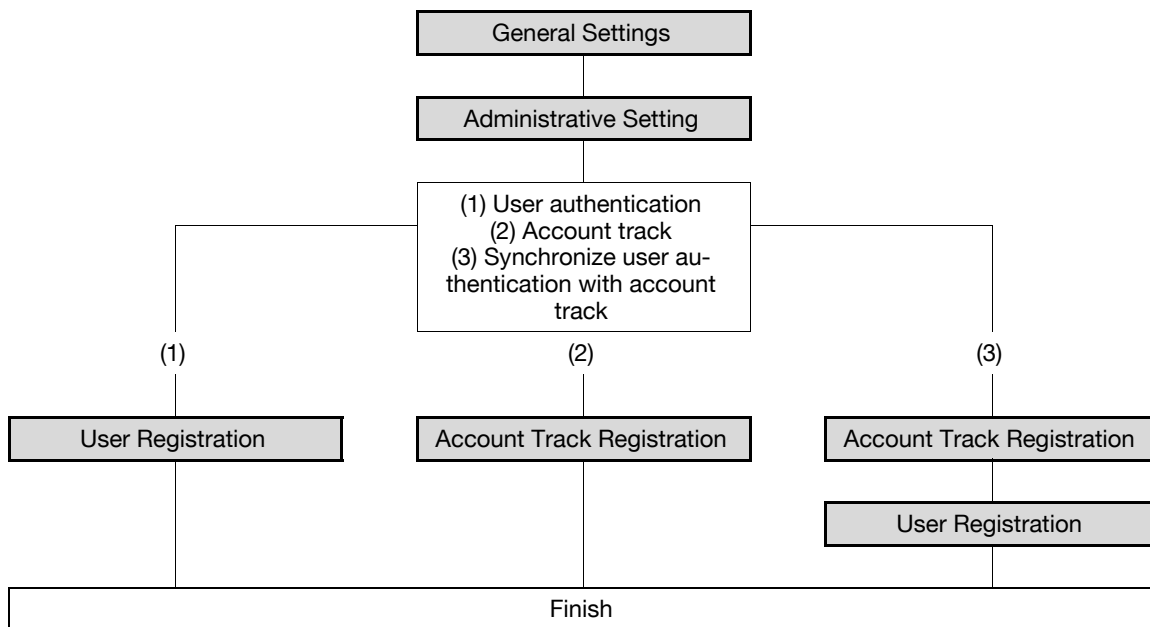
2.43 Restricting users of this machine (MFP authentication)

Configure settings to restrict users who can use this machine by MFP authentication.

You can configure the user authentication and account track settings to restrict use of this machine. User authentication is suitable for managing individual users, but account track is suitable for managing groups of users.

You can use a combination of user authentication and account track for management of each user for each department. You can use this function to assign the counter to both the department and user counters, and to aggregate the resulting values of both counters.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.43.1 General Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "General Settings".

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

The screenshot shows the 'General Settings' window in the PageScope Web Connection interface. The window has a title bar with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below the title bar, there's a status bar with 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main content area is divided into a left sidebar and a right main panel. The sidebar contains a tree view with 'General Settings' selected. The main panel displays the 'General Settings' configuration. The settings are as follows:

- User Authentication: ON (MFP)
- Public User Access: Restrict
- Ticket Hold Time Setting (Active Directory): 50 Minute (1-60)
- Account Track: ON
- Account Track Input Method: Account Name & Password
- Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track: Synchronize
- Number of Counters Assigned for Users: 500 (1-999)
- When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum: Skip Job

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
User Authentica-tion	Select "ON (MFP)".	
Public User Access	Select whether to allow the public user access. If "ON (With Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine by selecting "Public User Access" in the login page to log in to the machine. If "ON (Without Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine without logging in to the machine in the login page.	Do you permit the public user access?
Account Track	To enable account track, select "ON".	Do you use the ac-count track func-tion?
Account Track In-put Method	To use the account track function, select its authentication method. This setting is required when you only use the account track function.	
Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication with account track and manage users for each account track, select "Synchron-ize". Once you specify the account name of the user at user registration, you will be bale to log in by entering only the user name. If you have omitted the account name, the user must specify the account name when logging in for the first time. The account name that the user specify at the first login time will be registered as the account name of the user.	Do you synchronize user authentication with account track?
Number of Counters As-signed for Users	Enter a number of user counters to be assigned if user au-thentication and account track are enabled. You can aggregate the counter by user or account track, and assign up to 1,000 counters to users and account tracks. For example, if the number of user counters to be assigned is set to 950, you can register up to 50 account tracks.	
When Number of Jobs Reach Maxi-mum	Select the operation that is performed when the job count of each user or department has reached its limit. This limit must be set during user registration or account track registration.	

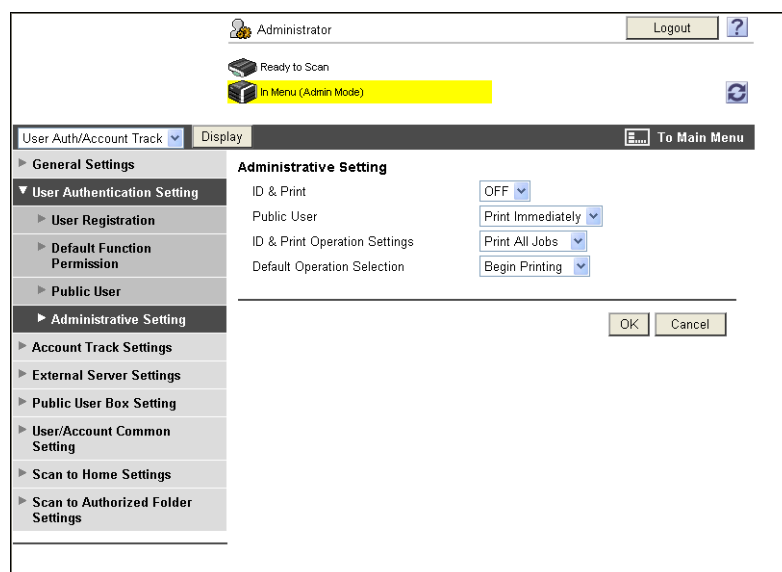
Reference

- If the Enhanced Security Mode is enabled, you cannot select "OFF" for the authentication method. Also, you cannot allow the public user access.

2.43.2 Administrative Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ► "User Authentication Setting" ► "Administrative Setting".

(This menu item will not be displayed if user authentication is disabled.)



Item	Description	Prior check
ID & Print	Select whether to process all print jobs requested from a registered user as ID & print jobs. If you select "ON", all print jobs requested from a registered user are processed as "ID & print" jobs even when ID & Print is not enabled on the printer driver. If you select "OFF", print jobs are processed as ID & print jobs only when "ID & Print" is enabled on the printer driver. A print job requested from a registered user is processed as a normal one if "ID & Print" is not enabled on the printer driver.	Do you want to process all print jobs requested from a registered user as ID & Print jobs?
Public User	Select the operation required when receiving a job without authentication information (a job for which printing is instructed while user authentication or account track is not enabled on the printer driver) or receiving a public user's job. If you select "Print Immediately", the received job is printed as it is. If you select "Save", the received job is saved in the ID & Print User Box.	
ID & Print Operation Settings	Select the operating mode when using the ID & Print function on an optional Authentication Unit. Select "Print All Jobs" to print all jobs of the target user that are saved in the ID & Print User Box by one authentication operation. Select "Print Each Job" to print one job of the target user that is saved in the ID & Print User Box by one authentication operation.	
Default Operation Selection	Select the default operation you want to apply after Authentication has been completed on the authentication unit (success in login). If you select "Begin Printing", ID & print jobs are executed after authentication has been completed. If you select "Print & Access", ID & print jobs are executed after authentication has been completed, and you can log in to the basic window. If you select "Access", you can log in to the basic window after authentication has been completed. In this case, ID & print jobs are not executed.	

Reference

- For details on the ID & print function, refer to the "User's Guide Print Operations".

2.43.3 User Registration

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "User Authentication Setting" ►► "User Registration" ►► [New Registration].

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

User Auth/Account Track Display To Main Menu

User Registration

No.

☒ Use opening number

☐ Input directly (1-500)

User Name

E-mail Address

User Password

Retype User Password

Account Name

Search from List

Registered Account Name

Specify Icon

Search from List

Registered icon

1

Continue Job

Function Permission

Copy Allow

Scan Allow

Save to External Memory Restrict

External Memory Document Scan Restrict

Fax Allow

Print Allow

User Box Allow

Print Scan/Fax TX Allow

Manual Destination Input Allow

Mobile/PDA Restrict

Biometric/IC Card Information Restrict

Registration Restrict

Output Permission(Print)

Color Allow

Black Allow

Output Permission(TX)

Color Allow

Max. Allowance Set

Total Allowance

☐ Total 1 (1-9999999)

Individual Allowance

☐ Color 1 (1-9999999)

☐ Black 1 (1-9999999)

Box Administration

☐ Box Count 1 (0-1000)

Limiting Access to Destinations

☐ Reference Allowed Group

Search from List

Registered Reference Group Number

TotalID

☒ Access Allowed Level 0

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
No.	Select a registration numbering system. If you specify the registration number, enter the number directly.	
User Name	Enter a user name (up to 64 characters).	
E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address of the user (up to 320 characters).	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password. This item is displayed when editing the registered information.	
User Password	Enter a password (up to 64 characters, excluding space and ").	
Retype User Password	Reenter the password for confirmation (up to 64 characters).	
Account Name	Enter an account name of the user. Before you specify an account name, you must register the account. This item is displayed if user authentication and account track are synchronized. If you have omitted the account name, the user must specify the user and account name when the user log in for the first time. The account name that the user specify at the first login time will be registered as the account name of the user. If the account information is changed after the account name has been specified, the user and the account will be dissociated.	
Specify Icon	From [Search from List], select an icon for the user.	
Temporarily stop use	Select whether to temporarily disable a registered user. This item is available when temporarily disabling registered users without deleting them. If you select "Stop Job", the target user cannot log in to or use this machine. This function is available when the MFP authentication is enabled.	
Function Permission	Specify whether to permit "Copy", "Scan", "Save to External Memory", "Scan a document in external memory", "Fax", "Print", "User Box", "Print Scan/Fax from User Box", "Manual Destination Input", "Cellular Phone/PDA", and "Register biometric/IC card information".	
Output Permission (Print)	Select whether to allow Color and Black printing.	
Output Permission (TX)	Select whether to allow the user to send color images.	
Max. Allowance Set	Specify the maximum numbers of printed sheets and User Boxes. To specify the limit, select the appropriate check box and enter the desired limit value.	
Limiting Access to Destinations	Restrict address book entries the user can access. To specify the reference allowed groups, select this check box and select groups from the list. You can select one or more reference allowed groups. To specify the access allowed level, select the check box and specify the access allowed level. Before you specify the reference allowed groups, you must register reference allowed groups. For details, refer to page 2-226.	

Reference

- If "Password Rules" is enabled, you cannot enter the password with less than eight characters. If a user password containing less than eight characters has already been registered, change the password so that it contains eight characters before enabling "Password Rules".
- If you permit the public user access, you can configure the Function Permission and Limiting Access to Destinations settings for the public user. For details, refer to page 2-231.
- By default, the sheets printed in the single color/2 color mode are counted as being printed in color. To restrict use of the color printing or color image transmission functions, you can change this behavior to treat printing in the single color/2 color mode as monochrome printing if necessary. For details, refer to page 2-234.
- Whether to allow the "Save to External Memory" function can be specified when "Save Document" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ► "User Box Settings" ► "External Memory Function Settings". Whether to allow the "External Memory Document Scan" function can be specified when "USB to User Box" is set to "ON" in "External Memory Function Settings". For details, refer to page 2-213.
- When "Security Settings" ► "Security Details" ► "Manual Destination Input" is set to "Restrict" in "Administrator Settings" on the Control Panel, the user cannot manually enter the address regardless of the setting of this function.
- To connect this machine to a cellular phone or PDA, install the optional Local Interface Kit EK-605 in this machine. Whether to allow the "Mobile/PDA" function can be specified when "Bluetooth" is set to "Enable" in "Network" ► "Bluetooth Setting" and "Bluetooth Print Settings" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ► "System Connection Setting".
- Whether to allow the "Biometric/IC Card Information Registration" function can be specified when "Biometric/IC Card Information Registration" is set to "Allow" in "Security" ► "Restrict User Access" while the optional authentication unit is installed.

2.43.4 Account Track Registration

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "Account Track Setting" ►► [New].

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

The screenshot displays the 'Account Track Registration' web page. At the top, there's a header with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below this, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The left sidebar contains a tree view with categories like 'General Settings', 'User Authentication Setting', 'Account Track Settings' (selected), 'External Server Settings', 'Public User Box Setting', 'User/Account Common Setting', 'Scan to Home Settings', and 'Scan to Authorized Folder Settings'. The main content area is titled 'Account Track Registration' and includes the following fields and options:

- No.**: Radio buttons for 'Use opening number' and 'Input directly' (with a text input field and '(1-500)' label).
- Account Name**: Text input field with a note '(Use alphanumeric characters or symbols, with exception of space and ")'.
 - Password**: Text input field.
 - Retype Password**: Text input field.
- Temporarily stop use**: A dropdown menu currently set to 'Continue Job'.
- Output Permission(Print)**: Two dropdown menus for 'Color' and 'Black', both set to 'Allow'.
- Output Permission(TX)**: A dropdown menu for 'Color' set to 'Allow'.
- Max. Allowance Set**:
 - Total Allowance**: A checkbox for 'Total' followed by a text input field and '(1-9999999)'.
 - Individual Allowance**:
 - Color**: A checkbox followed by a text input field and '(1-9999999)'.
 - Black**: A checkbox followed by a text input field and '(1-9999999)'.
 - Box Administration**:
 - Box Count**: A checkbox followed by a text input field and '(0-1000)'.

Item	Description	Prior check
No.	Select a registration numbering system. If you specify the registration number, enter the number directly.	
Account Name	Enter an account name (up to 8 characters, excluding space and ").	
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password. This item is displayed when editing the registered information.	
Password	Enter a password (up to 8 characters, excluding space and ").	
Retype Password	Reenter the password (up to 8 characters).	
Temporarily stop use	Select whether to temporarily disable a registered account. This item is available when temporarily disabling registered accounts without deleting them. If you select "Stop Job", the target account cannot log in to or use this machine. If you disable an account registered as a user's account name, users who belong to the disabled account also cannot log in to this machine.	
Output Permission (Print)	Select whether to allow color or black printing.	
Output Permission (TX)	Select whether to allow the user to send color images.	

Item	Description	Prior check
Max. Allowance Set	Specify the maximum numbers of printed sheets and User Boxes. To specify the limit, select the appropriate check box and enter the desired limit value.	

Reference

- If "Password Rules" is enabled, you cannot enter the password with less than characters. If a user password containing less than eight characters has already been registered, change the password so that it contains eight characters before enabling "Password Rules".
- By default, the sheets printed in the single color/2 color mode are counted as being printed in color. To restrict use of the color printing or color image transmission functions, you can change this behavior to treat printing in the single color/2 color mode as monochrome printing if necessary. For details, refer to page 2-234.

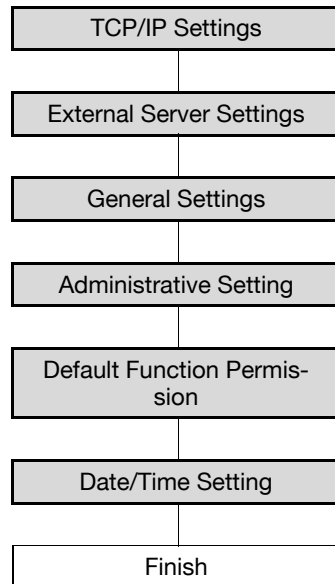
2.44 Restricting users of this machine (Active Directory)

Configure settings to restrict users who use this machine with Active Directory.

These settings are required if you wish to use the user authentication with Active Directory on the Windows Server. You can restrict the functions available to each user.

You can also restrict users who use this machine using Active Directory authentication in an IPv6 environment configured by the Active Directory function of Windows Server 2008.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.44.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

- To use Active Directory, specify the DNS server being linked to the Active Directory in the DNS server settings on this machine.
- To perform Active Directory authentication in an IPv6 environment configured by the Active Directory function of Windows Server 2008, configure IPv6. For details on the IPv6 settings, refer to page 2-172.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.44.2 External Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ► "External Server Settings" ► [Edit].

Item	Description	Prior check
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of an external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "Active Directory".	
Default Domain Name	Enter the default domain name of Active Directory (up to 64 characters).	Default Domain Name

2.44.3 General Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "General Settings".

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

Item	Description	Prior check
User Authentica-tion	Select "ON (External Server)".	
Public User Access	Select whether to allow the public user access. If "ON (With Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine by selecting "Public User Access" in the login page to log in to the machine. If "ON (Without Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine without logging in to the machine in the login page.	Do you permit the public user access?
Ticket Hold Time Setting (Active Directory)	Enter a time to hold the Kerberos authentication tickets.	
Account Track	To enable account track, select "ON". To select "ON", specify the authentication method first, and then register accounts in "Account Track Settings".	Do you use the account track function?
Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication with account track and manage users for each account track, select "Synchronize". To synchronize, specify the account name when logging in for the first time. The account name that the user specify at the first login time will be registered as the account name of the user.	Do you synchronize user authentication with account track?

2.44.4 Administrative Setting

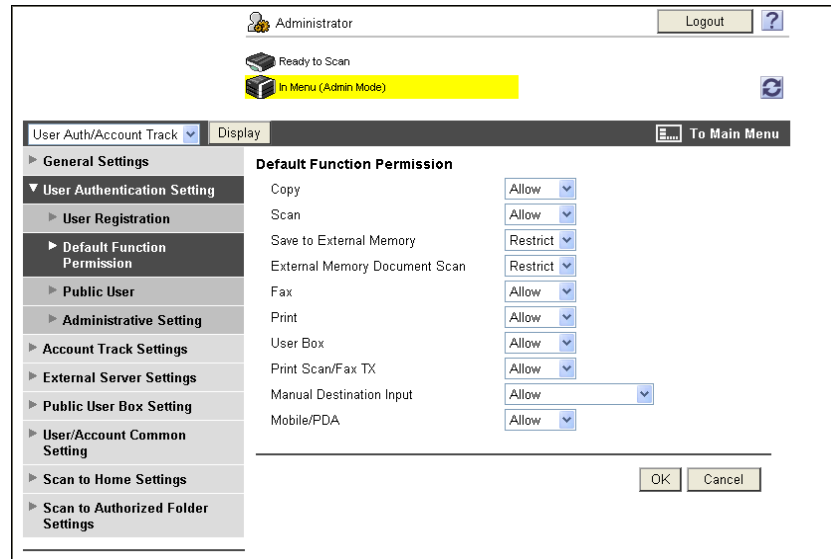
Configure settings to use or operate the ID & Print function.

For details, refer to page 2-142.

2.44.5 Default Function Permission

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ► "User Authentication Setting" ► "Default Function Permission".

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)



Item	Description	Prior check
Copy	Configure the default settings for function permissions to users who are authenticated on the external server. If a user not registered on this machine is authenticated on the external server, the user will be registered on this machine with the function permissions that you configure here. Once the function permissions of a user have been registered on this machine, you can edit them in "User Registration".	
Scan		
Save to External Memory		
External Memory Document Scan		
Fax		
Print		
User Box		
Print Scan/Fax TX		
Manual Destination Input		
Mobile/PDA		

Reference

- Whether to allow the "Save to External Memory" function can be specified when "Save Document" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ►► "User Box Settings" ►► "External Memory Function Settings". Whether to allow the "External Memory Document Scan" function can be specified when "USB to User Box" is set to "ON" in "External Memory Function Settings". For details, refer to page 2-213.
- When "Security Settings" ►► "Security Details" ►► "Manual Destination Input" is set to "Restrict" in "Administrator Settings" on the Control Panel, the user cannot manually enter the address regardless of the setting of this function.
- To connect this machine to a cellular phone or PDA, install the optional Local Interface Kit EK-605 in this machine. Whether to allow the "Mobile/PDA" function can be specified when "Bluetooth" is set to "Enable" in "Network" ►► "Bluetooth Setting" and "Bluetooth Print Settings" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ►► "System Connection Setting".

2.44.6 Date/Time Setting

To use Active Directory, specify the date and time of this machine.

- You cannot log in to Active Directory if the system time of this machine and Active Directory is extremely different. Specify the correct date and time for this machine to match the system time of Active Directory.

For details, refer to page 2-35.

2.45 Restricting users of this machine (Windows domain or workgroup)

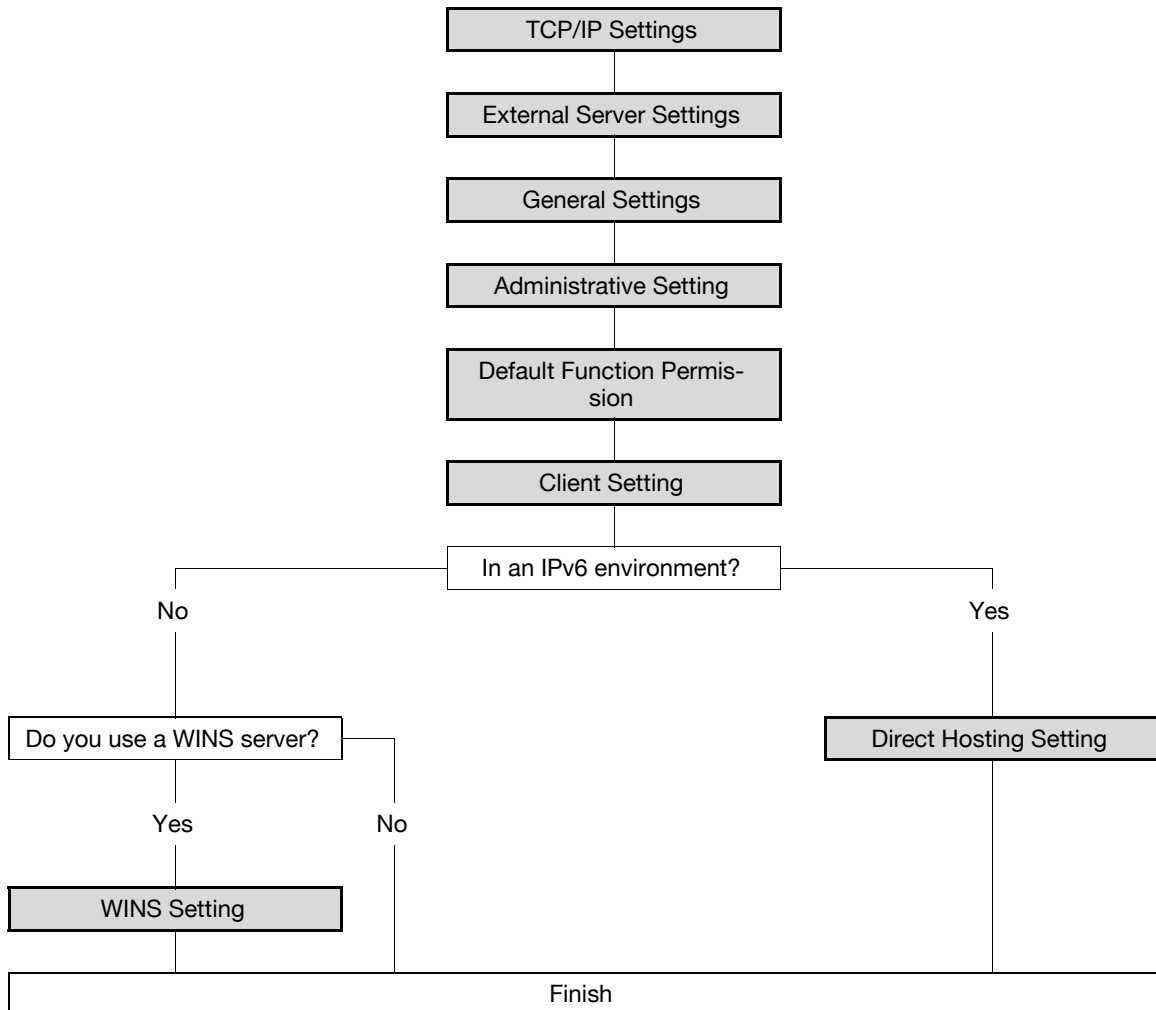
Configure settings to restrict users who can use this machine by NTLM authentication.

These settings are required if you wish to use NTLM authentication when using the Windows NT 4.0 system or when using Active Directory (NT-compatible domain environment) in the Windows Server system. You can restrict the functions available to each user.

You can also restrict users who use this machine by NTLM authentication in an IPv6 environment configured by the Active Directory function (NT-compatible domain environment) of Windows Server 2008.

To use NTLM authentication in the IPv6 environment, you must enable the Direct Hosting service. To resolve the names using a DNS server, prepare the DNS server and configure the DNS settings of this machine.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.45.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

- To perform NTLM authentication in an IPv6 environment configured by the Active Directory function (NT-compatible domain environment) of Windows Server 2008, configure IPv6. For details on the IPv6 settings, refer to page 2-172.
- To use NTLM authentication in the IPv6 environment, you must enable the Direct Hosting service. To resolve the names using a DNS server, prepare the DNS server and configure the DNS settings of this machine.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.45.2 External Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "External Server Settings" ►► [Edit].

Item	Description	Prior check
No	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of an external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NTLM v1" or "NTLM v2". NTLMv2 is applied on the Windows NT 4.0 (Service Pack 4) and later.	
Default Domain Name	Enter the NTLM default domain name (up to 64 characters). The default domain name must be uppercase letters.	Default Domain Name

2.45.3 General Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "General Settings".

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

Item	Description	Prior check
User Authentica-tion	Select "ON (External Server)".	
Public User Access	Select whether to allow the public user access. If "ON (With Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine by selecting "Public User Access" in the login page to log in to the machine. If "ON (Without Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine without logging in to the machine in the login page.	Do you permit the public user access?
Account Track	To enable account track, select "ON". To select "ON", specify the authentication method first, and then register accounts in "Account Track Settings".	Do you use the ac-count track func-tion?
Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication with account track and manage users for each account track, select "Synchro-nize". To synchronize, specify the account name when logging in for the first time. The account name that the user specify at the first login time will be registered as the account name of the user.	Do you synchronize user authentication with account track?

2.45.4 Administrative Setting

Configure settings to use or operate the ID & Print function.

For details, refer to page 2-142.

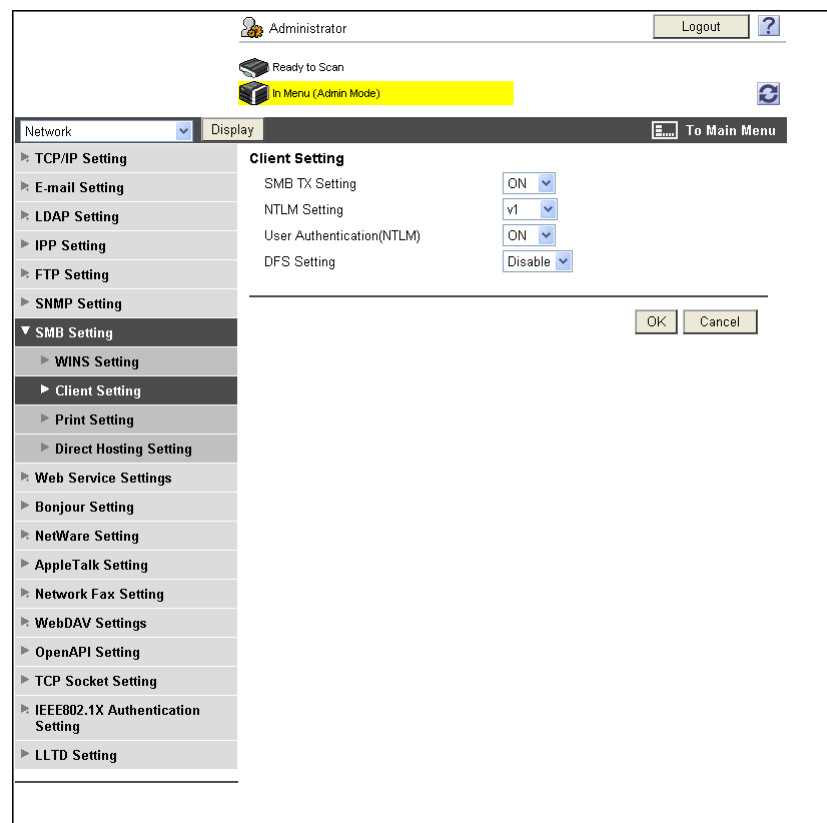
2.45.5 Default Function Permission

Configure the default settings for function permissions to users who are authenticated on the external server.

For details, refer to page 2-152.

2.45.6 Client Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SMB Setting" ►► "Client Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
User Authentication (NTLM)	Select "ON". If you set this option to "OFF" when NTLM authentication is used, the user authentication method will be switched to the MFP authentication.	

2.45.7 WINS Setting

When you start NTLM authentication via the router, you must set up the WINS server.

For details, refer to page 2-40.

2.45.8 Direct Hosting Setting

To use NTLM authentication in the IPv6 environment, you must enable the direct hosting service.

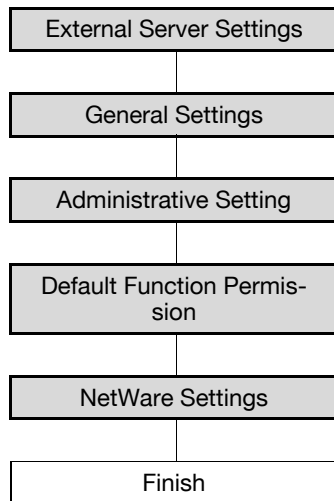
For details, refer to page 2-41.

2.46 Restricting users of this machine (NDS over IPX/SPX)

Configure settings to restrict users who can use this machine with NDS over IPX/SPX.

These settings are required if you use the NetWare 5.1 or later and use the NDS authentication in the IPX/SPX environment. You can restrict the functions available to each user.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.46.1 External Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ► "External Server Settings" ► [Edit].

The screenshot shows the 'External Server Registration' configuration page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The interface includes a top navigation bar with 'User Auth/Account Track' and 'Display' tabs, and a sidebar with various settings categories. The main content area is titled 'External Server Registration' and contains the following settings:

- No.**: 1
- External Server Name**: [Text input field]
- External Server Type**: NDS over IPX/SPX (dropdown menu)
- Active Directory**:
 - Default Domain Name: [Text input field]
- NTLM**:
 - Default Domain Name: [Text input field]
- NDS**:
 - Default NDS Tree Name: [Text input field]
 - Default NDS Context Name: [Text input field]
- LDAP**:
 - Server Address: [Text input field] (with a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name.')
 - Port No.: 389 (1-65535)
 - ☐ Enable SSL:
 - Port No. (SSL): 636 (1-65535)
 - Search Base: [Text input field]
 - Timeout: 60 sec. (5-300)
 - Authentication Method: Simple (dropdown menu)
 - Search Attribute: uid (text input field)

At the bottom right of the form are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
No.	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of an external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NDS over IPX/SPX".	
Default NDS Tree Name	Enter the default NDS tree name (up to 63 characters).	
Default NDS Context Name	Enter the default NDS context name (up to 191 characters).	

2.46.2 General Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "General Settings".

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

Item	Description	Prior check
User Authentication	Select "ON (External Server)".	
Public User Access	Select whether to allow the public user access. If "ON (With Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine by selecting "Public User Access" in the login page to log in to the machine. If "ON (Without Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine without logging in to the machine in the login page.	Do you permit the public user access?
Account Track	To enable account track, select "ON". To select "ON", specify the authentication method first, and then register accounts in "Account Track Settings".	Do you use the account track function?
Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication with account track and manage users for each account track, select "Synchronize". To synchronize, specify the account name when logging in for the first time. The account name that the user specify at the first login time will be registered as the account name of the user.	Do you synchronize user authentication with account track?

2.46.3 Administrative Setting

Configure settings to use or operate the ID & Print function.

For details, refer to page 2-142.

2.46.4 Default Function Permission

Configure the default settings for function permissions to users who are authenticated on the external server.

For details, refer to page 2-152.

2.46.5 NetWare Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "NetWare Setting" ►► "NetWare Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'NetWare Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The page is titled 'NetWare Setting' and includes a note: '* is reflected after reset.' The settings are organized into sections:

- IPX Setting***: A dropdown menu set to 'ON'. A note below says: '(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)'
- Ethernet Frame Type***: A dropdown menu set to 'Auto Detect'.
- NetWare Print Mode***: A dropdown menu set to 'OFF'.
- PServer**:
 - Print Server Name***: A text input field.
 - Password is changed.**: A checkbox.
 - Print Server Password***: A text input field.
 - Polling Interval***: A text input field set to '1' with a unit of 'sec. (1-65535)'.
 - Bindery/NDS Setting***: A dropdown menu set to 'NDS'.
 - Bindery**:
 - File Server Name***: A text input field.
 - NDS**:
 - NDS Context Name***: A text input field.
 - NDS Tree Name***: A text input field.
- Nprinter/Rprinter**:
 - Print Server Name***: A text input field.
 - Printer Number***: A text input field set to '255' with a unit of '(0-255,255:Auto)'.
- User Authentication Setting**: A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.

The left sidebar shows a list of settings categories, with 'NetWare Setting' highlighted. The top of the page shows the user is logged in as 'Administrator' and has a 'Logout' button. There is also a 'To Main Menu' button.

Item	Description	Prior check
IPX Setting	Select "ON".	
Ethernet Frame Type	Select a frame type to be used.	Frame type
User Authentication Setting	Select "ON".	

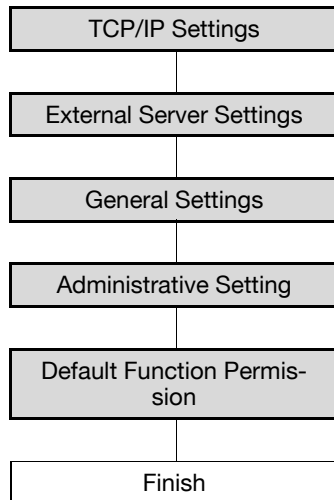
2.47 Restricting users of this machine (NDS over TCP/IP)

Configure settings to restrict users who can use this machine with NDS over TCP/IP.

These settings are required if you use the NetWare 5.1 or later and use NDS authentication in the TCP/IP environment. You can restrict the functions available to each user. Apply the latest service pack to each NetWare version.

To use the authentication with NDS over TCP/IP, you must specify the DNS server in the DNS sever settings of this machine. During user authentication, the tree name and context name are inquired to the specified DNS server to obtain the IP address of the NDS authentication server.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.47.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

- To use the authentication with NDS over TCP/IP, you must specify the DNS server in the DNS sever settings of this machine.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.47.2 External Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "External Server Settings" ►► [Edit].

Item	Description	Prior check
No	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of an external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "NDS over TCP/IP".	
Default NDS Tree Name	Enter the default NDS tree name (up to 63 characters).	
Default NDS Context Name	Enter the default NDS context name (up to 191 characters).	

2.47.3 General Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "General Settings".

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

Item	Description	Prior check
User Authentica-tion	Select "ON (External Server)".	
Public User Access	Select whether to allow the public user access. If "ON (With Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine by selecting "Public User Access" in the login page to log in to the machine. If "ON (Without Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine without logging in to the machine in the login page.	Do you permit the public user access?
Account Track	To enable account track, select "ON". To select "ON", specify the authentication method first, and then register accounts in "Account Track Settings".	Do you use the ac-count track func-tion?
Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication with account track and manage users for each account track, select "Synchro-nize". To synchronize, specify the account name when logging in for the first time. The account name that the user specify at the first login time will be registered as the account name of the user.	Do you synchronize user authentication with account track?

2.47.4 Administrative Setting

Configure settings to use or operate the ID & Print function.

For details, refer to page 2-142.

2.47.5 Default Function Permission

Configure the default settings for function permissions to users who are authenticated on the external server.

For details, refer to page 2-152.

2.48 Restricting users of this machine (LDAP)

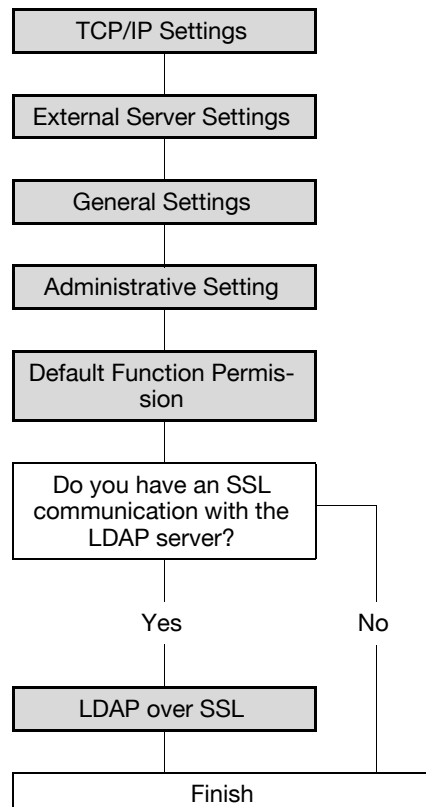
Configure settings to restrict users who can access to this machine using the LDAP server.

These settings are required if you use the LDAP server for user authentication. You can restrict the functions available to each user.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.

Reference

- To use the same LDAP server for both user authentication and destination search, the certificate verification settings of the LDAP server for user authentication specified in "External Server Settings" are determined according to the certificate verification settings of the LDAP server for destination search specified in "Network" ► "LDAP Setting" ► "Setting Up LDAP". For details on LDAP server settings for destination search and certificate verification settings, refer to page 2-65.



2.48.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.48.2 External Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "External Server Settings" ►► [Edit].

The screenshot shows the 'External Server Registration' configuration page. On the left is a navigation menu with options like General Settings, User Authentication Setting, Account Track Settings, External Server Settings (selected), Public User Box Setting, User/Account Common Setting, Scan to Home Settings, and Scan to Authorized Folder Settings. The main area contains the following fields:

- No.**: 2
- External Server Name**: [Text input field]
- External Server Type**: LDAP (selected from a dropdown)
- Active Directory**: [Text input field]
- Default Domain Name**: [Text input field]
- NTLM**: [Text input field]
- Default Domain Name**: [Text input field]
- NDS**: [Text input field]
- Default NDS Tree Name**: [Text input field]
- Default NDS Context Name**: [Text input field]
- LDAP**:
 - Server Address**: [Text input field] with a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name.'
 - Port No.**: 389 (1-65535)
 - Enable SSL**: [checkbox]
 - Port No.(SSL)**: 636 (1-65535)
 - Search Base**: [Text input field]
 - Timeout**: 60 sec. (5-300)
 - General Settings**: Simple (selected from a dropdown)
 - Search Attribute**: uid

At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
No	Displays the registration number.	
External Server Name	Enter the name of an external authentication server (up to 32 characters).	
External Server Type	Select "LDAP".	
Server Address	Specify the LDAP server address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Port No.	Enter the port number. Default setting: 389	
Search Base	Enter the search starting point in the directory structure under the LDAP server (up to 255 characters). This search function also covers subdirectories under the entered starting point.	Search base
Timeout	Enter the timeout period for LDAP search.	
Authentication Method	Select the authentication method to log in to the LDAP server. Select the same authentication method as that used on the LDAP server.	Server authentication method
Search Attributes	Enter attributes to be used for search of user account (up to 64 characters, the only symbol allowed is a hyphen (-)).	

2.48.3 General Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "General Settings".

(This menu item will not be displayed when PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication.)

Item	Description	Prior check
User Authentica-tion	Select "ON (External Server)".	
Public User	Select whether to allow the public user access. If "ON (With Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine by selecting "Public User Access" in the login page to log in to the machine. If "ON (Without Login)" is selected, the public user can use this machine without logging in to the machine in the login page.	Do you permit the public user access?
Account Track	To enable account track, select "ON". To select "ON", specify the authentication method first, and then register accounts in "Account Track Settings".	Do you use the ac-count track func-tion?
Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track	To synchronize user authentication with account track, select "Synchronize".	Do you synchronize user authentication with account track?

2.48.4 Administrative Setting

Configure settings to use or operate the ID & Print function.

For details, refer to page 2-142.

2.48.5 Default Function Permission

Configure the default settings for function permissions to users who are authenticated on the external server.

For details, refer to page 2-152.

2.48.6 LDAP over SSL

External Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ► "External Server Settings" ► [Edit].

Item	Description	Prior check
Enable SSL	Select this check box to encrypt an SSL communication between this machine and the LDAP server.	Does the server support SSL?
Port No. (SSL)	Enter the port number to be used for SSL communication.	Server port number

Setting Up LDAP (Certificate Verification Level Settings)

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "LDAP Setting" ► "Setting Up LDAP" ► [Edit].

Reference

- To validate the certificate, in "Setting Up LDAP", register the same information as that for the LDAP server specified in "External Server Settings", and then specify the certificate verification level. For details, refer to page 2-67.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Level Settings	To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.	
CN	Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the server certificate is used according to the purpose approved by the issuer.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Verification Settings' page. The sidebar on the left has 'Security' selected, and the main area displays the following settings:

- Certificate Verification Settings:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- Timeout:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(5-300) sec'.
- OCSP Service:** An unchecked checkbox.
- URL:** A text input field.
- Proxy Settings:**
 - Proxy Server Address:** A text input field with a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name'.
 - Proxy Server Port Number:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(1-65535)'.
 - User Name:** A text input field.
 - Password is changed:** A checked checkbox.
 - Password:** A text input field.
 - Address not using Proxy Server:** A text input field with a checkbox 'Please check to enter host name'.

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

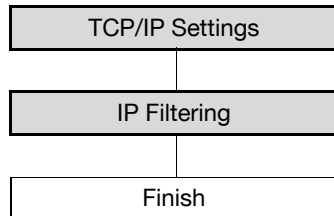
Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to verify the server certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

2.49 Filtering IP addresses

Configure settings to enable IP address filtering.

With IP address filtering, you can restrict access from the specified IP addresses. You can specify both IP addresses that are allowed to access this machine and IP addresses that are not allowed to access this machine.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

- You cannot specify the IPv6 address using IP address filtering.

2.49.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.49.2 IP Filtering

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "IP Filtering".

The screenshot shows the 'IP Filtering' configuration page. The top bar includes 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below the top bar, there's a 'Ready to Scan' status and a yellow 'In Menu (Admin Mode)' button. The sidebar on the left lists various settings under 'Network', with 'TCP/IP Setting' expanded and 'IP Filtering' selected. The main content area is titled 'IP Filtering' and contains two sections: 'Permit Access' and 'Deny Access'. Each section has a table with 5 rows (Set1 to Set5) and 2 columns for IP addresses. Both sections have an 'Enable' dropdown menu set to 'Enable'. At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Permit Access	To specify addresses you permit access from, select "Enable".	
Set 1 to 5	Enter the start and end addresses of ranges you permit access from. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255)	Address ranges that you permit access from
Deny Access	To specify addresses you deny access from, select "Enable".	
Set 1 to 5	Specify the start and end addresses of ranges you deny access from. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255)	Address ranges that you deny access from

2.50 Communicating using IPv6

Configure settings for IPv6 communication.

These settings are required if you want use this machine with an IPv6 address assigned. You can use IPv6 together with IPv4, but you cannot use IPv6 alone.

When you use this machine in an IPv6 environment, the following restrictions apply.

- Printing with SMB is not supported (but it is allowed for the Direct Hosting service).
- No scanned data can be sent with SMB (but it is allowed for the Direct Hosting service).
- SMB browsing is not supported (available for Publication Service).
- NTLM authentication is not supported (but it is allowed for the Direct Hosting service).
- You cannot use the IP filtering function.
- You cannot use the installer of the printer driver (available for Windows Vista or Server 2008).
- You cannot display PageScope Web Connection in Flash.



Reference

For details on the Direct Hosting service, refer to the sections listed below.

Sending scanned data to a computer on network (p. 2-38)

Print (SMB) (p. 2-97)

Restricting users of this machine (Windows domain or workgroup) (p. 2-154)

TCP/IP Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "TCP/IP Setting".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network Display To Main Menu

TCP/IP Setting

* is reflected after reset.

TCP/IP* ON

(Turn the main switch OFF, and then ON, when changing settings.)

Network Speed Auto

IP Address Setting Method* Auto Setting

☒ DHCP*

☐ BootP*

☒ ARP/PING*

☒ AutoIP*

IP Address 0.0.0.0

Subnet Mask 0.0.0.0

Default Gateway 0.0.0.0

IPv6 ON

Auto IPv6 Setting* ON

DHCPv6 Setting ON

Link-Local Address

Global Address

Prefix Length

Gateway Address

RAW Port Number

☒ Port 1 9100 (1-65535)

☒ Port 2 9112 (1-65535)

☒ Port 3 9113 (1-65535)

☒ Port 4 9114 (1-65535)

☒ Port 5 9115 (1-65535)

☒ Port 6 9116 (1-65535)

DNS Host

DNS Host Name

Dynamic DNS Setting Disable

LLMNR Setting Enable

DNS Domain Name Setting

DNS Domain Auto Obtain Enable

DNS Search Domain Name Auto Retrieval Enable

DNS Default Domain Name

DNS Search Domain Name1

DNS Search Domain Name2

DNS Search Domain Name3

DNS Server Setting(IPv4)

DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable

Primary DNS Server 0.0.0.0

Secondary DNS Server1 0.0.0.0

Secondary DNS Server2 0.0.0.0

DNS Server Setting(IPv6)

DNS Server Auto Obtain Enable

Primary DNS Server ::

Secondary DNS Server1 ::

Secondary DNS Server2 ::

SLP Setting

SLP Enable

LPD Setting

LPD Enable

OK Cancel

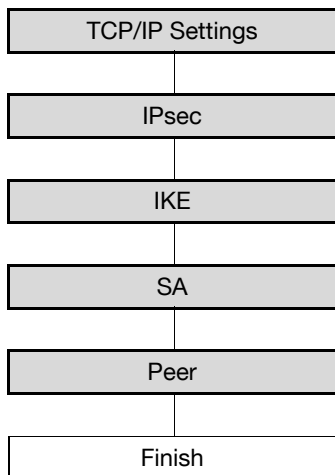
Item	Description	Prior check
TCP/IP	Select "ON".	
IPv6	Select "ON".	
Auto IPv6 Setting	To obtain the IPv6 address automatically, select "ON".	Do you obtain the IPv6 address automatically?
DHCPv6 Setting	To use DHCPv6 to obtain the IPv6 address, select "ON".	Do you use DHCPv6?
Link-Local Address	Displays the link-local address generated from the MAC address.	
Global Address	If you do not obtain the IPv6 address automatically, enter the IPv6 global address.	IPv6 address
Prefix Length	If you do not obtain the IPv6 address automatically, enter the prefix length of the IPv6 global address.	Prefix length
Gateway Address	If you do not obtain the IPv6 address automatically, enter the IPv6 gateway address.	Gateway address
DNS Server Setting (IPv6)	Configure the DNS server settings as necessary.	
DNS Server Auto Obtain	Select whether to obtain the DNS server address automatically. This setting is required if DHCPv6 is enabled.	Can be obtained automatically with DHCPv6?
Primary DNS Server	Enter the address of the primary DNS server if you do not obtain the DNS server address automatically.	Server address
Secondary DNS Server 1 and 2	Specify the addresses of the secondary DNS servers.	Server address

2.51 Communicating using IPsec

Configure settings for IPsec communication.

The IPsec-based communication can prevent a data falsification and reveal of each IP packet. The communication can be secured even if you use the transport and application layers that do not support encryption.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.51.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.51.2 IPsec

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "IPsec".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Network Display To Main Menu

TCP/IP Setting

- TCP/IP Setting
- IP Filtering
- IPsec
- E-mail Setting
- LDAP Setting
- IPP Setting
- FTP Setting
- SNMP Setting
- SMB Setting
- Web Service Settings
- Bonjour Setting
- NetWare Setting
- AppleTalk Setting
- Network Fax Setting
- WebDAV Settings
- OpenAPI Setting
- TCP Socket Setting
- IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting
- LLTD Setting

IPsec

IPsec OFF

IKE

Key Validity Period 28800 sec. (80-604800)

Diffie-Hellman Group Group 2

No.	Set	Edit	Delete
1		Edit	Delete
2		Edit	Delete
3		Edit	Delete
4		Edit	Delete

SA

Lifetime After Establishing SA 3600 sec. (120-604800)

No.	Set	Edit	Delete
1		Edit	Delete
2		Edit	Delete
3		Edit	Delete
4		Edit	Delete
5		Edit	Delete
6		Edit	Delete
7		Edit	Delete
8		Edit	Delete

Peer

No.	Set	Edit	Delete
1		Edit	Delete
2		Edit	Delete
3		Edit	Delete
4		Edit	Delete
5		Edit	Delete
6		Edit	Delete
7		Edit	Delete
8		Edit	Delete
9		Edit	Delete
10		Edit	Delete

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
IPsec	Select "ON".	

2.51.3 IKE

IKE

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "TCP/IP Setting" ►► "IPsec".

Item	Description	Prior check
Key Validity Period	Enter a validation period of the common key that is used for encrypted communication. When this period has expired, a new key is created. This can secure the communication.	
Diffie-Hellman Group	Select the Diffie-Hellman group.	

IKE Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "TCP/IP Setting" ►► "IPsec" ►► "IKE" ►► [Edit].

(Up to four groups can be registered for the IKE.)

IKE Setting

No. 1

Encryption Algorithm OFF

Authentication Algorithm OFF

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
Encryption Algorithm	Select an encryption algorithm to be used for creation of the common key.	
Authentication Algorithm	Select an authentication algorithm to be used for creation of the common key.	

2.51.4 SA

SA

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "IPsec".

Item	Description	Prior check
Lifetime After Establishing SA	Enter a validation period of the common key that is used for encrypted communication. When this period has expired, a new key is created. This can secure the communication.	

SA Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "IPsec" ► "SA" ► [Edit].

(Up to eight groups can be registered for the SA.)

SA Setting

No. 1

Security Protocol ESP

ESP Encryption Algorithm AES_CTR

ESP Authentication Algorithm MD5

AH Authentication Algorithm OFF

OK Cancel

Item	Description	Prior check
Security Protocol	Select a security protocol to use.	
ESP Encryption Algorithm	If you have set the Security Protocol to "ESP", select the ESP encryption algorithm.	
ESP Authentication Algorithm	If you have set the Security Protocol to "ESP", select the ESP authentication algorithm.	
AH Authentication Algorithm	If you have set the Security Protocol to "AH", select the AH authentication algorithm.	

2.51.5 Peer

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "TCP/IP Setting" ► "IPsec" ► "Peer" ► [Edit].

(Up to 10 peers can be registered.)

Peer

No.

1

Perfect Forward Secrecy

ON

Peer

Pre-Shared Key Text

Encapsulation Mode

OFF

OK

Cancel

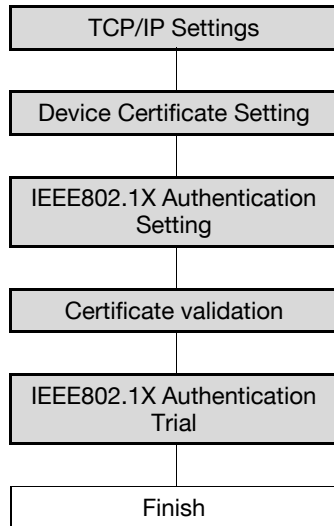
Item	Description	Prior check
Perfect Forward Secrecy	To increase the IKE security level, select "ON". If you have selected "ON", the communication time increases.	
Peer	Enter the IP address of the peer. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	IP address of the peer
Pre-Shared Key Text	Enter the Pre-Shared Key text to be shared with the peer (up to 64 characters). This text must be the same as that used at the peer.	
Encapsulation Mode	Select an IPsec operation mode.	

2.52 Using IEEE802.1X authentication

If you use this machine in a wired LAN environment having the IEEE802.1x authentication system, you must configure the supplicant (authentication client) function of this machine.

Using IEEE802.1x authentication can restrict any device not permitted by the administrator to connect to this LAN environment. Configure settings to fit your environment.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



2.52.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.52.2 Device Certificate Setting

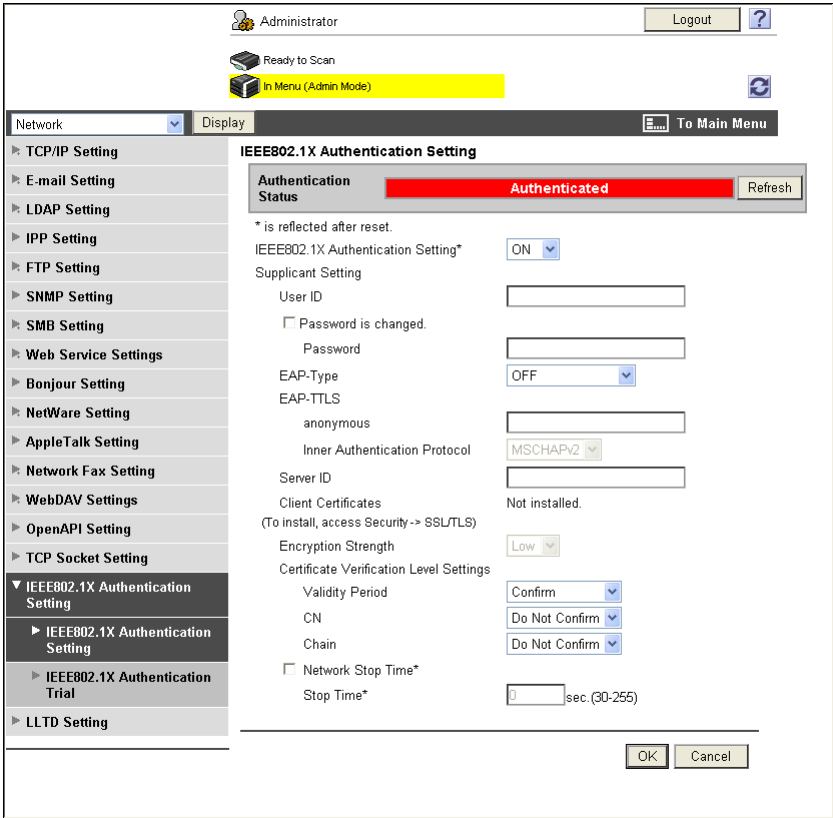
Register the client certificate (device certificate) on this machine, based on the EAP authentication method to be used.

- If EAP-Type is "EAP-TLS", you must register the device certificate.
- If EAP-Type is "EAP-TTLS" or "PEAP", you may be required to register the device certificate according to your applications.

For details on device certificate registration, refer to page 2-18.

2.52.3 IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "IEEE802.1x Authentication Setting" ► "IEEE802.1x Authentication Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
Authentication Status	The authentication status is shown as follows. - Authenticated: The authentication has completed. - Authenticating: The authentication is in progress. - Unauthenticated: Not authenticated status - Authentication Failed: The authentication has failed. - Failed to Retrieve Status: No authentication status could be obtained. When you press [Refresh], the authentication status is updated.	
IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting	Select "ON".	
Supplicant Setting	Configure settings required in order for this machine, which is a supplicant (authentication client), to receive authentication from the authentication server. Configure settings to fit your environment.	
User ID	Enter a user ID (up to 128 characters). This user ID is used for all EAP-Type options.	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password (up to 128 characters). The password is used for all EAP-Type options other than "EAP-TLS".	

Item	Description	Prior check
EAP-Type	Select an EAP authentication method. If you select "Depend on Server", the EAP-Type provided by the authentication server will be used for authentication. Configure the supplicant settings as required for this machine according to the EAP-Type provided by the authentication server. Do not set this item to "OFF".	EAP authentication method
EAP-TTLS	Configure settings for EAP-TTLS.	
anonymous	Enter an anonymous name to be used for EAP-TTLS authentication (up to 128 characters). This item is available if EAP-Type is set to "EAP-TTLS" or "Depend on Server".	
Inner Authentication Protocol	Select an EAP-TTLS inner authentication protocol. This item is available if EAP-Type is set to "EAP-TTLS" or "Depend on Server".	
Server ID	Enter a server ID (up to 64 characters). This setting is required if you verify the CN of the server certificate.	Do you verify CN of the server certificate?
Client Certificates	Select whether to encrypt authentication information using client certificates of this machine. You can configure this setting when client certificates are registered in this machine. If EAP-Type is "EAP-TLS", the client certificates are always required. This setting can be configured even if EAP-Type is set to "EAP-TTLS" or "PEAP".	
Encryption Strength	Select an encryption strength level for encrypted communication with TLS. - Low: Keys of any length are used for communication. - Mid: Keys that are more than 56 bits in length are used for communication. - High: Keys that are more than 128 bits in length are used for communication. This item is available if EAP-Type is set to anything other than "OFF" or "EAP-MD5".	
Network Stop Time	If an authentication process does not succeed within the specified time, all network communication will stop. To specify the delay between the start of an authentication process and the stop of network communication, select this box.	
Stop Time	Specify the delay (sec.) between the start of an authentication process and the stop of network communication. To restart the authentication process after network communication has stopped, turn the main power of this machine off and on again.	

2.52.4 Certificate validation

IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "IEEE802.1x Authentication Setting" ►► "IEEE802.1x Authentication Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Level Settings	To verify the server certificate, configure settings to verify the certificate.	
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the server certificate is within the validity period.	
CN	Select whether to check that the CN of the server certificate matches the server address. To check the CN, specify "Server ID".	
Chain	Select whether to check that the server certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

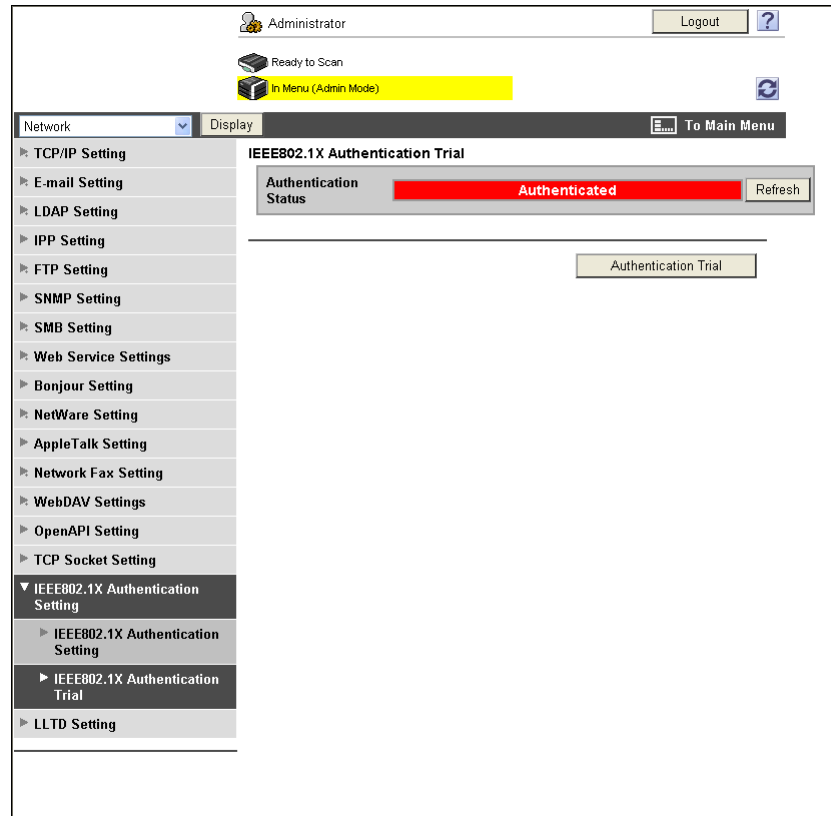
The screenshot displays the 'Certificate Verification Settings' page. At the top, there's a navigation bar with 'Security' selected. A left sidebar lists settings like 'PKI Settings', 'Certificate Verification Settings' (which is highlighted), 'Address Reference Setting', 'Restrict User Access', and 'Auto Logout'. The main content area is titled 'Certificate Verification Settings' and contains the following elements:

- 'Certificate Verification Settings' dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- 'Timeout' input field set to '0' with a unit of 'sec. (5-300)'.
- 'OCSP Service' checkbox, which is currently unchecked.
- 'URL' input field.
- 'Proxy Settings' section:
 - 'Proxy Server Address' input field with a note 'Please check to enter host name.'
 - 'Proxy Server Port Number' input field set to '0' with a note '(1-65535)'.
 - 'User Name' input field.
 - 'Password' input field.
 - 'Address not using Proxy Server' input field with a note 'Please check to enter host name.'
 - 'Password is changed' checkbox, which is checked.
- 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to verify the server certificate.	

2.52.5 IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ► "IEEE802.1x Authentication Setting" ► "IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial".



Item	Description	Prior check
Authentication Status	The authentication status is shown as follows. - Authenticated: The authentication has completed. - Authenticating: The authentication is in progress. - Unauthenticated: Not authenticated status - Authentication Failed: The authentication has failed. - Failed to Retrieve Status: No authentication status could be obtained. When you press [Refresh], the authentication status is updated.	
[Authentication Trial]	Click this button to attempt authentication immediately.	

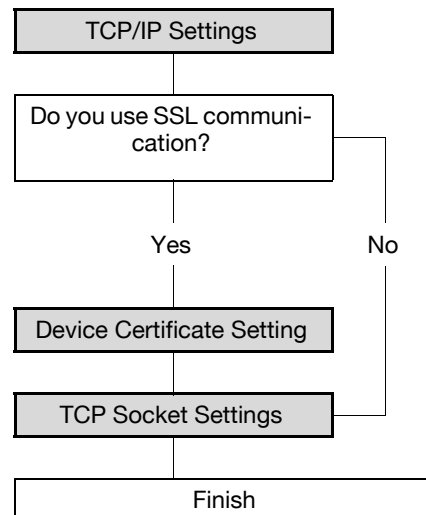
2.53 Using applications that communicate with this machine with TCP Socket

Configure setting for TCP Socket of this machine.

TCP Socket is used for data communication between this machine and application software running on the computer.

If you have registered the device certificate on this machine, you can encrypt TCP Socket communications between the application software and this machine with SSL.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

- If you use PageScope Authentication Manager for authentication, configure the TCP Socket setting to use SSL/TLS.
- If authentication is performed by the external server when using applications that communicate with this machine using TCP Socket, configure the TCP Socket setting to use SSL/TLS.

2.53.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.53.2 Device Certificate Setting

Configure settings for SSL communication.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.53.3 TCP Socket Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "TCP Socket Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'TCP Socket Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The sidebar on the left lists various settings categories, with 'TCP Socket Setting' selected. The main content area displays the configuration for the TCP Socket. The 'TCP Socket' checkbox is checked, and the 'Port Number' is set to 59158. The 'Use SSL/TLS' checkbox is unchecked, and the 'Port No. (SSL)' is set to 59159. The 'TCP Socket(ASCII Mode)' checkbox is checked, and the 'Port No. (ASCII Mode)' is set to 59160. The page includes 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

Item	Description	Prior check
TCP Socket	Select this check box.	
Port Number	Enter the port number.	
Use SSL/TLS	To use the SSL/TLS, select the "Use SSL/TLS" check box.	Do you use SSL/TLS?
Port Number (SSL)	Enter the port number to be used for SSL communication.	

Reference

- If Enhanced Security Mode is enabled, "Use SSL/TLS" is automatically enabled.
- If you select [OK] after changing multiple port numbers together in PageScope Web Connection or on the control panel, a port number duplication error may be displayed. When this error is displayed, first change one port number and select [OK]. Then change another one and select [OK].

2.54 Linking an OpenAPI system with this machine

Configure the OpenAPI settings of this machine.

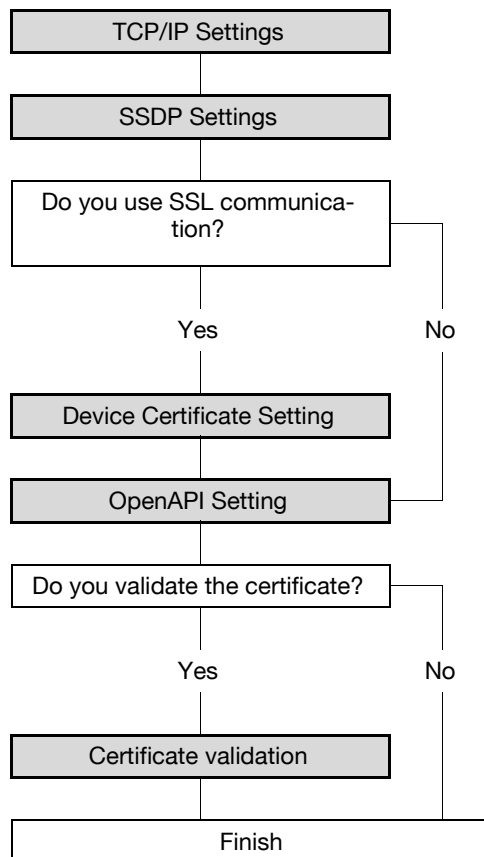
These settings are required when you want to link an OpenAPI system with this machine.

If you have registered the device certificate on this machine and if you use this machine as a communication server, you can encrypt OpenAPI communications from the client to this machine using SSL. Also, this machine can request the OpenAPI client for a submission of the client certificate. When the client connects to this machine, the submitted client certificate is verified and the client can be authenticated.

When this machine communicates as a client and when the certificate is submitted by the server, this machine can verify the submitted certificate.

If the OpenAPI connection application supports the SSDP function, you can notify the application that the OpenAPI service has started on this machine by using the SSDP function of this machine. If the OpenAPI service is searched by the SSDP function in application, a response will be returned when this machine satisfies relevant search conditions.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings. Clicking a step jumps to the associated procedure.



Reference

- If you use PageScope Authentication Manager for authentication, configure the OpenAPI setting to use SSL/TLS.

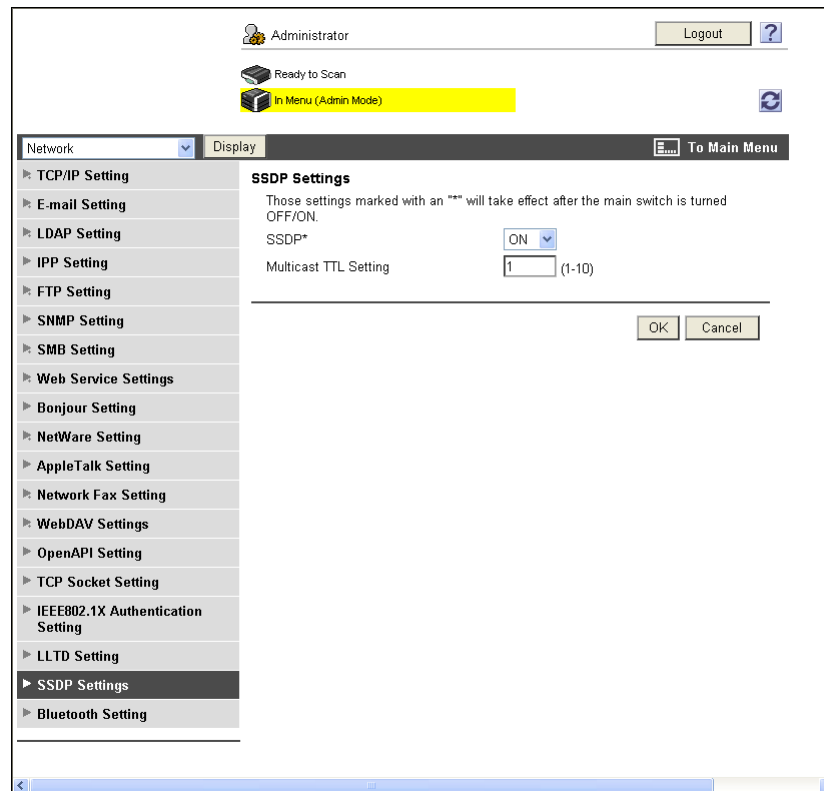
2.54.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

2.54.2 SSDP Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "SSDP Setting".



Item	Description	Prior check
SSDP	You can notify the application that the OpenAPI service has started on this machine, if the OpenAPI connection application supports the SSDP function and it is set to "ON". If the OpenAPI service is searched by the SSDP function in the application, a response will be returned when this machine satisfies relevant search conditions.	Does the application support the SSDP function?
Multi-Cast TTL Setting	Enter TTL (Time To Live) for SSDP multi-cast packet. The value is decremented by one each time a communication is established via the router. When the value reaches 0, packets are discarded.	

2.54.3 Device Certificate Setting

Configure settings for SSL communication.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.54.4 OpenAPI Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "OpenAPI Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'OpenAPI Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The sidebar on the left lists various settings, with 'OpenAPI Setting' highlighted. The main content area displays the 'OpenAPI' settings. At the top, there's a 'Network' dropdown and a 'Display' button. Below this, the 'OpenAPI' section includes several settings: 'Use SSL/TLS' is set to 'Non-SSL Only'; 'Port Number' is 50001 (range 1-65535); 'Port No.(SSL)' is 50003 (range 1-65535); 'Certificate Verification Level Settings' includes 'Client Certificates' (Do not request), 'Validity Period' (Confirm), 'CN' (Do Not Confirm), 'Key Usage' (Do Not Confirm), 'Chain' (Do Not Confirm), and 'Expiration Date Confirmation' (Do Not Confirm). At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Use SSL/TLS	To use SSL encryption, select "SSL Only" or "SSL/Non-SSL".	Do you use SSL/TLS?
Port Number	Enter the port number.	
Port Number (SSL)	Enter the port number to be used for SSL communication.	

Reference

- If the enhanced security mode is enabled, "Use SSL/TLS" is automatically set to "SSL Only".
- When you use PageScope Authentication Manager for authentication from the printer driver, set "System Connection" ►► "OpenAPI Settings" ►► "Authentication" to "OFF" in administrator settings on the control panel.
- If you select [OK] after changing multiple port numbers together in PageScope Web Connection or on the control panel, a port number duplication error may be displayed. When this error is displayed, first change one port number and select [OK]. Then change another one and select [OK].

2.54.5 Certificate validation

Certificate Verification Level Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "OpenAPI Setting".

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Level Settings	Specify how to validate a certificate.	
Client Certificates	Specify whether to request for client certificates. If you authenticate the client by requesting for its certificate (verification of client certificate), select "Request".	Do you request for client certificates?
Validity Period	Select whether to check that the target certificate is within the validity period.	
CN	Select whether to check that the CN of the certificate matches the server address.	
Key Usage	Select whether to check that the certificate key is being used properly.	
Chain	Select whether to check that the certificate chain (certification path) is correct. The chain is validated by referencing the external certificates managed on this machine. For details, refer to page 2-224.	
Expiration Date Confirmation	Select whether to check the target certificate for validation. The OCSP service and CRL (Certificate Revocation List) are checked in this order when the expiration date of the certificate is checked.	

Certificate Verification Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Certificate Verification Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Certificate Verification Settings' page. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'Security' selected and 'Display' button. A sidebar on the left lists settings: PKI Settings, Certificate Verification Settings (selected), Address Reference Setting, Restrict User Access, and Auto Logout. The main content area is titled 'Certificate Verification Settings' and contains the following fields:

- Certificate Verification Settings:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- Timeout:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(sec. (5-300))'.
- OCSP Service:** A checkbox that is currently unchecked.
- URL:** A text input field.
- Proxy Settings:**
 - Proxy Server Address:** A text input field with a note 'Please check to enter host name.'
 - Proxy Server Port Number:** A text input field with '0' and a label '(1-65535)'.
 - User Name:** A text input field.
 - Password:** A text input field, preceded by a checked checkbox labeled 'Password is changed.'
 - Address not using Proxy Server:** A text input field with a note 'Please check to enter host name.'

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description	Prior check
Certificate Verification Settings	Select "ON" to validate the certificate.	
Timeout	Enter a timeout period for expiration date confirmation.	Do you confirm the expiration date?
OCSP Service	Select this check box to use the OCSP service.	
URL	Enter the URL of the OCSP service (up to 511 characters). If this item is left blank, the machine accesses the URL of the OCSP service embedded in the certificate. If the URL of the OCSP service is not embedded in the certificate, an error will occur.	
Proxy Server Address	To confirm the expiration date via a proxy server, enter its address. Format: *.*.* (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	Server address
Proxy Server Port Number	Enter the port number of a proxy server.	Server port number
User Name	Enter the user name to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Password	Enter the password to log in to the proxy server (up to 63 characters).	
Address not using Proxy Server	To enable expiration date confirmation, specify an address that does not use the proxy server depending on your environment. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.	

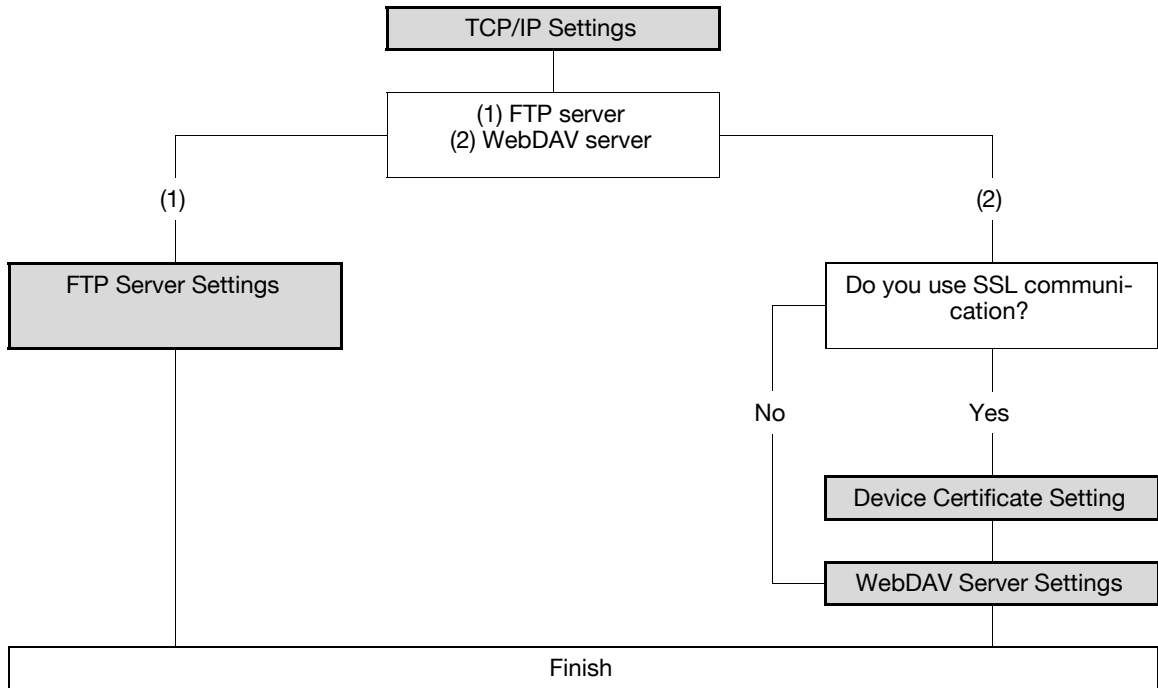
2.55 Using the FTP server and WebDAV server functions

Configure settings to use the FTP server and WebDAV server functions of this machine.

These settings are required when you use an application that links with this machine as an FTP client or a WebDAV client.

If you use this machine as the WebDAV server, you can encrypt the communication from the application with SSL for security enhancement.

Use the following flowchart to configure settings.



2.55.1 TCP/IP Settings

Configure settings to use this machine in the TCP/IP network environment.

For details, refer to page 2-8.

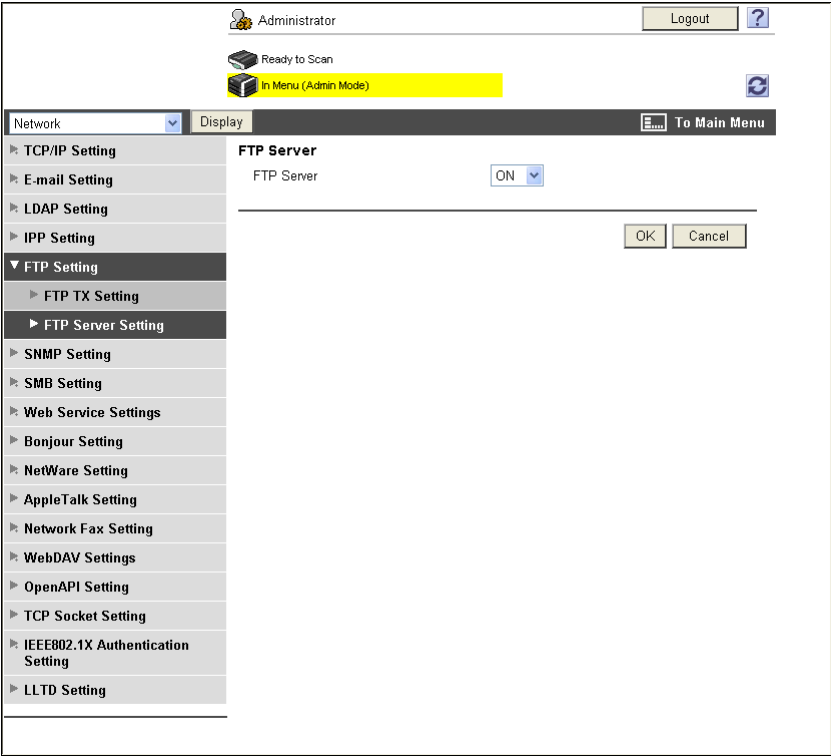
2.55.2 Device Certificate Setting

Configure settings for SSL communication.

For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.55.3 FTP Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "FTP Setting" ►► "FTP Server Settings".



Item	Description	Prior check
FTP Server	Select "ON".	

Reference

- If Enhanced Security Mode is enabled, this item is set to "OFF".

2.55.4 WebDAV Server Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Network" ►► "WebDAV Setting" ►► "WebDAV Server Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'WebDAV Server Settings' page. The left sidebar lists various settings, with 'WebDAV Server Settings' highlighted. The main content area includes:

- WebDAV Settings:** A dropdown menu set to 'ON'.
- SSL Setting:** A dropdown menu set to 'Non-SSL Only'.
- Access Rights Settings:** A checkbox labeled 'Password is changed. (Password is currently set.)'.
- Form fields:** 'New Password', 'Retype New Password', and an 'Initial Password' button.
- Buttons:** 'OK' and 'Cancel' at the bottom right.

Item	Description	Prior check
WebDAV Settings	Select "ON".	
SSL Settings	To use the SSL/TLS protocol, select "SSL Only" or "SSL/Non-SSL".	Do you use SSL?
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.	
Current Password	Enter the currently specified password (up to 8 characters). This item is not displayed when the default is not changed.	
New Password	Enter the password used to access the WebDAV server (up to 8 characters, excluding space, " and +).	
Retype New Password	Reenter the password for confirmation (up to 8 characters).	
[Initial Password]	To initialize the existing password, click this button. Default setting: sysadm	

Reference

- Before you use the SSL protocol, register the device certificate. For details, refer to page 2-18.

2.56 Settings under "Maintenance"

This section explains other configurable items under "Maintenance" of PageScope Web Connection.

2.56.1 Checking the counter of this machine

Check the counter information being managed on this machine.

Meter Count

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Meter Count".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Maintenance Display To Main Menu

► Meter Count

► ROM Version

► Import/Export

► Status Notification Setting

► Total Counter Notification Setting

► Date/Time Setting

► Timer Setting

► Network Error Code Display Setting

► Reset

► License Settings

► Edit Font/Macro

Total Counter

Total	6
Total Duplex	0
# of Originals	6
# of Used Paper	6

Copy Counter

	Full Color	Black	Single Color	2 Color	Total
Total	0	6	0	0	6
Large Size	0	0	0	0	0

Print Counter

	Full Color	Black	2 Color	Total
Total	0	0	0	0
Large Size	0	0	0	0

Scan / Fax Counter

	Print (Full Color)	Print (Black)	Scans
Total	0	0	29
Large Size	0	0	0

Fax TX: 0

Fax RX: 0

Total (Copy + Print)

	Full Color	Black	2 Color
Total	0	6	0

Paper Size / Type Counter

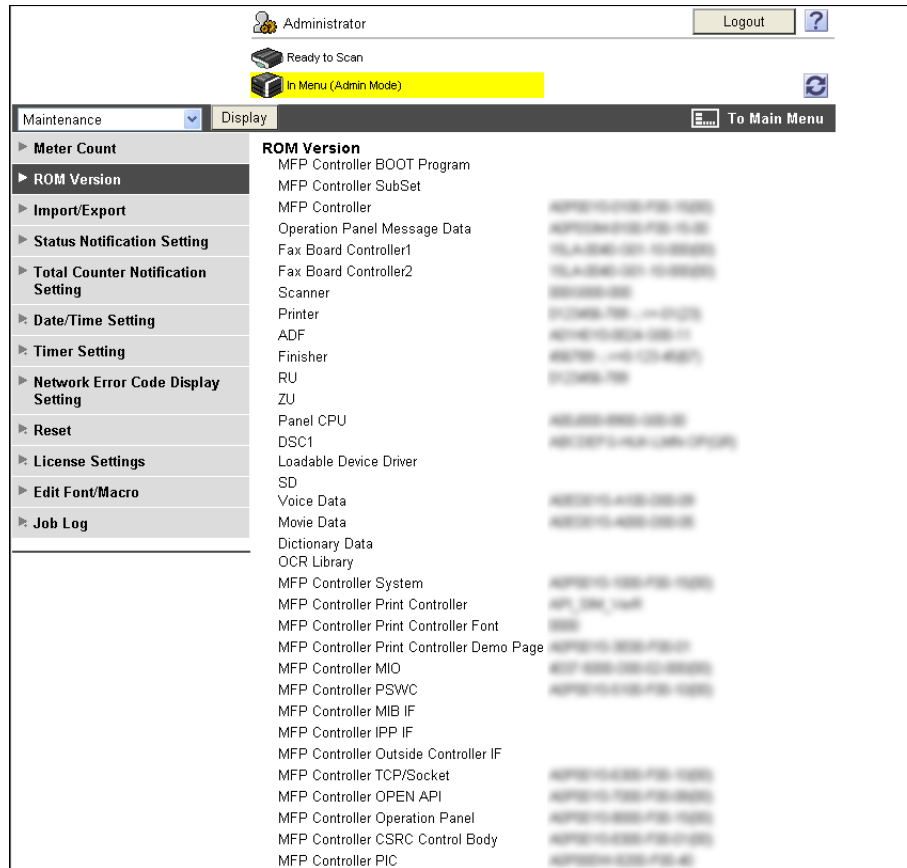
Paper Size	Paper Type	Count
11" x 17"	Not Specified	0
8 1/2" x 14"	Not Specified	0
8 1/2" x 11"	Not Specified	0
5 1/2" x 8 1/2"	Not Specified	0
A3	Not Specified	0
B4	Not Specified	0
B5	Not Specified	0
A4	Not Specified	0
A5	Not Specified	0
Others	Not Specified	0

2.56.2 Checking the machine ROM version

Check the ROM version of this machine.

ROM Version

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "ROM Version".

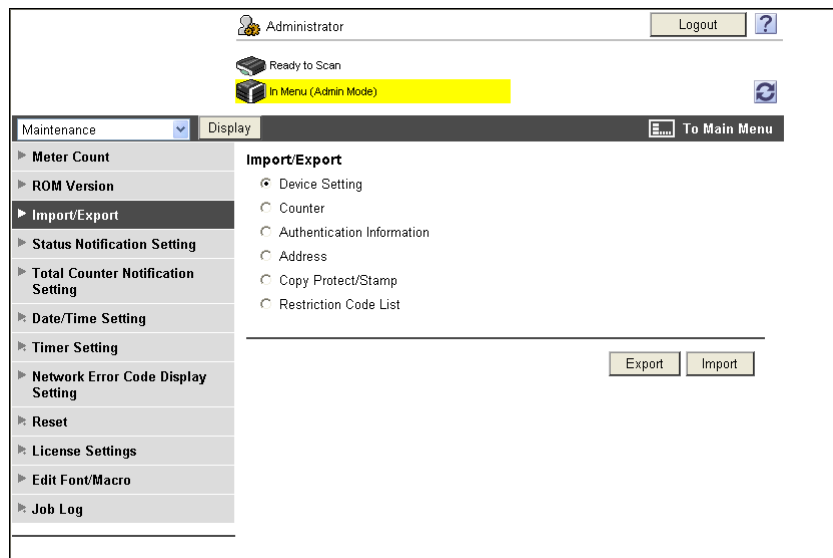


2.56.3 Importing and exporting the machine configuration information

You can save (export) the configuration information being stored in this machine to the computer. You can also write (import) the information from the computer to this machine.

Import/Export

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Import/Export".



Item	Description
Device Setting	Import or export the device settings.
Counter	Export the counter information. The counter can only be exported.
Authentication Information	Back up or restore the entire authentication data. You can also import or export the user registration information and authentication data. When the optional authentication unit is used on this machine, you can import or export the authentication data. When you export the authentication data, you can set a password as required. The specified password is required for importing the authentication information. If you use PageScope Authentication Manager for authentication, this item is not displayed.
Address	Back up or restore the full destination data. Also import or export the information of each destination. When you export the destination information, you can set a password as required. The specified password is required for importing the destination information.
Copy Protect/Stamp	Import or export the Copy Protect/Stamp data.
List of Inhibited Codes	Import or export the list of inhibited codes of our deprecated OpenAPI connection applications.

Reference

- You cannot edit exported files.
- If you export the E-mail addresses with certificates and then import them, you must register the certificate information after importing them.
- For details on the list of inhibited codes, contact your service representative.

2.56.4 Using the timer functions

Configure the Power Save and Weekly Timer functions.

There are two types of power saving mode: Low Power and Sleep. More electric power will be saved in the Sleep mode when compared with the Low Power mode. However, the Sleep mode takes more time to warm up this machine than the Low Power mode. Select the mode appropriate to your application.

The Weekly Timer function allows you to specify the time before transition to the Sleep mode in units of days or weeks. You can control the power saving according to your application.

Power Save Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Timer Setting" ►► "Power Save Setting".

Item	Description
Low Power Mode Setting	Enter a time interval before transition to the Low Power mode since the last operation of this machine.
Sleep Mode Setting	Enter a time interval before transition to the Sleep mode since the last operation of this machine.
Power Save Key	If you do not operate this machine for a long time, you can forcibly switch this machine to the power saving mode by pressing the [Power Save] key on the control panel. Select the mode this machine will transition to when you press the [Power Save] key.
Enter Power Save Mode	Specify how to return to the Power Save mode after printout of the fax document that was received in the Power Save mode. Setting this item to "Immediately" returns this machine immediately after receiving a fax while it is not being used (in the night for example), thus saving the electric power more efficiently. If you set this item to "Normal", this machine returns to the Power Save mode after the specified transition time has elapsed.

Weekly Timer Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Timer Setting" ►► "Weekly Timer Setting".

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Maintenance Display To Main Menu

► Meter Count

► ROM Version

► Import/Export

► Status Notification Setting

► Total Counter Notification Setting

► Date/Time Setting

▼ **Timer Setting**

► Power Save Setting

► **Weekly Timer Setting**

► Network Error Code Display Setting

► Reset

► License Settings

► Edit Font/Macro

Weekly Timer Setting

☐ Use Weekly Timer

Date Setting

2008 October Setting

Work Time Setting

	ON Time	OFF Time
☐ Sun	0 : 0	~ 0 : 0
☐ Mon	0 : 0	~ 0 : 0
☐ Tue	0 : 0	~ 0 : 0
☐ Wed	0 : 0	~ 0 : 0
☐ Thu	0 : 0	~ 0 : 0
☐ Fri	0 : 0	~ 0 : 0
☐ Sat	0 : 0	~ 0 : 0

☐ Use Power Save

Power Save Start Time ~ Power Save End Time

0 : 0 ~ 0 : 0

☐ Use Overtime Password

☐ Password is changed.

OK Cancel

Item	Description
Use Weekly Timer	To use the Weekly Timer function, select this check box and specify the operation date and time. Specify dates or days of every week when the Weekly Timer function is activated. You can also specify both dates and days of the week at the same time. Click [Setting], and then specify the days when Weekly Timer operates in the displayed window.
Use Power Save	To use the Power Save function, select this check box and specify the OFF Time and the Power Save End Time.
Use Overtime Password	Specify the overtime password to restrict the users who can temporarily use this machine while it is being placed in the Sleep mode by the Weekly Timer function. To specify the overtime password, select this check box and enter the password (up to eight characters, excluding + and ").

2.56.5 Displaying a network error code

If an error has occurred on the network, its error code can be displayed.

Configure this item if you wish to check the network error codes for troubleshooting and other purposes.

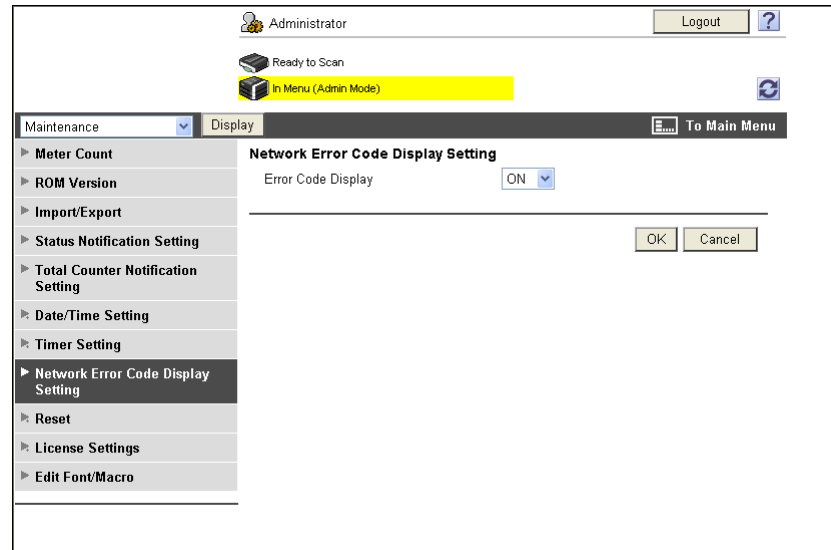


Reference

For details on the network error codes, refer to page 3-19.

Network Error Code Display Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Network Error Code Display Setting".



Item	Description
Error Code Display	Select "ON".

2.56.6 Initializing the configuration information

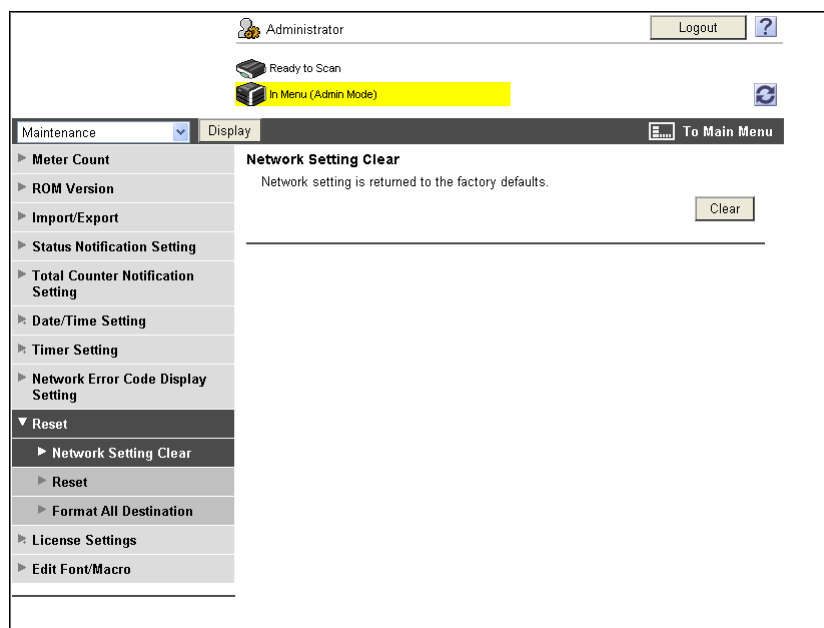
You can initialize the network settings (to the factory defaults), reset the controller, and delete the entire destination information.

Network Setting Clear

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ► "Reset" ► "Network Setting Clear".

(If Enhanced Security Mode is enabled, this menu item will not be displayed.)

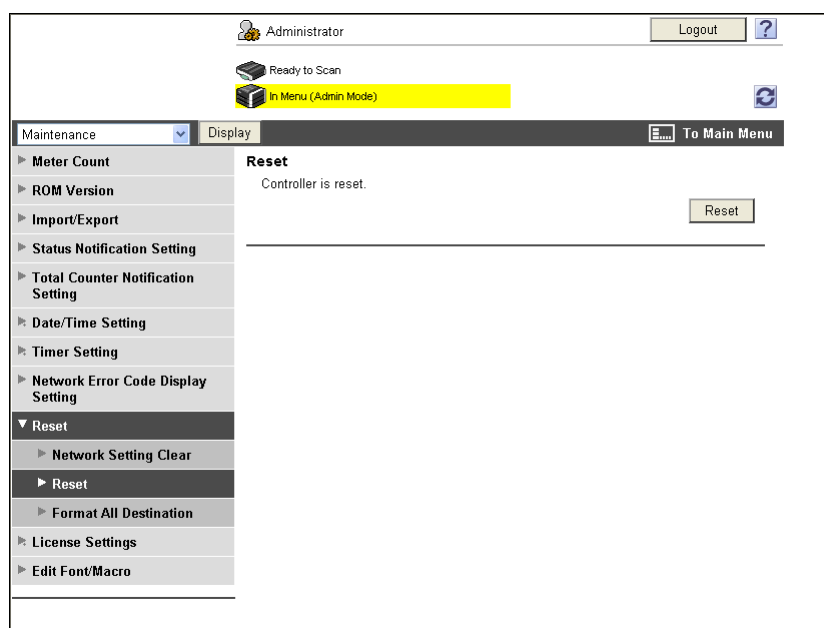
If you click [Clear], the network settings of this machine are cleared to the factory defaults.



Reset

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ► "Reset" ► "Reset".

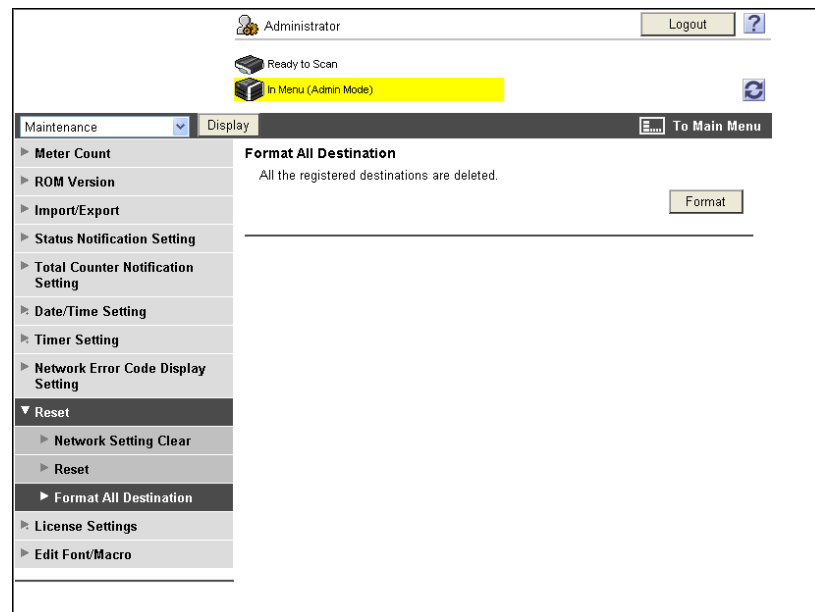
If you click [Reset], the controller is reset.



Format All Destination

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Reset" ►► "Format All Destination".

If you click [Format], the entire destination data being registered on this machine is erased.



2.56.7 Enhancing the functions of this machine

To enhance the functions of this machine by registering the optional License kit, you can obtain a request code and enable the functions.

(This menu item will not be displayed if the extension memory supplied together with the optional upgrade kit UK-203 is not installed.)



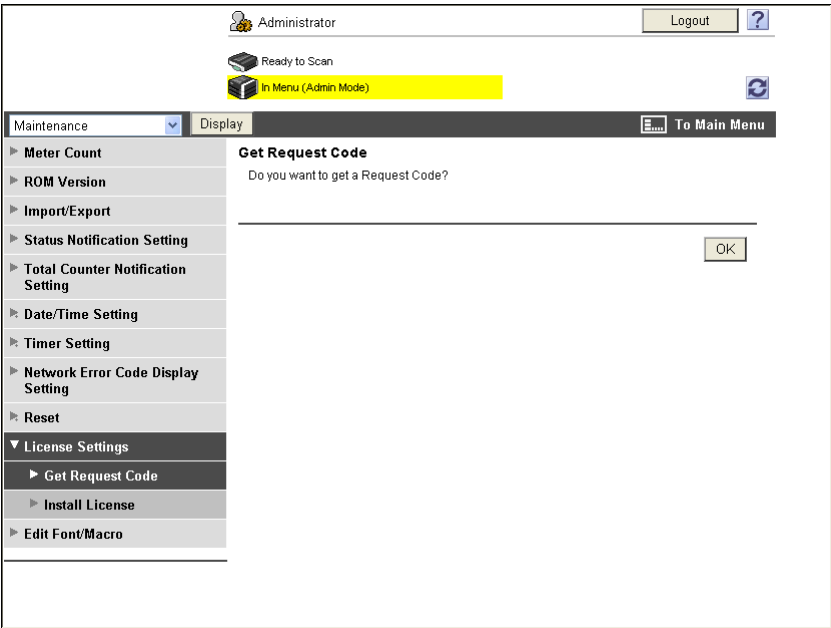
Reference

For details on the license code acquisition and function enabling, refer to the "Quick Guide [Copy/Print/Fax/Scan/Box Operations]".

Get Request Code

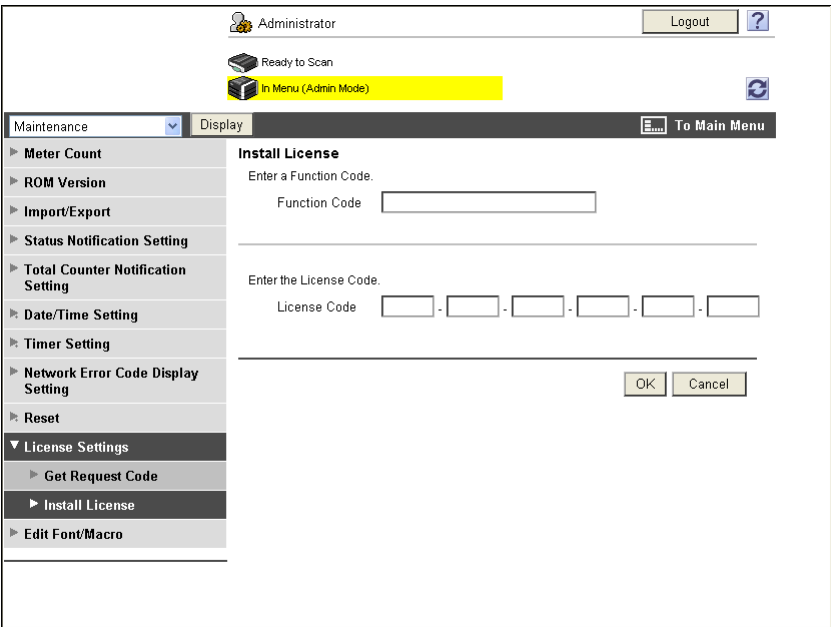
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "License Setting" ►► "Get Request Code".

If you click [OK], a request code is issued.



Install License

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "License Settings" ►► "Install License".



Item	Description
Function Code	Enter the function code.
License Code	Enter the license code.
[OK]	Click this button to enable the function.

2.56.8 Registering and editing font/macro

You can register or delete fonts or macros to or from this machine.

Edit Font/Macro

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Edit Font/Macro".

The screenshot shows the 'Edit Font/Macro' interface. At the top, there's a user bar for 'Administrator' with a 'Logout' button and a help icon. Below that, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main navigation bar has 'Maintenance' selected, with a 'Display' button and a 'To Main Menu' link. The left sidebar lists various settings, with 'Edit Font/Macro' highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Edit Font/Macro' and contains a 'New Registration' button. Below this, there's a 'Font Type' dropdown menu currently set to 'PCL Font', followed by a 'Go' button. A table is displayed with the following columns: 'Type', 'Location', 'Name', 'ID', and 'Delete'.

Item	Description
[New Registration]	Click this button to add a font or macro.
Font Type	Select a type of font or macro and click [Go], and the list of fonts or macro of the selected type is displayed.
Type	Displays the type of each registered font/macro.
Location	Displays the location to save the registered font or macro.
Name	Displays the name of the registered font or macro.
ID	Displays the ID of the registered font or macro.
Delete	Click this button to delete the selected font/macro.

New registration window

Item	Description
Type	Select a type of font/macro to be added.
ID	Enter the ID of the font/macro. This ID is required if you have set the "Type" to "PCL Font" or "PCL Macro" and if you have selected the "Manual Set" check box. If you enter an ID that has already been used, the existing ID will be overwritten by it.
Location	Select the storage location of the font/macro.

2.56.9 Outputting job logs

You can create and download log data (accounting log, counting log, or audit log) of the jobs that were executed in this machine. For details on viewing downloaded job logs, contact your service representative.

(This menu is not displayed when "Security Settings" ► "Security Details" ► "Job Log Settings" is set to "OFF" in the administrator settings on the control panel.)

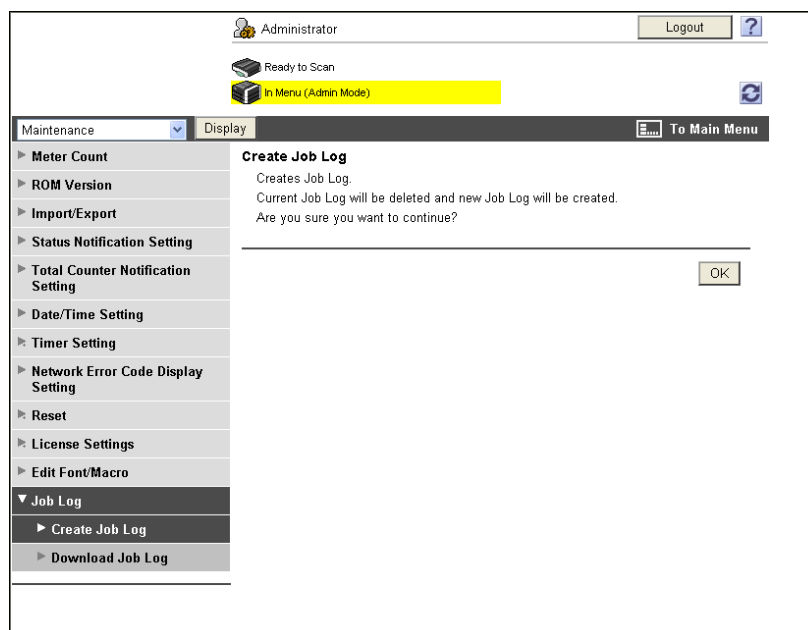
Reference

- For details on "Job Log Settings", refer to the "User's Guide [Copy Operations]".
- If the job log writing area has reached the upper limit, output job logs.

Creating job log data

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ► "Job Log" ► "Create Job Log".

When you click [OK], the machine starts creating job log data. After data creation has been completed, the completion page appears, and you can download job log data by pressing "Download Job Log".



Reference

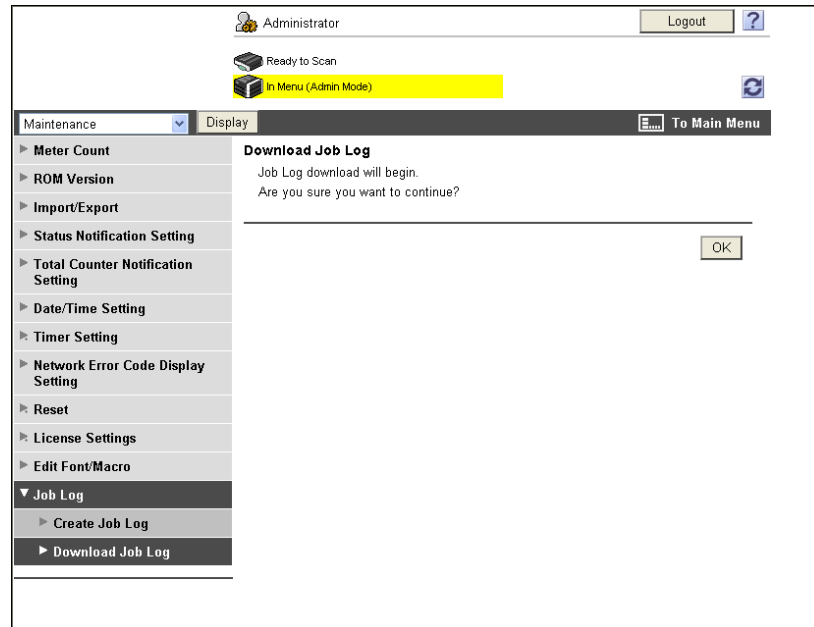
- If you attempt to create job log data when some already exists, a confirmation message is displayed to check if you want to delete the job log data that is not output in order to create new job log data. When there is job log data exists, obtain it before creating new job log data.

Downloading job log data

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Maintenance" ►► "Job Log" ►► "Download Job Log".

To download job log data, create it in "Create Job Log" in advance.

If you click [OK] when job log data resides, the download page appears. When you click [Download] in the download page, the machine starts downloading job log data.



2.57 Settings under "System Settings"

This section explains other configurable items under "System Settings" of PageScope Web Connection.

2.57.1 Registering machine information

Register the administrator information and the address of this machine.

The registration of this machine is required for E-mail or Internet fax transmissions.

Machine Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Machine Setting".

Item	Description
Device Location	Enter the installation location of this machine (up to 255 characters).
Administrator Registration	Register the administrator name and contact information of this machine.
Administrator Name	Enter the administrator name of this machine (up to 20 characters).
E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address of the administrator (up to 128 characters). This setting is required for sending E-mail messages. The specified address is displayed in the From column of the E-mail. If necessary, the address can be changed to one other than the administrator address from the control panel prior to E-mail transmission.
Extension No.	Enter the extension number of the administrator (up to eight characters).
Input Machine Address	Register the device name and E-mail address of this machine.
Device Name	Enter the device name (up to 80 characters). This name is used as a part of an Internet fax subject name.
E-mail Address	Enter the E-mail address of this machine (up to 320 characters). This setting is required when sending Internet faxes.

2.57.2 Registering support information

Register the support information for this machine.

This information is displayed on the Online Assistance page in the user mode.

Register Support Information

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Register Support Information".

The screenshot shows the 'Register Support Information' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The top navigation bar includes 'System Settings' and 'Display' tabs. The left sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'Register Support Information' selected. The main content area contains several input fields for contact and support information, and a field for the engine serial number which is pre-filled with '11'. The page also includes a 'Logout' button and a 'To Main Menu' link.

Item	Description
Contact Name	Enter the contact name for the machine (up to 63 characters).
Contact Information	Enter the contact name information for the machine such as the phone number and URL (up to 127 characters).
Product Help URL	Enter the URL of the Web page for product information (up to 127 characters).
Corporate URL	Enter the URL of the Web page for the manufacturer (up to 127 characters).
Supplies and Accessories	Enter consumables supplier information (up to 127 characters).
Online Help URL	Enter the online help URL (up to 127 characters). <C652> http://www.pagescope.com/download/webconnection/onlinehelp/c652/v3/help.html <C652DS> http://www.pagescope.com/download/webconnection/onlinehelp/c652DS/v3/help.html <C552> http://www.pagescope.com/download/webconnection/onlinehelp/c552/v3/help.html <C452> http://www.pagescope.com/download/webconnection/onlinehelp/c452/v3/help.html
Driver URL	Enter the driver storage location (up to 127 characters).
Engine Serial Number	Displays the serial number of this machine.

2.57.3 Configuring the environmental settings for using User Boxes

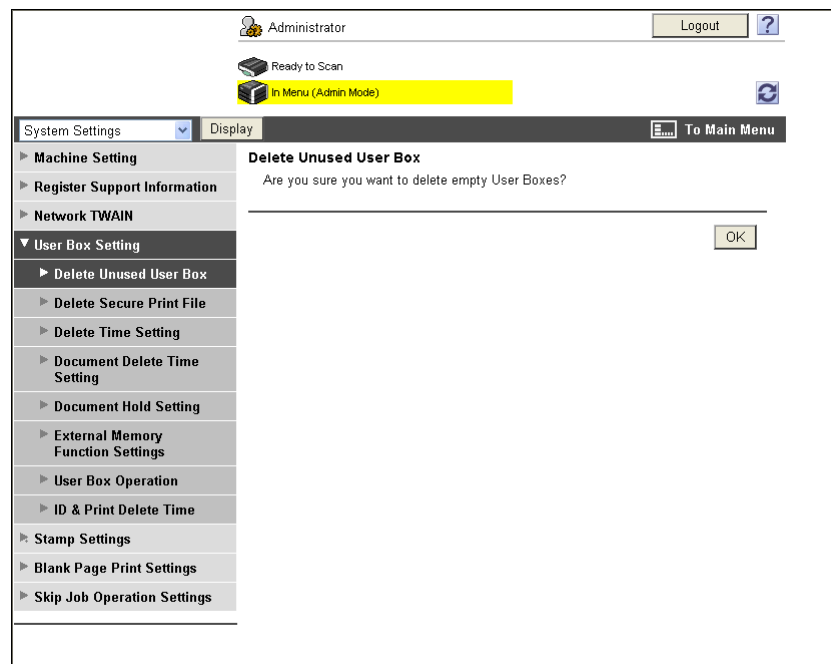
Configure environmental settings for using User Boxes.

You can configure settings for deleting unused User Boxes, deleting documents saved in User Boxes, or using external memory functions.

Delete Unused User Box

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "Delete Unused User Box".

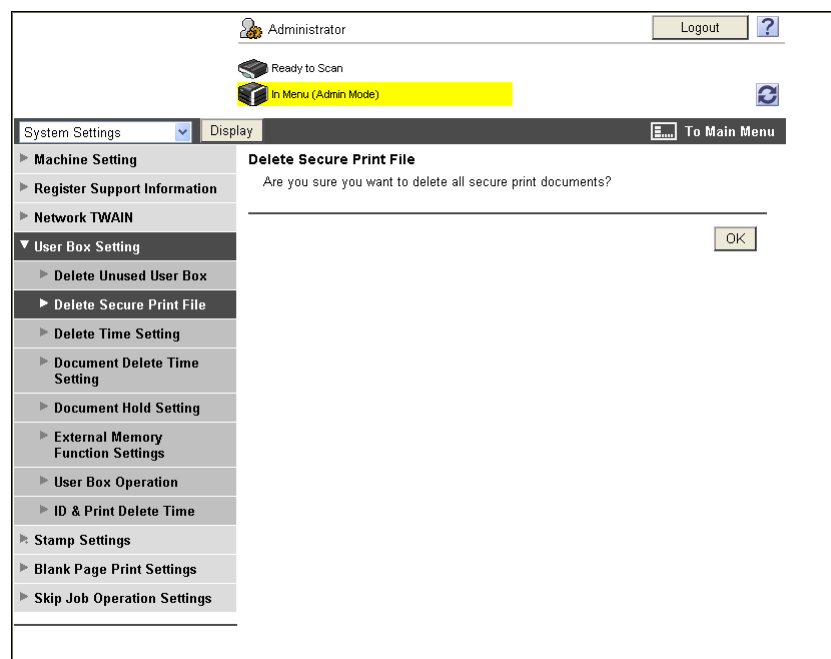
Click [OK] to delete boxes containing no document.



Delete Secure Print File

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "Delete Secure Print File".

Click [OK] to delete documents stored in secure print User Boxes.



Delete Time Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "Delete Time Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Delete Time Setting' configuration page. The left sidebar lists various settings, with 'Delete Time Setting' highlighted. The main content area has two sections:

- Auto Delete Secure Document:**
 - ☒ Auto Delete Secure Document
 - ☒ Specify days (dropdown: 1 day)
 - ☐ Specify Time (input: min. (5-720))
- ID & Print Delete Time:**
 - ☒ ID & Print Delete Time
 - ☒ Specify days (dropdown: 1 day)
 - ☐ Specify Time (input: min. (5-720))

Buttons for 'OK' and 'Cancel' are at the bottom right.

Item	Description
Auto Delete Secure Document	Select this check box to specify the time before the documents stored in the Secure Print User Box are to be deleted automatically.
Specify days	To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before the documents are stored in the Secure Print User Box are to be deleted automatically.
Specify Time	To specify the document deletion timing by hour count, select "Specify Time", and specify the number of hours before the documents stored in the Secure Print User Box are to be deleted automatically.
ID & Print Delete Time	Select this check box to specify the time before the documents stored in the ID & Print User Box are to be deleted automatically. If user authentication settings are not configured, this item will not be displayed.
Specify days	To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before the documents stored in the ID & Print User Box are to be deleted automatically. If you have specified not to delete documents stored in the ID & Print User Box after they are printed, the specified deleting timing will be reset. After the specified number of days has elapsed from the date of printing, the document will be deleted automatically.
Specify Time	To specify the document deletion timing by hour count, select "Specify Time", and specify the number of hours before the documents stored in the ID & Print User Box are to be deleted automatically. If you have specified not to delete documents stored in the ID & Print User Box after they are printed, the specified deleting timing will be reset. After the specified number of hours has elapsed from the time of printing, the document will be deleted automatically.

Reference

- Specify whether to delete documents stored in the ID & Print User Box after they are printed in "ID & Print Delete after Print Setting". For details, refer to page 2-215.

Document Delete Time Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "Document Delete Time Setting".

Item	Description
Delete Setting	Select whether to specify the time to delete documents in User Boxes. Specify the deletion timing. This setting is applied to all the documents in Public User Boxes, Personal User Boxes and Group User Boxes. Select "ON" to change the document deletion timing of the registered User Boxes for which deletion timing is specified respectively to that specified in this setting. The document deletion timing specified in this setting is also applied to newly created boxes. In this case, you cannot specify the time for the user to delete a document. The administrator however can change the timing regardless of this setting.
Do Not Delete	Select this box when documents in User Boxes are not to be deleted.
Specify days	To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before the documents stored in User Boxes are to be deleted automatically. If you have specified not to delete documents stored in User Boxes after they are sent or printed, the specified deleting timing will be reset. After the specified number of days has elapsed from the date of transmission or printing, the document will be deleted automatically.
Specify Time	To specify the document deletion timing by hour count, select "Specify Time", and specify the number of hours before the documents stored in User Boxes are to be deleted automatically. If you have specified not to delete documents stored in User Boxes after they are sent or printed, the specified deleting timing will be reset. After the specified number of hours has elapsed from the date of transmission or printing, the document will be deleted automatically.

Reference

- Specify whether to delete documents stored in User Boxes after they are sent or printed in "Document Hold Setting". For details, refer to page 2-212.

Document Hold Setting

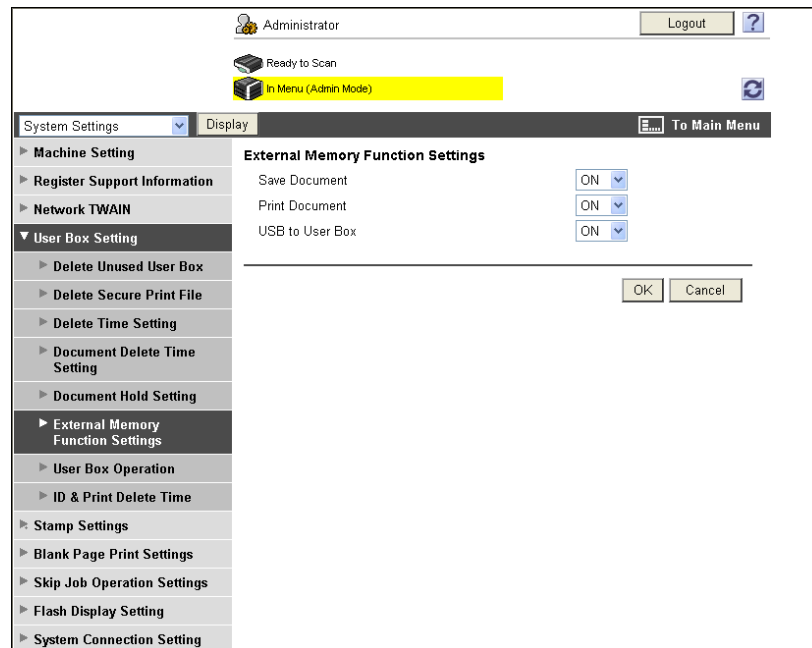
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "Document Hold Setting".

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of the PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there is a header bar with the user 'Administrator', a 'Logout' button, and a help icon. Below the header, there is a status bar showing 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main content area is divided into a left sidebar and a right main panel. The sidebar contains a list of settings categories, with 'User Box Setting' expanded to show sub-items like 'Delete Unused User Box', 'Delete Secure Print File', 'Delete Time Setting', 'Document Delete Time Setting', 'Document Hold Setting' (which is selected), 'External Memory Function Settings', 'User Box Operation', 'ID & Print Delete Time', 'Stamp Settings', 'Blank Page Print Settings', 'Skip Job Operation Settings', 'Flash Display Setting', 'System Connection Setting', and 'Outline PDF Setting'. The main panel displays the 'Document Hold Setting' configuration. It includes a 'Document Hold Setting' dropdown menu set to 'Hold', a 'Delete confirmation screen.' dropdown menu set to 'Not Specify', and 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

Item	Description
Document Hold Setting	Select whether to delete a document automatically after transmitting or printing the document. When "Hold" is selected, the data of a document can be retained even after transmitting or printing the document.
Deletion Selection Page	Specify whether to display the page for selecting whether to delete a document from a User Box after sending or printing it. This item is available when "Hold" is selected in "Document Hold Setting".

External Memory Function Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "External Memory Function Settings".



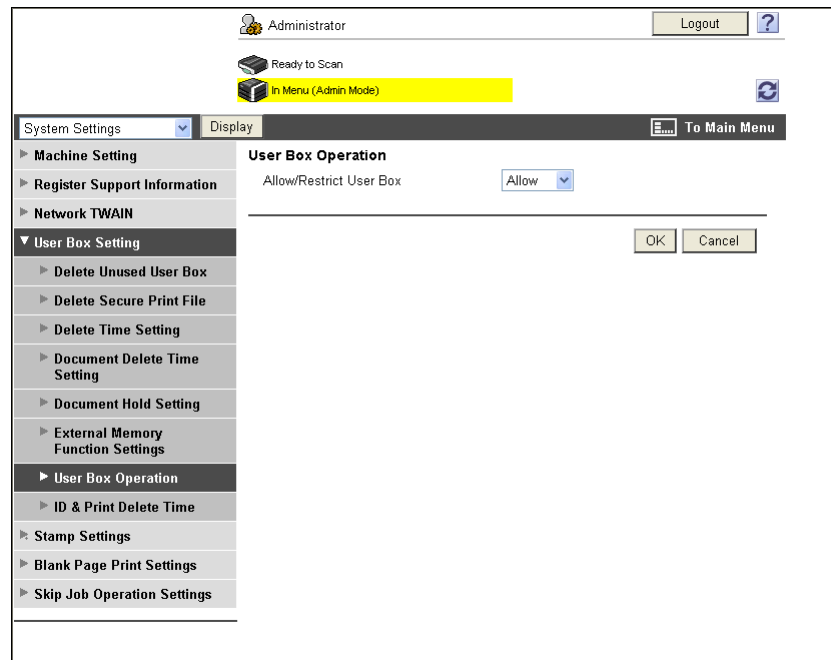
Item	Description
Save Document	To send scanned data to external memory, select "ON". To prevent data from being stolen, "OFF" is selected as the default setting. Change it to "ON" to enable this function.
Print Document	To print data in external memory, select "ON". You can print prints only the file formats supported by this machine.
USB to User Box	Select "ON" when saving data stored in external memory to a User Box.

Reference

- Do not disconnect the external memory device while handling it.
- To enable "Save Document" (sending data to external memory) and "Scan Document" (saving data stored in external memory to a User Box), you must permit the use of the function for each user. For details, refer to page 2-156.

User Box Operation

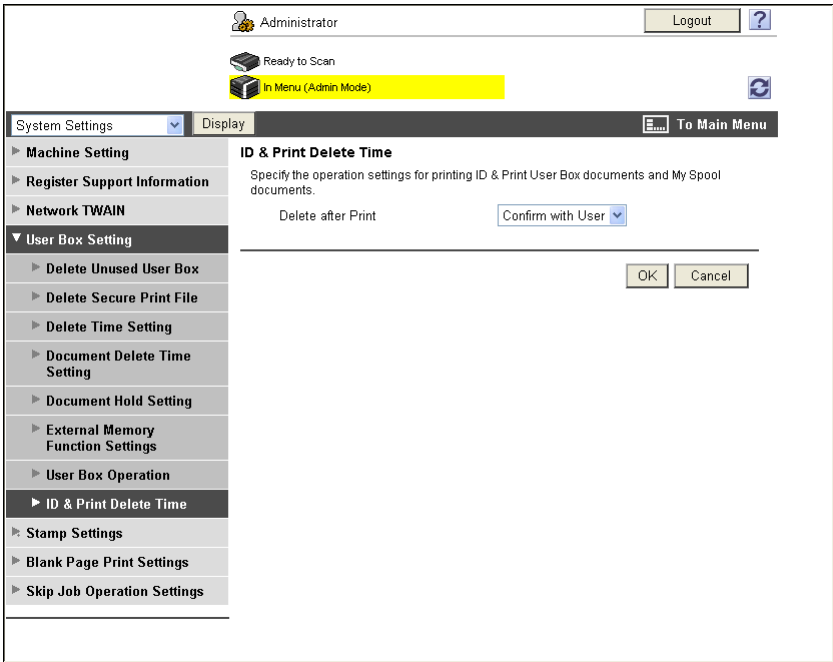
In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "User Box Operation".



Item	Description
Allow/Restrict User Box	Select whether to grant the User Box operation permissions to users. Selecting "Restrict" disables users to create, edit or delete User Boxes.

ID & Print Delete Time

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "User Box Setting" ► "ID & Print Delete Time".



Item	Description
Delete after Print	Configure the post-print operation of documents in ID & Print User Boxes. Selecting "Confirm with User" displays a confirmation message, asking whether to delete the document that has been printed. Selecting "Always Delete" deletes the document that has been printed without displaying a confirmation message.

2.57.4 Configuring stamp settings

Register the header and footer information and configure settings for adding the stamp when sending faxes.

Header/Footer Registration

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Stamp Settings" ► "Header/Footer Registration" ► [Edit].

The screenshot shows the 'Header/Footer Registration' configuration page. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'Stamp Settings' expanded and 'Header/Footer Registration' selected. The main area contains the following settings:

- No.:** 1
- Name:** [Text Field]
- Color:** Black
- Pages:** All Pages
- Size:** 10pt
- Text Type:** Times Roman
- Date/Time Setting:**
 - Date Type:** 07/1/23
 - Time Type:** None
- Distribution Number:**
 - Text:** [Text Field]
 - Output Method:** Number only
 - Start Number Specification:** [Text Field] (1-99999999)
- Header:**
 - Header String:** [Text Field]
 - Date/Time Setting:** Do Not Print
 - Distribution Number:** Do Not Print
 - Job Number:** Do Not Print
 - Serial Number:** Do Not Print
 - User Name/Account Name:** Do Not Print
- Footer:**
 - Footer String:** [Text Field]
 - Date/Time Setting:** Do Not Print
 - Distribution Number:** Do Not Print
 - Job Number:** Do Not Print
 - Serial Number:** Do Not Print
 - User Name/Account Name:** Do Not Print

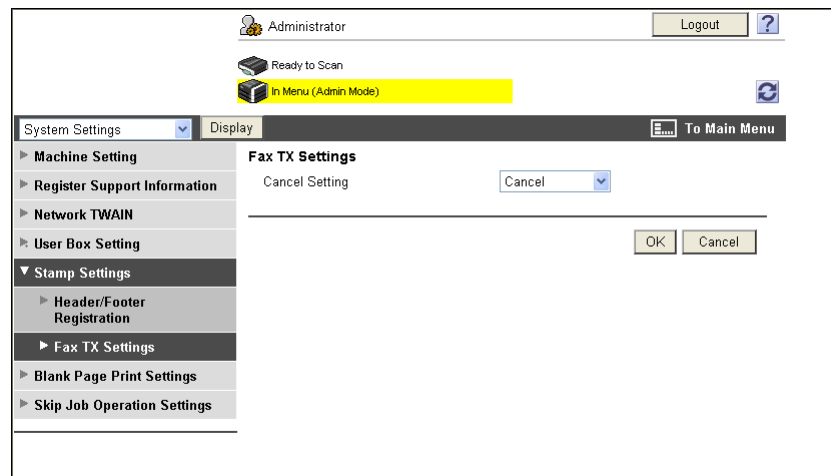
Buttons: OK, Cancel

Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the registered name (up to 16 characters).
Color	Select the stamp color.
Pages	Specify whether to print the stamp only on the first page or all pages.
Size	Specify the character size used for the stamp.
Text Type	Specify the character font used for printing.
Date/Time Setting	Select the respective display formats for date and time. You can make a selection when "Date/Time Setting" of either "Header" or "Footer" is set to "Print".
Distribution Number	Enter the text to be added to the distribution numbers and printed (up to 20 characters). Specify the output method and start number of the distribution numbers. When "Number Only" is selected for the output method, two-digit distribution numbers are displayed in two digits. If "Put zeros in front (total 8-digits)" is selected, the numbers are always displayed in eight digits regardless of the specified number of digits. You can make a selection when "Distribution Number" of either "Header" or "Footer" is set to "Print".

Item	Description
Header/Footer	Specify whether to print the following items. - Header or footer text (up to 40 characters) - Date/Time Setting - Distribution Number - Job Number - Serial Number (Engine serial No. of this machine) - User Name/Account Name To print a distribution number, specify the desired number in "Distribution Number". If the User Authentication/Account Track settings are not configured, "User Name/Account Name" is not printed.

Fax TX settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ►► "Stamp Settings" ►► "FAX TX Settings".



Item	Description
Cancel Setting	Select whether to use the stamp function for fax transmissions. Selecting "Cancel" sends faxes without printing the stamp on the originals.

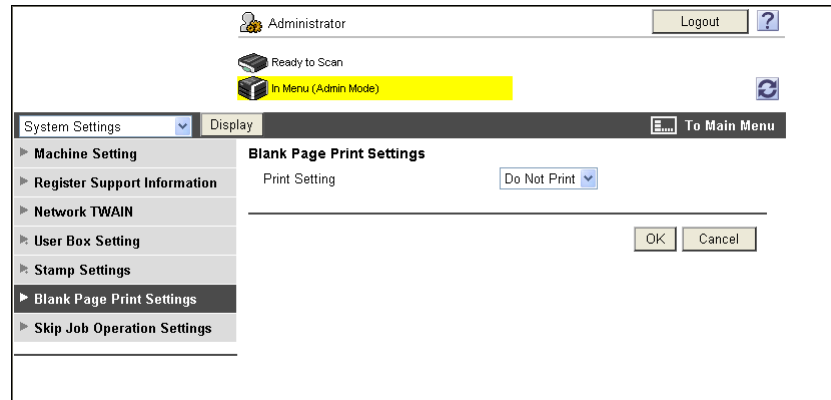
2.57.5 Configuring settings for printing blank pages

Configure settings related to printing blank pages.

You can specify whether to print text on blank pages when the stamp function prints text.

Blank Page Print Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Blank Page Print Settings".



Item	Description
Print Setting	Specify whether to print text on blank pages when the stamp function prints text.

2.57.6 Configuring settings for skipping jobs

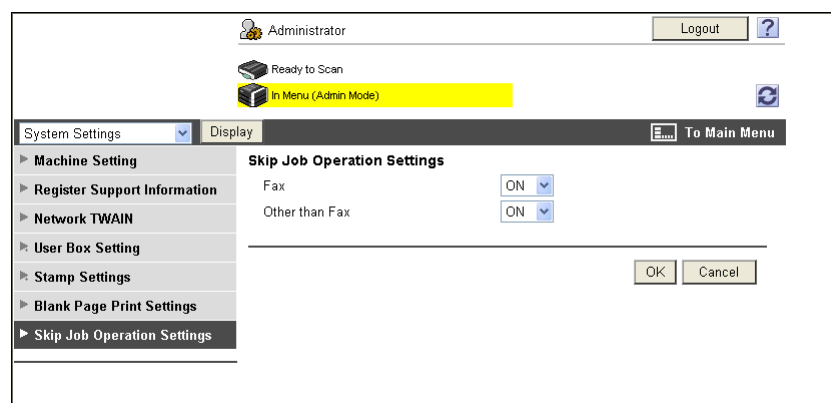
Configure settings for skipping jobs.

When the job currently being printed is being halted with a warning message stating the paper is empty, the mailbin has overflowed, or there is no matching paper, you can configure the machine to skip the job and print the next job waiting to be printed if it is eligible for printing.

Two settings are provided: One allows you to specify whether to skip the job when the next job is a fax; the other allows you to specify whether to skip the job when the next job is not a fax.

Skip Job Operation Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Skip Job Operation Settings".



Item	Description
Fax	Specify whether to skip the job when the next job is a fax.
Other than Fax	Specify whether to skip the job when the next job is not a fax.

2.57.7 Disabling Flash View

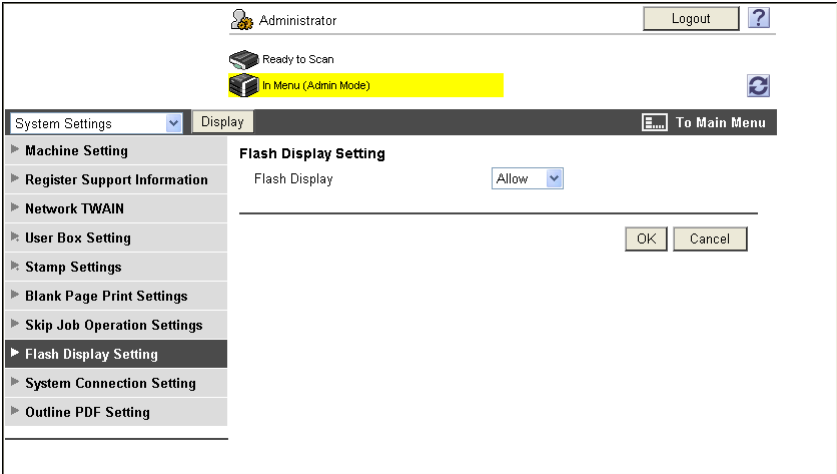
You can disable the flash view in PageScope Web Connection.

Reference

- Disabling the flash view fixes the view mode to the HTML format.
- Disabling the flash view invalidates Data Management Utility.

Flash View Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Flash View Settings".



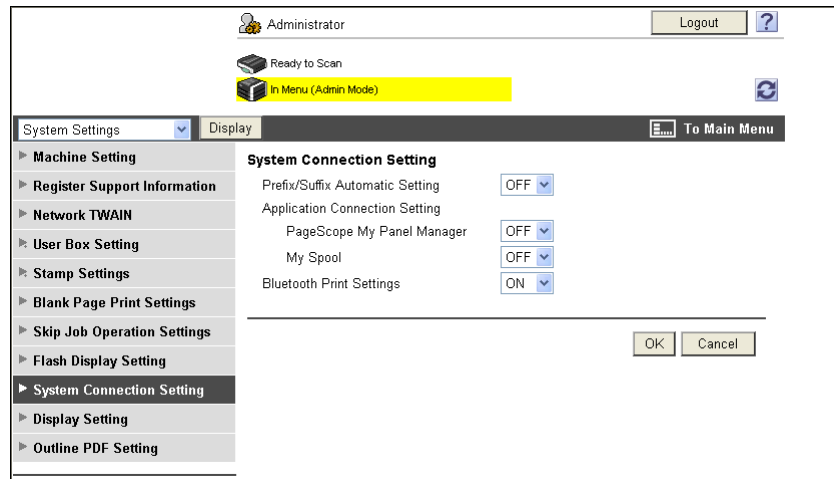
Item	Description
Select Flash View	To disable the flash view, select "OFF".

2.57.8 Using the Fax Server Communicating in E-Mail Format

When using the fax server communicating in E-mail format, you can configure settings to automatically add a prefix and suffix to a destination number.

System Connection Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "System Connection Setting".



Item	Description
Automatic Prefix/Suffix Setting	Select whether to automatically add a prefix and suffix to a destination number. To automatically add a prefix and suffix, select "Store Address" ► "Prefix/Suffix", and register the target prefix and suffix in No. 1. For details, refer to page 2-277.

Reference

If "Automatic Prefix/Suffix Setting" is set to "ON", the following restrictions will be applied.

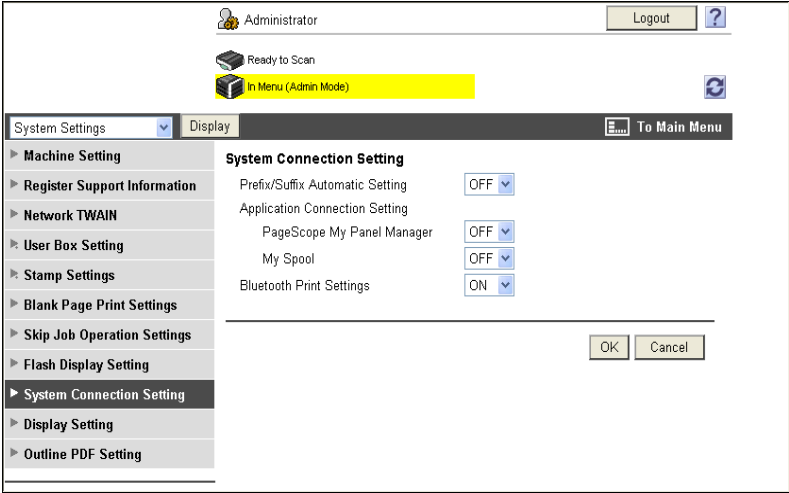
- "Fax Settings" is not available (excluding "Destination Check Display Function", "Confirm Address (TX)", and "Confirm Address (Register)").
- "Store Address" ► "Application Registration" are not available.
- "Bulletin Board User Box", "Polling TX User Box", "Memory RX User Box", and "Fax Retransmit User Box" are not available.
- "Bulletin Board User Box" and "Relay User Box" cannot be registered.
- Confidential RX is not available.
- "Off-Hook" is not available.
- When sending, "Line Settings", "Communication Method Setting", "Fax Header Setting" is not available in "Communication Setting".
- The Network Fax function is not available.
- "Tone", "Pause", "-", and "Line Settings" are not available when registering a fax destination in the address book.
- You can output "Activity Report", "TX Report", and "RX Report" in "Job History".
- A number excluding a prefix and suffix is displayed in "Address" of "Job History".
- "Address Type" is set to E-mail in "Current Jobs" and "Job History".
- "Meter Count" is updated only when "Scan" is enabled in "Fax/Scan"; however, "Number of Faxed Sheets" is not updated.

2.57.9 Canceling the connection with applications

You can cancel the connection from this machine to the server when an error occurs on the server while PageScope My Panel Manager.

System Connection Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "System Connection Setting".



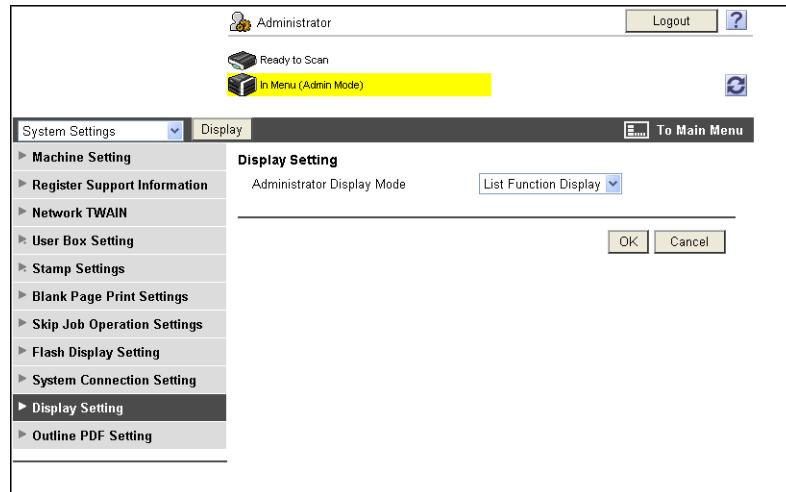
Item	Description
PageScope My Panel Manager	Select "OFF" when canceling the connection from this machine to PageScope My Panel Manager.
My Spool	This setting is not used.

2.57.10 Specifying the display mode of the administrator mode

You can select the display mode of the PageScope Web Connection administrator mode from "Tab Function Display" or "List Function Display".

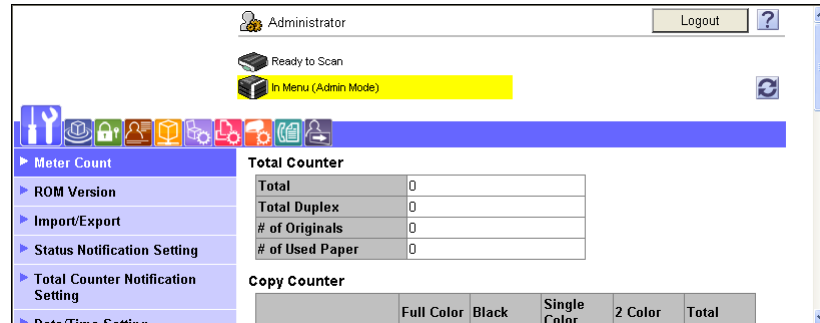
Display Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Display Setting".

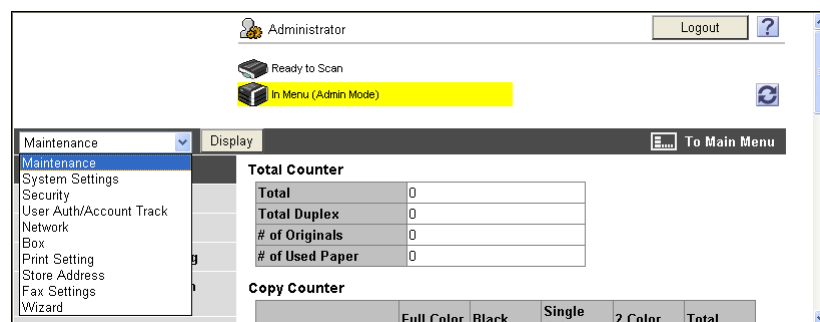


Item	Description
Administrator Display Mode	Select the display mode of the administrator mode.

Tab Function Display



List Function Display



Reference

- This manual shows an example where the "List Function Display" is set as the display mode.

2.57.11 Configuring Outline PDF Settings

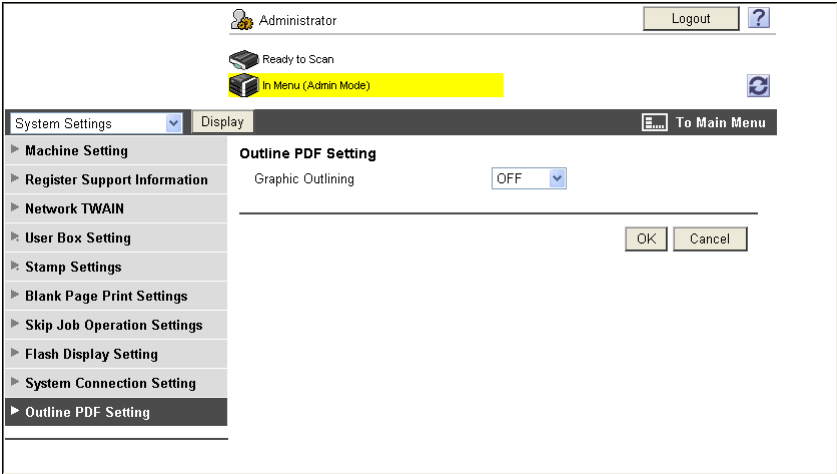
Configure settings to outline graphics when creating an outline PDF.

 Reference

For details on outline PDF, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

Outline PDF Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "System Settings" ► "Outline PDF Setting".



Item	Description
Outline Graphics	Specify the level to scan a graphic (line image) when creating an outline PDF. The graphic (line image) outlining level becomes higher in the order of "LOW", "MIDDLE", and "HIGH". If "OFF" is specified, the target graphic (line image) will not be outlined.

2.58 Settings under "Security"

This section describes other configurable items under "Security" of PageScope Web Connection.

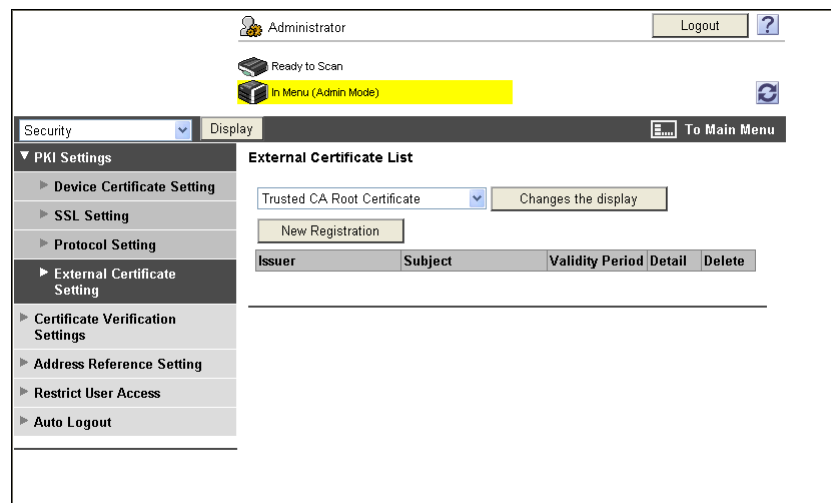
2.58.1 Managing external certificates

You can manage external certificates from this machine.

Root certificates or interim certificate issued by a trusted Certification Authority (CA), certificates issued by a trusted End Entity (EE), or distrusted certificates can be registered with this machine for management. The registered external certificates are referenced during chain validation of a certificate, when making sure that its certificate path has no problems.

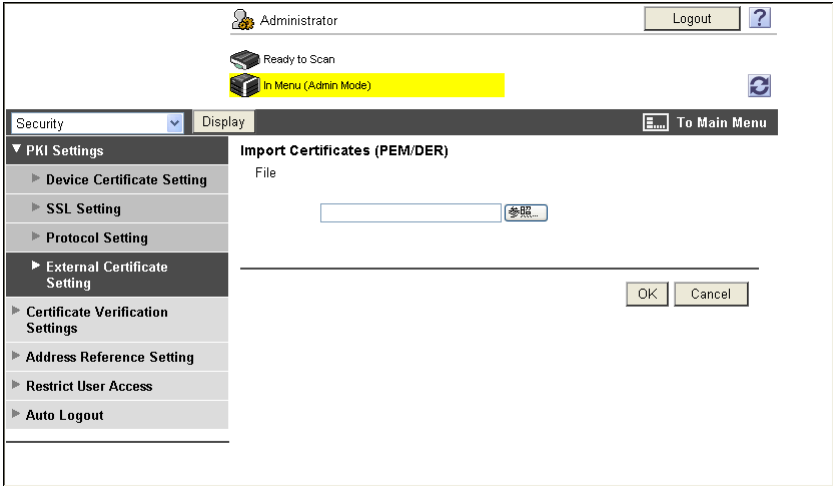
External Certificate Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ► "PKI Setting" ► "External Certificate Setting".



Item	Description
Certificate type	Select the type of an external certificate you want to display, and click [Change the display]. Then external certificates of the selected type are displayed in the list.
[New Registration]	Click this button to register a new external certificate. Click [Browse] in the new registration window to specify a new external certificate to be registered.
Issuer	Displays the issuer of an external certificate.
Subject	Displays the destination of an external certificate.
Validity Period	Displays the validity period of an external certificate.
Detail	Check detailed information about an external certificate.
Delete	Displays a message asking you to confirm deletion, enables you to delete an external certificate.

New registration window



Item	Description
File	Click [Browse] to specify a new external certificate to be registered. • If "Trusted CA Root Certificate" is selected, register the root certificate of the trusted CA (certificate authority). • If "Trusted CA Intermediate Certificate" is selected, register the interim certificate of the trusted CA (certificate authority). • If "Trusted EE (End Entity) Certificate" is selected, individually register the trusted certificates. • If "Non-Trusted Certificate" is selected, individually register the untrusted certificates.

Reference

Item	Description
Trusted CA Root Certificate	You must import the certificate of the CA that issued the certificate in question in this machine in advance, if you wish to validate the chain of a submitted certificate.
Trusted CA Intermediate Certificate	You must import the certificate of the intermediate certificate authority in this machine in advance, if the submitted certificate is issued by an intermediate certificate authority. You must also import the root certificate of the CA, which certifies the intermediate certificate authority, in this machine in advance.
Trusted EE (End Entity) Certificate	Trusted EE refers to the certificate to be submitted. By importing a certificate in this machine in advance, the certificate will be identified as a trusted certificate when it is submitted. If a certificate is registered as the trusted EE certificate in advance, this machine will skip validation of the certificate chain when it is submitted and will recognize it as a trusted certificate.
Non-Trusted Certificate	Register non-trusted certificates in this machine.

2.58.2 Limiting accessible destinations for each user

Register and edit reference allowed groups.

When you register a user with this machine, add the user to a reference allowed group. In addition, when you add a destination to the address book, grant reference access permission only to the reference allowed group you add the user to. This limits access to the destination to the users in this reference allowed group.

You can also specify the access allowed level of each reference allowed group. Even a user who does not belong to a group permitted to reference a destination can still reference the destination if the access allowed level of the user is higher than or equal to that of the group permitted to reference the destination.



Reference

For details on the registration of users, refer to page 2-144.

For details on the registration of destinations with the address book, refer to page 2-250.

Registering reference allowed groups

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Address Reference Setting" ►► [Edit].

The screenshot shows the 'Reference Allowed Group Registration' dialog box. At the top, there's a header bar with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below that, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main area has a left sidebar with a tree view containing 'Security', 'PKI Settings', 'Certificate Verification Settings', 'Address Reference Setting' (selected), 'Restrict User Access', and 'Auto Logout'. The right pane shows the 'Reference Allowed Group Registration' form with the following fields: 'No.' with value '1', 'Reference Allowed Group Name' with an empty text box, and 'Access Allowed Level' with a dropdown menu showing '0'. At the bottom right are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

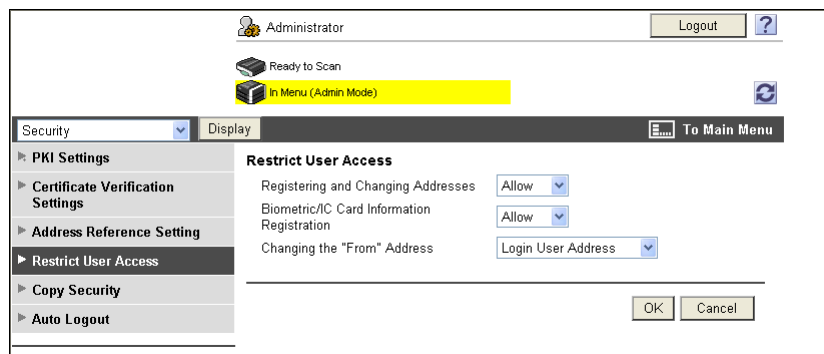
Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number.
Reference Allowed Group Name	Enter the name of the reference allowed group (up to 24 characters).
Access Allowed Level	Specify the access allowed level of the reference allowed group.

2.58.3 Restricting Registration and Change by a User

You can restrict the registering of addresses or biometric/IC card information and the changing of the From address by general users.

Restrict User Access

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Restrict User Access".



Item	Description
Registering and Changing Addresses	Select "Restrict" to restrict registering and changing addresses by general users.
Register biometric/IC card information	Select "Restrict" to restrict registering biometric/IC card information by users.
Change the "From" Address	To restrict changing the From address by users when sending an E-mail from this machine, select "Admin. E-mail Address" or "User Address Priority". If "Admin. E-mail Address" is selected, the administrator's E-mail address is set as the From address of the E-mail to be sent from this machine. If "User Address Priority" is selected, the user's E-mail address is set as the From address when it is registered. However, when the user's E-mail address is not registered or S/MIME is used to send an E-mail, the administrator's E-mail address is set as the From address. If "Allow" is selected, the user can change the From address before sending an E-mail.

Reference

- If "Enhanced Security Mode" is enabled, "Registering and Changing Addresses" is set to "Restrict".
- "Register biometric/IC card information" is available when the optional authentication unit is installed in this machine.
- If user authentication is enabled, the default of "Change the "From" Address" is set to "User Address Priority".

2.58.4 Configuring Copy Security Settings

Configure settings to use the copy guard and password copy functions.

Using the copy guard function enables you to print a copy guard (text with copy inhibit information embedded) on a document. If an attempt is made to copy a document with a copy guard printed, a warning message is displayed to disable copying.

Using the password copy function enables you to embed a password in a document. If an attempt is made to copy a document with a password embedded, the system will prompt you to enter the password. Copying cannot be performed unless the correct password is entered.

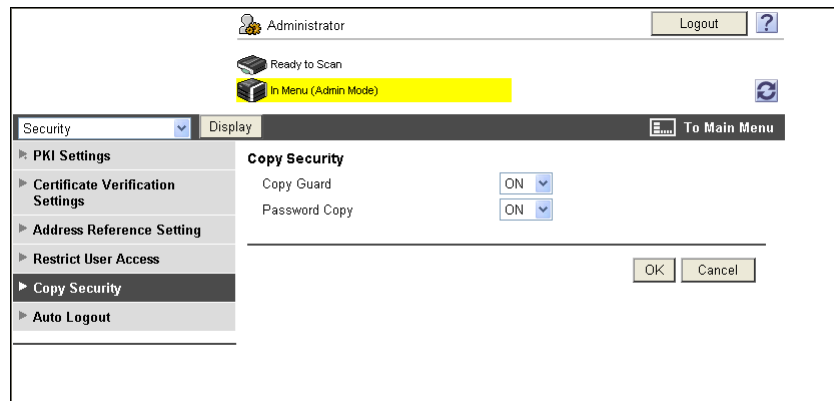
Reference

- To use the copy guard and password copy functions, install the optional security kit SC-507 in this machine.
- For details on the copy guard and password copy functions, refer to the "User's Guide [Copy Operations]".

Copy Security

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Copy Security."

(If the optional security kit SC-507 is not installed, this menu item will not be displayed.)



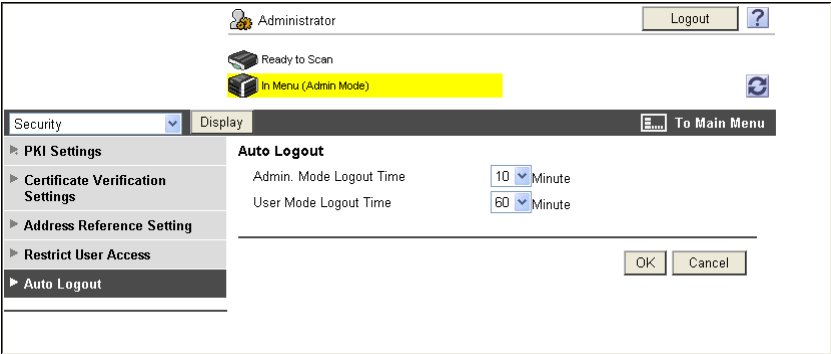
Item	Description
Copy Guard	Select "ON" to use the copy guard function.
Password Copy	Select "ON" to use the password copy function.

2.58.5 Specifying the automatic logout time of PageScope Web Connection

Configure time before auto logout from the administrator or user mode of PageScope Web Connection.
If no operation is performed for a predefined length of time, the user will automatically be logged out.

Auto Logout

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ➤ "Auto Logout".



Item	Description
Admin. Mode Logout Time	Select the time period before the user will automatically be logged out when no operations have been performed in the administrator mode.
User Mode Logout Time	Select the time period before the user will automatically be logged out when no operations have been performed in the user mode.

2.58.6 Configuring the administrator password

Configure the administrator password of this machine.

Administrator Password Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Security" ►► "Administrator Password Setting".

Reference

- If Enhanced Security Mode is enabled, this menu item will not be displayed.
- If a device certificate has not been registered, this menu item will not be displayed.
- This menu does not appear if "Mode using SSL/TLS" is set to "None" in "Security" ►► "PKI Settings" ►► "SSL Settings" when a device certificate is already registered.

Item	Description
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.
New Administrator Password	Enter the administrator password (up to 8 characters, excluding space and ").
Re-type New Administrator Password	Enter the administrator password again for confirmation.

Reference

- If "Password Rules" is enabled, you cannot enter the password with less than eight characters. If a user password containing less than eight characters has already been registered, change the password so that it contains eight characters before enabling "Password Rules".

2.59 Settings under "User Authentication/Account Track"

This section describes other configurable items under "User Authentication/Account Track" of PageScope Web Connection.

2.59.1 Configuring the function permission of the public user

Configure the function permission and reference permission of the public users.

Public User

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ► "User Authentication Setting" ► "Public User".

(This menu item will not be displayed if the public user access is not permitted.)

The screenshot displays the 'Public User' configuration interface. At the top, there's a header with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below this, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main navigation pane on the left includes 'User Auth/Account Track' (selected), 'Display', and 'To Main Menu'. The 'Public User' settings are organized into several sections:

- General Settings**
 - User Authentication Setting**
 - User Registration
 - Default Function Permission
 - Public User** (selected)
 - Administrative Setting
 - Account Track Settings
 - External Server Settings
 - Public User Box Setting
 - User/Account Common Setting
 - Scan to Home Settings
 - Scan to Authorized Folder Settings
- Function Permission**
 - Copy: Allow
 - Scan: Allow
 - Save to External Memory: Restrict
 - External Memory Document Scan: Restrict
 - Fax: Allow
 - Print: Allow
 - User Box: Allow
 - Print Scan/Fax TX: Allow
 - Manual Destination Input: Allow
 - Mobile/PDA: Allow
 - Limited Color Print: Allow
- Output Permission(Print)**
 - Color: Allow
 - Black: Allow
- Output Permission(TX)**
 - Color: Allow
- Limiting Access to Destinations**
 - ☒ Reference Allowed Group
 - Search from List
 - Registered Reference Group Number
 - TotalID
 - ☒ Access Allowed Level: 0

At the bottom right, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description
Function Permission	Specify function permissions. Specify whether to permit "Copy", "Scan", "Save to External Memory", "Scan a document in external memory", "Fax", "Print", "User Box", "Print Scan/Fax TX", "Manual Destination Input", "Cellular Phone/PDA", and "Color printing when color printing is restricted". If all operations are disabled, no user will not be able to log in to this machine as the public user.
Output Permission (Print)	Configure settings to restrict the print functions. You can specify whether to permit color and black printing respectively.
Output Permission (TX)	Configure settings to restrict the transmission functions. You can also specify whether to permit the transmission of color images.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Restrict address book entries that the public user can reference. To add the public user to a reference allowed group, select the check box and click [Search from List]. From the displayed list, select the reference allowed group to which the public user is added. You can select one or more reference allowed groups. To specify the access allowed level, select the check box and specify the access allowed level.

Reference

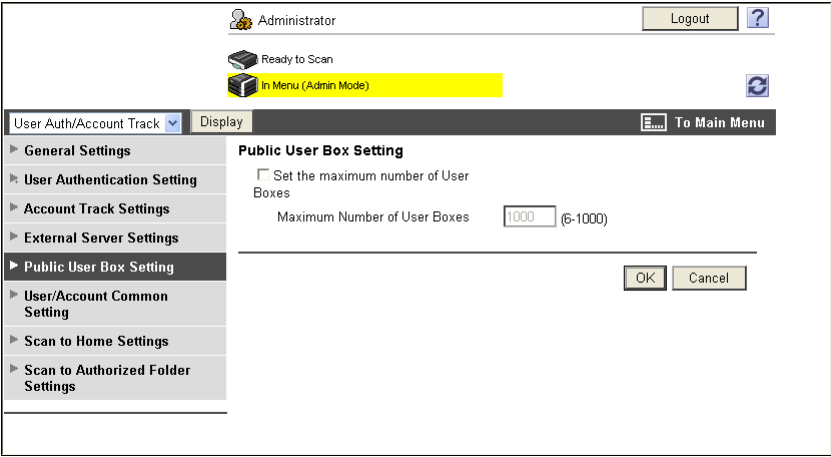
- By default, the sheets printed in the single color/2 color mode are counted as being printed in color. To restrict use of the color printing or color image transmission functions, you can change this behavior to treat printing in the single color/2 color mode as monochrome printing if necessary. For details, refer to page 2-234.
- Whether to allow the "Save to External Memory" function can be specified when "Save Document" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ► "User Box Settings" ► "External Memory Function Settings". Whether to allow the "External Memory Document Scan" function can be specified when "USB to User Box" is set to "ON" in "External Memory Function Settings". For details, refer to page 2-213.
- When "Security Settings" ► "Security Details" ► "Manual Destination Input" is set to "Restrict" in "Administrator Settings" on the Control Panel, the user cannot manually enter the address regardless of the setting of this function.
- To connect this machine to a cellular phone or PDA, install the optional Local Interface Kit EK-605 in this machine. Whether to allow the "Mobile/PDA" function can be specified when "Bluetooth" is set to "Enable" in "Network" ► "Bluetooth Setting" and "Bluetooth Print Settings" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ► "System Connection Setting".

2.59.2 Specifying the maximum number of Public User Boxes

Specify the maximum number of Public User Boxes.

Public User Box Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "Public User Box Setting".



Item	Description
Set the maximum number of User Boxes	Select this check box to specify the maximum number of Public User Boxes.
Maximum Number of User Boxes	Enter the maximum number of Public User Boxes (in units of pieces).

2.59.3 Managing single color /2 Color output

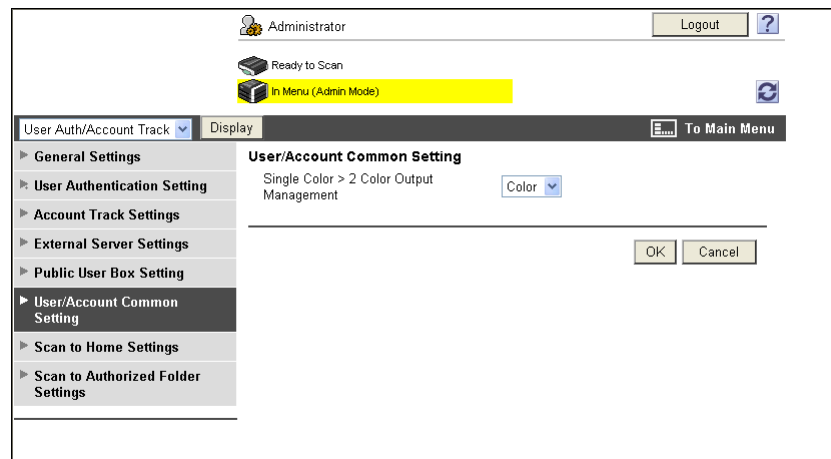
When you restrict color printing or restrict the number of sheets printed in color/black, you can specify whether to count the sheets printed in the single color/2 color mode as being printed in color or in black.

By default, the sheets printed in the single color/2 color mode are counted as being printed in color. When you treat single and 2 color printing as black printing, you can permit users to print in the single or 2 color mode while you do not permit the users to print in color.

When you treat single color or 2 color printing as black printing, you can manage only full color printing as color printing.

User/Account Common Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ►► "User/Account Common Setting".



Item	Description
Single Color > 2 Color Output Management	Select whether to treat single color or 2 color printing as "Color" or "Black" printing.

2.59.4 Restricting specification of sending destinations

You can restrict specification of sending destinations by users.

Enabling this item disables manual entry of destinations except for recipients of faxes or IP address faxes. Therefore users can specify sending destinations only by accessing the address book. Enabling this item also applies the following restrictions.

- Users cannot save documents to User Boxes
- Users cannot transmit documents from User Boxes
- Users cannot use annotation User Boxes
- Users cannot use the image panel
- Users cannot select addresses from the transmission history
- Users cannot use the URL notification function

To restrict users' specification of destinations, it is effective to combine following settings depending on your operating environments.

- Restrict address registration by users (p. 2-227).
- If you do not want users to use the LDAP server, do not register the LDAP server. (p. 2-65)
- When you permit the public user access, restrict scanning by the public user.(p. 2-231)
- If you are concerned about retrieval of images from User Boxes, do not grant the User Box operation to users. (p. 2-214)
- If you are concerned about retrieval of images via TCP Socket, disable TCP Socket. (p. 2-185)

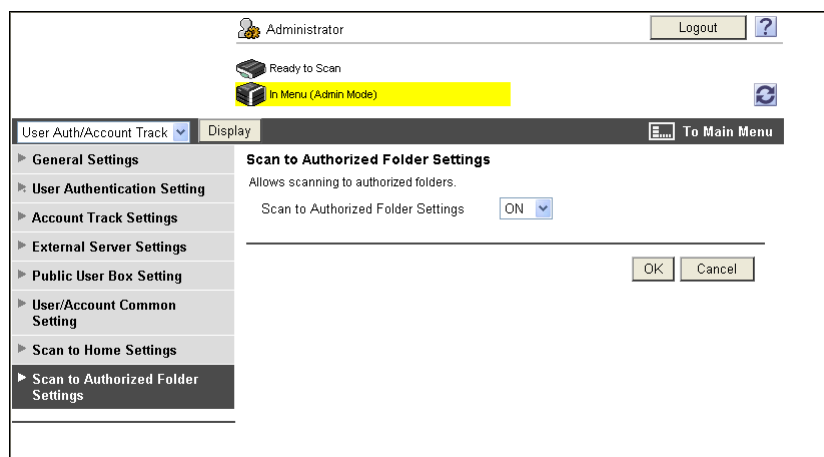


Reference

By configuring "Scan to Authorized Folder Settings" in an environment where user authentication is enabled, you can restrict the access to SMB destinations registered in the address book. For details, refer to page 2-45.

Scan to Authorized Folder Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Auth/Account Track" ► "Scan to Authorized Folder Settings".



Item	Description
Scan to Authorized Folder Settings	To restrict users' specification of sending destinations, select "ON".

2.60 Settings under "Box"

This section describes configurable items in the User Box tab of PageScope Web Connection.



Reference

For details of User Box functions, refer to the "User's Guide [Box Operations]".

2.60.1 Changing User Box settings

You can change settings of created User Boxes or delete them.

In the administrator mode, you can change the settings of a User Box or delete a User Box without entering the User Box password.

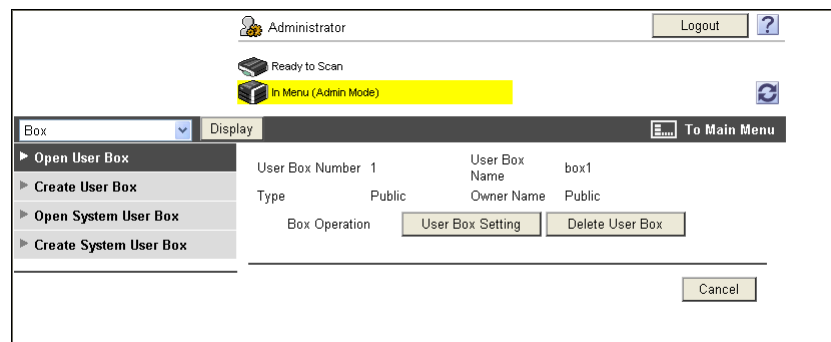


Reference

Use the user mode to handle documents in User Boxes. For details, refer to the "User's Guide [Box Operations]".

Open User Box

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Box" ►► "Open User Box".



Item	Description
[User Box Setting]	Change the User Box settings. When PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication and you are logged in to the administrator mode, this item will not appear if you have selected a Personal User Box.
[Delete User Box]	Delete User Boxes. When PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication and you are logged in to the administrator mode, this item will not appear if you have selected a Personal User Box.

Changing User Box settings

Item	Description
User Box Number	Displays the User Box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Index	Select the indexing characters.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the time before documents in users boxes are deleted. Select "Do Not Delete" if you do not delete documents in User Boxes. To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before documents are to be deleted automatically. To specify the document deletion timing by hours and minutes, select "Specify Time", and specify the time before documents are to be deleted automatically. This item is available when "Delete Setting" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ►► "User Box Settings" ►► "Document Delete Time Setting".
User Box Expansion Function is change	Select whether to add the confidential reception function to the User Box. If you add the function, enter the password (up to eight characters). This item appears when the optional fax kit FK-502 is installed.
User Box Password is changed.	To change the User Box password, select this check box and then enter the new password (up to eight characters, excluding space and double quotation (")).
User Box Owner is changed	To change the User Box owner, select this check box and then select the User Box Type. When PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication and you are logged in to the administrator mode, this item will not appear if you have selected the Public User Box.

2.60.2 Creating new User Boxes

Create new User Boxes.

Create User Box

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Box" ►► "Create User Box".

Item	Description
User Box Number	Specify the User Box number to be created. If you have selected "Input directly", enter the box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Use Box Password	To use the User Box password, select this check box and then enter the password (up to eight characters, excluding space and double quotation ("")).
Index	Select the indexing characters.
Type	Select the User Box type. If "Personal" is selected, specify the owner user name. If "Group" is selected, specify the owner account track name.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the time before documents in users boxes are deleted. Select "Do Not Delete" if you do not delete documents in User Boxes. To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before documents are to be deleted automatically. To specify the document deletion timing by hours and minutes, select "Specify Time", and specify the time before documents are to be deleted automatically. This item is available when "Delete Setting" is set to "ON" in "System Settings" ►► "User Box Settings" ►► "Document Delete Time Setting".
User Box Expansion Function	Click [Display] to display details of the User Box expansion function. Select whether to add the confidential reception function to the User Box. If you add the function, enter the password (up to eight characters). This item appears when the optional fax kit FK-502 is installed.

Reference

- If "Password Rules" is enabled, you cannot enter the password with less than characters. If a user password containing less than eight characters has already been registered, change the password so that it contains eight characters before enabling "Password Rules".

2.60.3 Changing System User Box settings

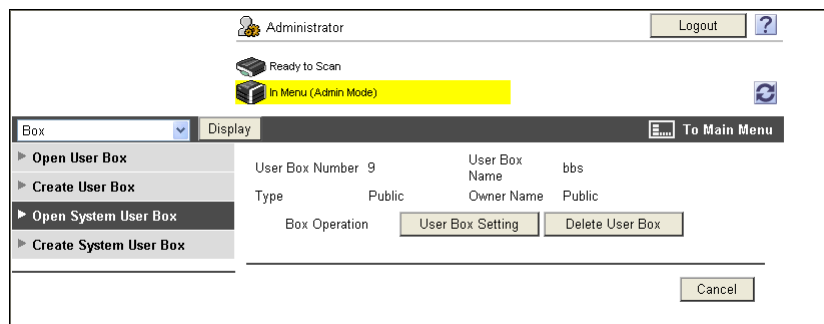
You can change settings of created System User Boxes (Bulletin Board User Boxes, Relay User Boxes or Annotation User Boxes) or delete them.

(If the optional fax kit FK-502 is installed, Bulletin Board User Boxes and Relay User Boxes can be selected.)

Open System User Box

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Box" ►► "Open System User Box".

(The following shows a page that is displayed when "Bulletin Board User Box" is selected)



Item	Description
[User Box Setting]	Change the User Box settings. When PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication and you are logged in to the administrator mode, this item will not appear if you have selected a Personal User Box.
[Delete User Box]	Delete User Boxes. When PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication and you are logged in to the administrator mode, this item will not appear if you have selected a Personal User Box.

Changing settings of "Bulletin Board User Box"

Item	Description
User Box Number	Displays the User Box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the time before documents in users boxes are deleted. Select "Do Not Delete" if you do not delete documents in User Boxes. To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before documents are to be deleted automatically. To specify the document deletion timing by hours and minutes, select "Specify Time", and specify the time before documents are to be deleted automatically.
User Box Password is changed.	To change the User Box password, select this check box and then enter the new password (up to eight characters, excluding space and double quotation ("")).
User Box Owner is changed	To change the User Box owner, select this check box and then select the User Box Type. When PageScope Authentication Manager is used for authentication and you are logged in to the administrator mode, this item will not appear if you have selected the Public User Box.

Change settings of the "relay user Boxes"

Item	Description
User Box Number	Displays the User Box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Relay Address	Specify the relay address.
Relay TX Password is change	To change the relay transmission password, select this check box and then enter the new password (up to eight characters).

Changing the settings of "Annotation User Boxes"

Item	Description
User Box Number	Displays the User Box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the time before documents in users boxes are deleted. Select "Do Not Delete" if you do not delete documents in User Boxes. To print the numbers specified in the Annotation User Box without saving a document in the User Box, select "Do Not Keep". To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before documents are to be deleted automatically. To specify the document deletion timing by hours and minutes, select "Specify Time", and specify the time before documents are to be deleted automatically.
User Box Password is changed.	To change the User Box password, select this check box and then enter the new password (up to eight characters, excluding space and double quotation ("")).
Change Count Up	To change the count up, select the check box, and then select the count up. If the User Box contains documents, this item cannot be configured.
Change Stamp Elements	To change the stamp elements, select this check box, and then specify text, secondary field, date and time, print position, density and number type.

2.60.4 Creating a new System User Box

Create new System User Boxes.
(If the optional fax kit FK-502 is installed, Bulletin Board User Boxes and Relay User Boxes can be selected.)

Create System User Box

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "User Box" ► "Create System User Box".
(The following shows a page that is displayed when "Bulletin Board User Box" is selected)

The screenshot displays the 'Create System User Box (Bulletin Board)' web page. At the top, there's a header with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below this is a status bar showing 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. A navigation bar includes a 'Box' dropdown, a 'Display' button, and a 'To Main Menu' link. The left sidebar contains a tree view with 'Open User Box', 'Create User Box', 'Open System User Box', and 'Create System User Box' (which is highlighted). The main content area is titled 'Create System User Box (Bulletin Board)' and contains the following fields: 'User Box Number' with radio buttons for 'Use opening number' (selected) and 'Input directly'; 'User Box Name' text box; 'Use Box Password' checkbox; 'User Box Password' and 'Retype User Box Password' text boxes; 'Type' dropdown menu (set to 'Public'); and 'Auto Delete Document' section with radio buttons for 'Do Not Delete' (selected), 'Specify days' (with a '1 day' dropdown), and 'Specify Time' (with a 'min. (5-720)' input). 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Creating a "Bulletin Board User Box"

Item	Description
User Box Number	Specify the User Box number to be created. If you have selected "Input directly", enter the box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Use Box Password	To use the User Box password, select this check box and then enter the password (up to eight characters, excluding space and double quotation ("")).
Type	Select the User Box type. If "Personal" is selected, specify the owner user name. If "Group" is selected, specify the owner account track name.
Auto Delete Document	Specify the time before documents in users boxes are deleted. Select "Do Not Delete" if you do not delete documents in User Boxes. To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before documents are to be deleted automatically. To specify the document deletion timing by hours and minutes, select "Specify Time", and specify the time before documents are to be deleted automatically.

Creating a "Relay User Box"

Item	Description
User Box Number	Specify the User Box number to be created. If you have selected "Input directly", enter the box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Relay Address	Specify the relay address.
Relay TX Password	Enter the relay TX password (up to eight characters).
Retype Relay TX Password	Reenter the relay TX password for confirmation (up to eight characters).

Creating an "Annotation User Box"

Item	Description
User Box Number	Specify the User Box number to be created. If you have selected "Input directly", enter the box number.
User Box Name	Enter the User Box name (up to 20 characters).
Use Box Password	To use the User Box password, select this check box and then enter the password (up to eight characters, excluding space and double quotation ("")).
Auto Delete Document	Specify the time before documents in users boxes are deleted. Select "Do Not Delete" if you do not delete documents in User Boxes. To print the numbers specified in the Annotation User Box without saving a document in the User Box, select "Do Not Keep". To specify the document deletion timing by day count, select "Specify days", and specify the number of days before documents are to be deleted automatically. To specify the document deletion timing by hours and minutes, select "Specify Time", and specify the time before documents are to be deleted automatically.
Count Up	Select the count up.
Stamp Elements	Specify text, secondary field, date and time setting, print position, density, and number type.

Reference

- If "Password Rules" is enabled, you cannot enter the password with less than eight characters. If a user password containing less than eight characters has already been registered, change the password so that it contains eight characters before enabling "Password Rules".

2.61 Settings under "Print Setting"

This section describes configurable items under "Print Setting" of PageScope Web Connection.



Reference

For details of printer functions, refer to the "User's Guide [Print Operations]".

2.61.1 Configuring initial settings for the printer function

Configure the initial settings for the printer function.

Basic Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Print Setting" ►► "Basic Setting".

Item	Description
PDL Setting	Select the printer definition language.
Paper Tray	Select the primary paper tray.
Output Tray	Select the primary output tray.
2-Sided Print	Select whether to print in the 2-sided print format.
Bind Direction	Select the binding position for 2-sided printing.
Staple	Select whether to staple printed sheets. To staple printed sheet, select the number of staples. The staple function is available only when the optional finisher is installed.
Punch	Select whether to punch printed sheets. To punch printed sheets, select the number of punched holes. The punch function is available only when the optional finisher and punch kit are installed.
Number of Sets	Enter the number of copies to be printed.
Default Paper Size	Select the paper size.
Original Direction	Select the orientation of an image to be printed.
Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	Select whether to spool print jobs to HDD.

Item	Description
Banner Sheet Setting	Select whether to print banner sheets for each print job. Printing banner sheets prevents mixing different printing materials.
Banner Sheet Paper Setting	Select the primary paper tray for printing banner sheets.
No Matching Paper in Tray Setting	Select the operation to be taken when there is no appropriate sized paper in the specified paper tray. Select "Switch Trays (Tray Priority)" to supply paper from a different paper tray. Select "Stop Printing (Tray Fixed)" to stop printing and display a warning message.
A4/A3<->LTR/LGR Auto Switch	Converts between inch and metric units. Select whether to print an A4 (Letter)/A3 (Ledger)-sized original by full size when a paper tray containing Letter (A4)/Ledger (A3)-sized paper is selected. Selecting "ON" forces full size printing, which may cause images be defective.
Binding Direction Adjustment	Select the binding position adjustment method used for 2-sided printing.
Line Width Adjustment	To adjust the line width so as to make thin lines and small letters easier to see, select the line breadth.
Gray Background Text Correction	To adjust the line width in gray scale background so as to make thin lines and small letters easier to see, select "ON". Selecting "OFF" applies the "Line Width Adjustment" setting in gray scale background.

2.61.2 Configuring the initial settings for the PCL print function

Configure the initial settings for the PCL print function.

PCL Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Print Setting" ► "PCL Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'PCL Setting' configuration window. The sidebar on the left has 'Print Setting' selected, with sub-options: Basic Setting, PCL Setting (highlighted), PS Setting, TIFF Setting, XPS Settings, Interface Setting, and Direct Print Settings. The main area is titled 'PCL Setting' and contains the following settings:

- Symbol Set: Roman-8 (dropdown)
- Typeface: Resident Font (selected), Courier (dropdown)
- Font Size: 12.00 (input), Point (4.00-999.75) (range)
- Scalable Font: 10.00 (input), Pitch (0.44-99.00) (range)
- Bitmap Font: 60 (input), (5-128) (range)
- Line/Page: 5-128 (range)
- CR/LF Mapping: OFF (dropdown)

Buttons for 'OK' and 'Cancel' are at the bottom right.

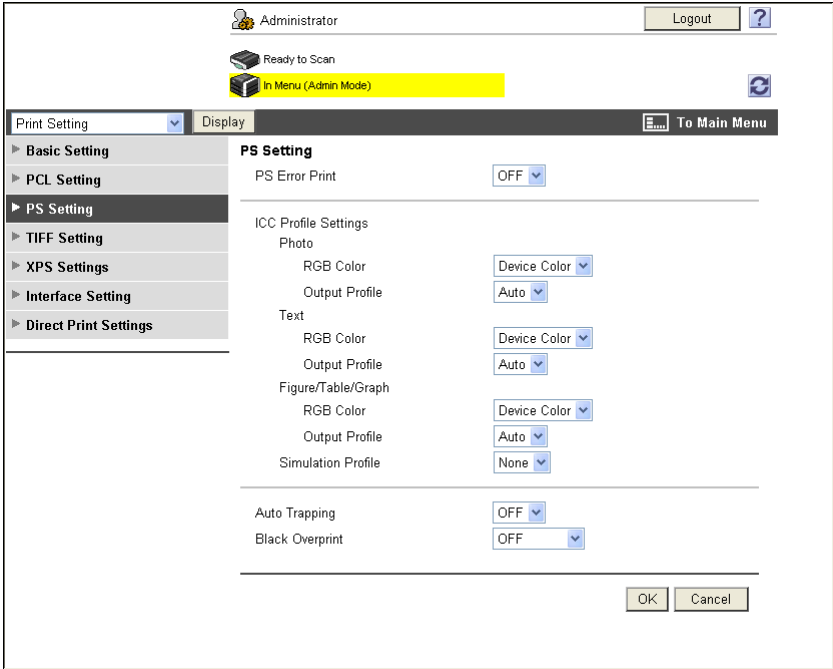
Item	Description
Symbol Set	Select the symbol set.
Typeface	Specify whether to select a font from internal fonts (resident fonts) or from downloaded fonts (download fonts) when the font being used is not specified.
Font Size	Specify either the font pitch or the font point size, depending on the selected typeface.
Line/Page	Enter the number of lines per page.
CR/LF Mapping	Select the CR/LF substitution method when printing text data.

2.61.3 Configuring the initial settings for the PS print function

Configure the initial settings for the PS print function.

PS Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Print Setting" ►► "PS Setting".



Item	Description
PS Error Print	Select whether to print error information when an error occurs during PS ras-terization.
ICC Profile Settings	Configure the default settings of RGB color and output profile for photographs, text, and figures, tables, and graphs respectively, as well as the default setting for the simulation profile.
Photo	Select the default setting for RGB color and output profile for photographs.
Text	Specify the default setting of RGB color and output profile for text.
Figure/Table/Graph	Select the default setting for RGB color and output profile for figures, tables, and graphs.
Simulation Profile	Select the default setting for simulation profile.
Auto Trapping	Select whether to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a picture. If white lines appear at borders of colors on a graph or figure, select "ON".
Black Overprint	Select whether to print so as to prevent white space being generated around a black character or figure.

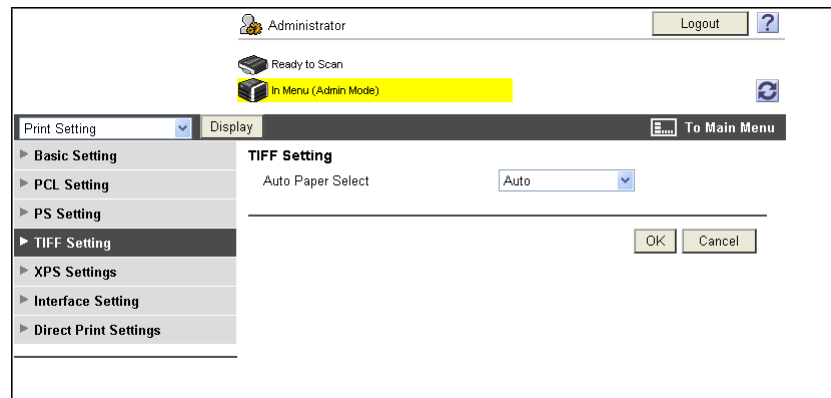
2.61.4 Configuring the initial settings for the TIFF print function

Select this option to configure how to determine the paper size when directly printing TIFF or JPEG image data.

The direct print function provides three modes: printing data using the direct print function, printing data in external memory, and printing data in a cellular phone or PDA.

TIFF Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Print Setting" ► "TIFF Setting".



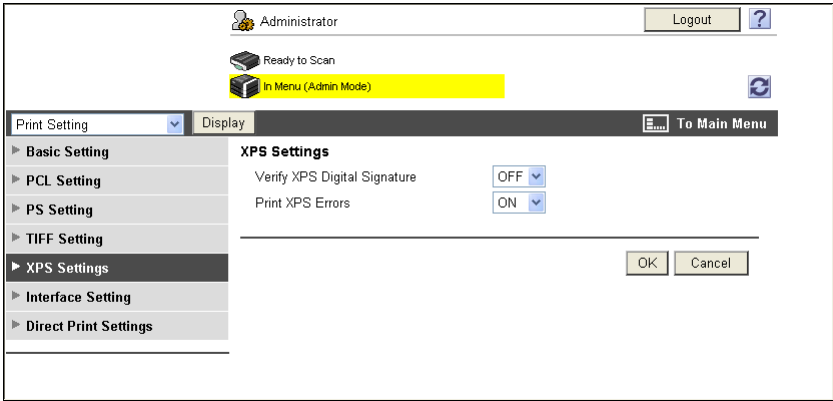
Item	Description
Auto Paper Select	Configure how to determine the paper size when directly printing image data. "Auto": For TIFF/JPEG (JFIF), select this option to calculate the size of the image based on its resolution and the number of pixels to print the image on paper that fits the image size. Select this option to print images on paper of the same size as the image. For JPEG (EXIF), an image is printed based on the paper size that is specified in "User Settings" of "Control Panel" ► "Printer Settings" ► "Paper Setting" ► "Paper Size". An image is enlarged or reduced to fit the paper size. "Priority Paper Size": When printing from a cellular phone or PDA, an image is printed based on the paper size that is specified in "User Settings" of "Control Panel" ► "Cellular Phone/PDA Setting" ► "Print" ► "Paper". When using the direct print function of "PageScope Web Connection" or printing from the external memory, an image is printed based on the paper size that is specified in "User Settings" of "Control Panel" ► "Printer Settings" ► "Paper Setting" ► "Paper Size". An image is enlarged or reduced to fit the paper size.

2.61.5 Configuring the initial settings for the XPS print function

Configure the initial settings for the XPS print function.

XPS Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Print Setting" ►► "XPS Setting".



Item	Description
Verify XPS Digital Signature	Select whether to verify a digital signature when printing XPS data. Selecting "ON" prevents printing data whose signature is invalid.
Print XPS Errors	Select whether to print an error information when the digital signature of XPS data is invalid.

2.61.6 Specifying the timeout of the interface

Specify the timeout for interface.

Interface Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Print Setting" ► "Interface Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Interface Setting' dialog box. It has a title bar with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below the title bar, there are status indicators: 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main area is divided into a left sidebar and a right content area. The sidebar has a 'Print Setting' dropdown menu and a 'Display' button. The content area is titled 'Interface Setting' and contains two input fields: 'Network Timeout' and 'USB Timeout', both set to '60' with a unit of 'sec. (10-1000)'. At the bottom right of the content area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description
Network Timeout	Enter the timeout of network communication.
USB Timeout	Enter the timeout of USB communication.

2.61.7 Disabling the direct print function

You can disable the direct print function of PageScope Web Connection which is enabled by default.

Direct Print Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Print Setting" ► "Direct Print Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Direct Print Settings' dialog box. It has a title bar with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below the title bar, there are status indicators: 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main area is divided into a left sidebar and a right content area. The sidebar has a 'Print Setting' dropdown menu and a 'Display' button. The content area is titled 'Direct Print Settings' and contains one input field: 'PSWC Direct Print', set to 'ON'. At the bottom right of the content area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description
PSWC Direct Print	To disable using the direct print function, select "OFF".

2.61.8 Restricting users from obtaining device information using password

You can specify a password to obtain device information from the printer driver and restrict users from obtaining device information.

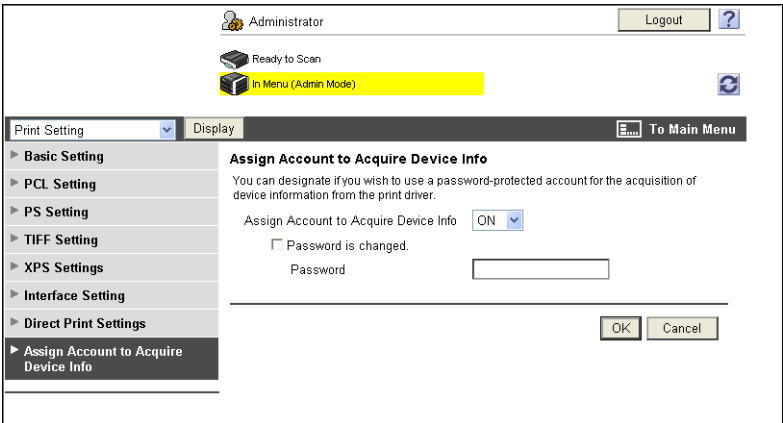


Reference

For details on obtaining device information from the printer driver, refer to the User's Guide Print Operations.

Assign Account to Acquire Device Info

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Printer Setting" ►► "Assign Account to Acquire Device Info".



Item	Description
Assign Account to Acquire Device Info	Select "ON" when using a password to restrict users from obtaining device information from the printer driver.
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.
Password	Enter a password (up to 8 characters, excluding space and ").

2.62 Settings under "Store Address"

Register or change the destination addresses for the transmission functions and storage locations for the User Box functions.



Reference

When you permit users to register addresses, the users can register or change addresses in the user mode as well. For details on settings that determine whether to permit address registration, refer to page 2-227.

2.62.1 Registering Address Book

Add new addresses to the address book, change settings of addresses, and register the icon for each address.

When you have added addresses to the address book in advance, you can select the addresses from the address book when sending data. You can also register an icon for a registered address.

Address Registration

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ►► "Address Book" ►► "Store Address".

No.	Function	Name	S/MIME	Edit	Delete
1	E-mail	1		Edit	Delete
2	E-mail	2		Edit	Delete
3	FTP	FTP1		Edit	Delete
4	SMB	PC1		Edit	Delete
5	WebDAV	WebDAV1		Edit	Delete
6	User Box	box1		Edit	Delete
7	Fax	Fax1		Edit	Delete
8	IP	ipfax1		Edit	Delete

Item	Description
[New Registration]	Add new destinations to the address book.
Search by number	Select a range of registration numbers, and then click [Go] to display the list of destinations in the selected range.
Search from Index	Select an index, and then click [Go] to display the list of addresses with the selected index.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Function	Displays the registered functions.
Name	Displays the registered name.
S/MIME	Displays whether a certificate is registered with the E-mail address.
Edit	Click this button to edit the registered address. The available items are the same as those for registration.
Delete	Delete an address from the address book.

Registering a new "E-mail" destination

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
E-mail	Enter the E-mail address of the destination (up to 320 characters).
Registration of Certification Information	Select this check box to register certificate information. Click [Browse] to specify the certificate to be registered. Only the DER (Distinguished Encoding Rules) formatted file is supported for registration of certificate information. To delete the registered certificate information, select "Deletion of Certification Information". You cannot register a certificate if the E-mail address of the destination does not match that of the certificate. Before registering a certificate, check that those E-mail addresses are the same.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a new "FTP destination"

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
Host Address	Enter the IP address of the destination FTP server. Format: *.*.*. (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.
File Path	Specify the destination directory (up to 127 bytes).
User ID	Enter the user ID to log in to the destination FTP server (up to 63 bytes).
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password. This item is displayed when editing the registered information.
Password	Enter the password to log in to the destination FTP server (up to 63 bytes, excluding space and ").
anonymous	Select whether to allow anonymous users to access the FTP server.
PASV Mode	Select whether to communicate in PASV mode.
Proxy	Select whether to use a proxy server.
Port No.	Enter the port number.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a new "SMB destination"

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
Host Address	Enter the IP address of the destination computer. In the IPv4 environment, enter the IPv4 address, NetBIOS name, or host name. Enter the NetBIOS name in uppercase. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. For the host name, specify a fully-qualified domain name (FQDN). In the IPv6 environment, enter the IPv6 address or host name. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. However, you can also specify the host name in an environment without the DNS server when resolving the names using the LLMNR function while the destination computer is Windows Vista/Server 2008.
File Path	Specify the destination directory (up to 255 bytes).
User ID	Enter the user ID to log in to the destination computer (up to 127 bytes).
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password. This item is displayed when editing the registered information.
Password	Enter the password to log in to the destination computer (up to 127 characters, excluding space and ").
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a new "WebDAV destination"

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
Host Address	Enter the IP address of the destination WebDAV server. Format: *.*.*. (Asterisk * can be 0 to 255) If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "IPv6" is set to "ON", you can also specify the IPv6 address.
File Path	Specify the destination directory (up to 142 bytes).
User ID	Enter the user ID to log in to the destination WebDAV server (up to 63 bytes).
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password. This item is displayed when editing the registered information.
Password	Enter the password to log in to the destination WebDAV server (up to 63 bytes, excluding space and ").
SSL Settings	Select whether to use SSL for encryption.
Proxy	Select whether to use a proxy server.
Port No.	Enter the port number.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a new "User Box destination"

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
User Box Number	Select the box number of the destination User Box from User Boxes registered with this machine.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a new "fax destination"

(This registration is available if the optional fax kit FK-502 is installed.)

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
Fax Number	Enter the fax number of the destination (up to 38 characters).
Confirm Fax Number	Enter the fax number again to prevent an incorrect fax number from being registered. This item is displayed when "Confirm Address (Register)" is "ON".
Line Setting	Select a line to be used. This item is available when two optional fax kits are installed.
Communication Setting	Click [Display] to display the current communication settings. Select whether to enable each of "V34 OFF", "ECM OFF", "International Communication" or "Check Destination".
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a new "IP address fax destination"

(Registration is possible when the IP address fax function is available.)

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
Address Format	Select the address format of the destination.
Address	Enter the IP address of the destination IP address fax machine. If "IP Address" is selected in "Address Format", enter the IP address of the destination. When using IPv6, you can specify the IPv6 address. If "Host name" is selected in "Address Format", enter the host name of the destination. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the host name instead. If "E-mail Address" is selected in "Address Format", enter the E-mail address of the destination. If the DNS server has already been configured, you can enter the E-mail address instead.
Port No.	Enter the port number.
Destination Machine Type	Select whether the destination machine is a color or monochrome machine.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

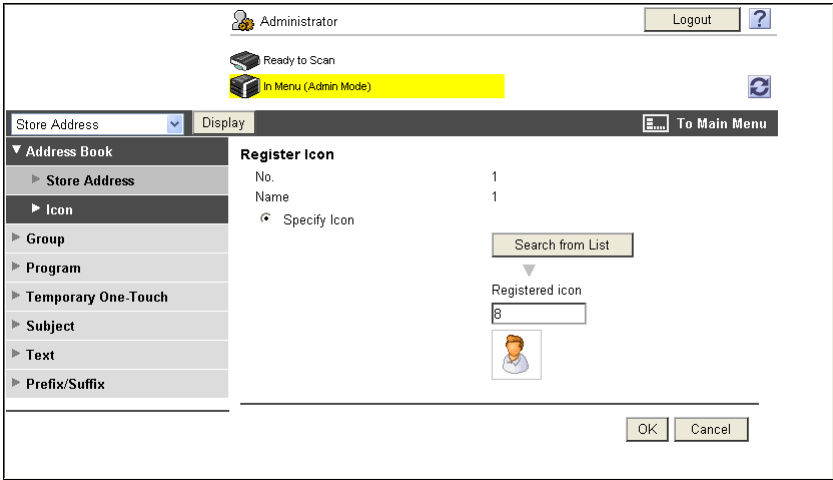
Registering a new "Internet fax destination"

(Registration is possible when the Internet fax function is available.)

Item	Description
No	Specify the registration number of the destination. If you select "Input directly", enter the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Index	Select the index character used when searching for the destination. It is convenient to select the "Main" check box for a frequently used destination.
E-mail	Enter the E-mail address of the destination (up to 320 characters).
Resolution	Select a resolution the receiver machine supports.
Paper Size	Select a paper size the receiver machine supports.
Compression Type	Select a compression type the receiver machine supports.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Icon

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ►► "Address Book" ►► "Icon".



Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number of the destination.
Name	Displays the name of the destination.
Specify Icon	Select "Specify Icon".
[Search from List]	Click this button to display the list of icons. Select the icon you want to register.

2.62.2 Registering a group

Register a new group or change the settings of a registered group.

You can register one or more destinations as a group.

When you want to send (broadcast) the same data to multiple destinations, it is convenient to have those destinations registered as a group. To register a group, you must register the destinations to be added to the group in advance.

Group

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ►► "Group".

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there's a header with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below it, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The main navigation area has a dropdown menu with 'Store Address' selected, and a 'Display' button. A sidebar on the left lists various categories: 'Address Book', 'Group', 'Program', 'Temporary One-Touch', 'Subject', 'Text', and 'Prefix/Suffix'. The 'Group' category is selected. The main content area displays the 'Group List' section, which includes a 'New Registration' button, a search bar labeled 'Search by number.' with a dropdown set to '1-50' and a 'Go' button, and a table with columns 'No.', 'Name', 'Edit', and 'Delete'. The table contains one entry: '1 group1'.

Item	Description
[New Registration]	Click this button to register a new group.
Search by number.	Select a range of registration numbers, and then click [Go] to display the list of destinations in the selected range.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Displays the registered name.
Edit	Click this button to edit the registered group. The available items are the same as those for registration.
Delete	Click this button to delete the group.

Registering a "Group" destination

Item	Description
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Scan/Fax Address	From the list of destinations in the address book, select the destinations you want to add to the group.
[Check Destination]	Check registered destinations.
Specify Icon	Click [Search from List], and then select an icon for a user you want to register from the displayed list.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

2.62.3 Registering a program destination

Register a new program destination and change settings of the destination.

You can register a combination of address information, communication information, and original information as a program destination.

Program

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ►► "Program".

Item	Description
Page (Displays 12 at time)	Select a page, and then click [Go] to display the list of destinations on the selected page.
[Change Page Name]	Change the page name.
No.	Displays the registration number.
Name	Displays the registered name.
S/MIME	Displays whether a certificate is registered with the E-mail address.
[Registration]	Register a new program destination.
[Edit]	Edit a registered program destination. The available items are the same as those for registration.
[Delete]	Delete the program destination.

Registering "E-mail" destinations

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and then specify the E-mail destination.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.

Item	Description
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
File Name	Enter the file name (up to 30 characters).
Scan Setting	Select whether to save the whole scanned pages in one file, or to divide a file into specified number of pages when saving the data. To use the Page Separation function, enter the number of pages for each file. If the number of original pages is less than the setting of Page Separation, the original is saved as one file without being separated. If Page Separation is specified, one E-mail message is sent for each divided file. To determine whether to use Page Separation, consider the network or user load.
Subject	Specify the subject of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default subject is used. Click [Subject List] to view the content.
Text	Specify the body text of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default body text is used. Click [Text List] to view the content.
File Attachment Setting	Select whether to collectively attach all the divided files to one E-mail to send them (E-mail size: 200MB or less), or to attach each file to one E-mail to send it (E-mail size: less than 400MB) when "Page Separation" is selected in "Scan Setting". When attaching each file to one E-mail, E-mails are sent by the number of divided files.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
Original Direction	Select the orientation of the original.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.

Item	Description
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering "FTP destinations"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and specify the FTP destination.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
File Name	Enter the file name (up to 30 characters).
Scan Setting	Select whether to save the whole scanned pages in one file, or to divide a file into specified number of pages when saving the data. To use the Page Separation function, enter the number of pages for each file. If the number of original pages is less than the setting of Page Separation, the original is saved as one file without being separated.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to notify via E-mail the destination URL defined for saving scanned data. To notify the URL, specify the notification addresses. You can select the addresses from the list by clicking [Search from List].
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.

Item	Description
Original Direction	Select the orientation of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering "SMB destinations"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and then specify the SMB address.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
File Name	Enter the file name (up to 30 characters).
Scan Setting	Select whether to save the whole scanned pages in one file, or to divide a file into specified number of pages when saving the data. To use the Page Separation function, enter the number of pages for each file. If the number of original pages is less than the setting of Page Separation, the original is saved as one file without being separated.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.

Item	Description
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to notify via E-mail the destination URL defined for saving scanned data. To notify the URL, specify the notification addresses. You can select the addresses from the list by clicking [Search from List].
Original Direction	Select the orientation of the original.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering "WebDAV destinations"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and then specify the WebDAV destination.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
File Name	Enter the file name (up to 30 characters).
Scan Setting	Select whether to save the whole scanned pages in one file, or to divide a file into specified number of pages when saving the data. To use the Page Separation function, enter the number of pages for each file. If the number of original pages is less than the setting of Page Separation, the original is saved as one file without being separated.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to notify via E-mail the destination URL defined for saving scanned data. To notify the URL, specify the notification addresses. You can select the addresses from the list by clicking [Search from List].
Original Direction	Select the orientation of the original.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.

Item	Description
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a "User Box destination"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and then specify the User Box destination.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
File Name	Enter the file name (up to 30 characters).
Scan Setting	Select whether to save the whole scanned pages in one file, or to divide a file into specified number of pages when saving the data. To use the Page Separation function, enter the number of pages for each file. If the number of original pages is less than the setting of Page Separation, the original is saved as one file without being separated.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to notify via E-mail the destination URL defined for saving scanned data. To notify the URL, specify the notification addresses. You can select the addresses from the list by clicking [Search from List].
Original Direction	Select the orientation of the original.

Item	Description
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering "fax destinations"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and then specify the fax destination.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.

Item	Description
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
Timer TX	Select whether to perform timer transmission. To perform timer transmission, enter the send time.
Password TX	Select whether to perform password transmission. To perform password transmission, enter the password.
F-Code	Select whether to use the F code for transmission. To use this function, enter the SUB address and password.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering "IP address fax destinations"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and then specify the IP address fax.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.

Item	Description
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering "Internet fax destinations"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Select "Select from Address Book" or "Direct Input", and then specify the Internet fax destination.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
Subject	Specify the subject of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default subject is used. Click [Subject List] to view the content.
Text	Specify the body text of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default body text is used. Click [Text List] to view the content.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.

Item	Description
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering "Group destinations"

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Destination Information	Specify the destination. Click [Search from List] to select the group to be registered as a program destination. Click [Check Destination] to check registered destinations.
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
File Name	Enter the file name (up to 30 characters).
Scan Setting	Select whether to save the whole scanned pages in one file, or to divide a file into specified number of pages when saving the data. To use the Page Separation function, enter the number of pages for each file. If the number of original pages is less than the setting of Page Separation, the original is saved as one file without being separated.
Subject	Specify the subject of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default subject is used. Click [Subject List] to view the content.
Text	Specify the body text of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default body text is used. Click [Text List] to view the content.
File Attachment Setting	Select whether to collectively attach all the divided files to one E-mail to send them (E-mail size: 200MB or less), or to attach each file to one E-mail to send it (E-mail size: less than 400MB) when "Page Separation" is selected in "Scan Setting". When attaching each file to one E-mail, E-mails are sent by the number of divided files.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.

Item	Description
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to notify via E-mail the destination URL defined for saving scanned data. To notify the URL, specify the notification addresses. You can select the addresses from the list by clicking [Search from List].
Timer TX	Select whether to perform timer transmission. To perform timer transmission, enter the send time.
Original Direction	Select the orientation of the original.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

Registering a "No Destination" entry

Item	Description
No	Displays the registration number.
Name	Enter the destination name (up to 24 characters).
Resolution	Select the resolution used for scanning the original.
File Type	Select the file type for saving scanned data.
Outline PDF	Select whether to use the outline PDF function when "Compact PDF" is selected in "File Type".
File Name	Enter the file name (up to 30 characters).

Item	Description
Scan Setting	Select whether to save the whole scanned pages in one file, or to divide a file into specified number of pages when saving the data. To use the Page Separation function, enter the number of pages for each file. If the number of original pages is less than the setting of Page Separation, the original is saved as one file without being separated.
Subject	Specify the subject of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default subject is used. Click [Subject List] to view the content.
Text	Specify the body text of the E-mail message. If you select "Not Specified", the default body text is used. Click [Text List] to view the content.
File Attachment Setting	Select whether to collectively attach all the divided files to one E-mail to send them (E-mail size: 200MB or less), or to attach each file to one E-mail to send it (E-mail size: less than 400MB) when "Page Separation" is selected in "Scan Setting". When attaching each file to one E-mail, E-mails are sent by the number of divided files.
Simplex/Duplex	Select whether to scan one side or both sides of the original. You can scan one side of the first page of the original, and then scan both sides of the remaining pages.
Original Type	Select the original quality, such as text or photo.
Color	Select a color mode. The file formats for saving data may be limited according to the color mode you select.
Separate Scan	Select whether to divide the original to scan.
Density	Select the density.
Background Removal	Adjust the density of the background.
Scan Size	Select the paper size of the original. If you select Standard Size, select the size and the feed direction. If you select Custom Size, specify the height and width.
Application Setting	Click [Display] to display the current application setting.
E-mail Notification	Specify whether to notify via E-mail the destination URL defined for saving scanned data. To notify the URL, specify the notification addresses. You can select the addresses from the list by clicking [Search from List].
Timer TX	Select whether to perform timer transmission. To perform timer transmission, enter the send time.
Password TX	Select whether to perform password transmission. To perform password transmission, enter the password.
F-Code	Select whether to use the F code for transmission. To use this function, enter the SUB address and password.
Original Direction	Select the orientation of the original.
2-Sided Binding Direction	Select the binding position of the original.
Special Original	If the original being sent is a mixed original (original with mixed page sizes), a Z-folded original (original folded in a zigzag shape), or a long original, select whichever is relevant.
Book Copy	Select whether to perform book copying. Using the book copy function enables you to divide page spreads (such as a book or catalog) into left and right pages to be scanned individually.
Erase	Select whether to erase frames. Using the frame erase function enables you to erase unwanted areas around the original, such as transmission information printed on received faxes and the shadows of punched holes.
Compose (Date/Time)	Specify whether to print the date and time data. To print the date and time data, configure the date type, time type, print position, fine-tune, color, pages, size, and text type settings.

Item	Description
Compose (Page)	Select whether to print page numbers. To print page numbers, configure the starting page number, starting chapter number, page number type, print position, fine-tune, color, size, and text type settings.
Compose (Header/Footer)	Specify whether to print the header and footer. To print the header and footer, specify the registration number of the header and footer. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to view the registered headers and footers.
Compose (Stamp)	Select whether to print the stamp. To print the stamp, configure the stamp type (preset stamp or registered stamp), print position, fine-tune, color, pages, and size settings. Click [Confirm Registered Contents] to check the registered stamp. To specify the registered stamp, you must register the stamp with this machine in advance.
Stamp Composition	Select the combine method for combining elements using "Compose" functions. You can select whether to insert the element as an image or text.
Limiting Access to Destinations	Click [Display] to display the current settings for limiting access to destinations. Specify the access allowed level or reference allowed group required to access this destination.

2.62.4 Registering Temporary One-Touch Destination

The Temporary One-Touch function temporarily registers destinations and the operating procedures of transmission.

Unlike program destinations, registration information of a temporary one-touch destination is deleted when transmitting data to the destination registered as a temporary one-touch, or turning off the power of this machine.

Reference

- You cannot register a temporary one-touch destination when "Security Settings" ► "Security Details" ► "Manual Destination Input" is set to "Restrict" in the "administrator settings" on the "control panel".

Temporary One-Touch

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ► "Temporary One-Touch".

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there is a navigation bar with 'Store Address' selected in a dropdown menu, followed by 'Display' and 'To Main Menu'. Below this, a sidebar on the left contains a tree view with 'Address Book' expanded, showing 'Group', 'Program', 'Temporary One-Touch' (selected), 'Subject', 'Text', and 'Prefix/Suffix'. The main content area is titled 'Temporary One-Touch List' and contains a table with 10 rows. Each row has a 'No.' column, a 'Name' column, and two buttons: 'Registration' and 'Delete'. The table is currently empty, showing only the headers and the 'Registration' and 'Delete' buttons for each row.

No.	Name	Edit	Delete
1		Registration	Delete
2		Registration	Delete
3		Registration	Delete
4		Registration	Delete
5		Registration	Delete
6		Registration	Delete
7		Registration	Delete
8		Registration	Delete
9		Registration	Delete
10		Registration	Delete



Reference

The temporary one-touch destination to be registered is the same as the registered program address. However, "Registration of Certification Information" and "Limiting Access to Destinations" are not available for temporary one-touch destinations. For details on registration for temporary one-touch destinations, refer to page 2-257.

2.62.5 Registering the E-mail subject and body

Register the subject and message body used for sending E-mail messages or Internet faxes.

Subject

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" >> "Subject" >> [Edit].

Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number.
Subject	Register the subject of the E-mail message (up to 96 bytes).

Text

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" >> "Text" >> [Edit].

Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number.
Text	Register the E-mail body (up to 384 bytes).

2.62.6 Using a fax server

To use this machine with fax servers, register applications and servers using the applications.

You can register up to five applications and servers. You can also configure custom items for each registered application.

Registering applications

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ► "Application Registration" ► [New/Edit].

Reference

- The "Application Registration" menu is displayed when the optional fax kit FK-502 is not installed.
- Only when the optional fax kit FK-502 is not installed, and the Internet fax function is disabled, registered applications can be displayed and operated from the control panel of this machine.

PageScope Web Connection provides the following templates. Each template provides different custom items predefined for each application.

For WalkUp Fax

No.	Button name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Option
1	Sender Name (CS)	Name	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Fax Number (CS)	PersonalFax Number	ASCII	-	-
3	TEL Number (CS)	PersonalVoice Number	ASCII	-	-
4	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
5	Billing Code1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
6	Billing Code2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-

For Fax with Account

No.	Button name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Option
1	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Sender Name (CS)	Name	ASCII	-	-
3	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
4	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
5	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
6	Billing Code1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
7	Billing Code2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
8	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
9	Hold For Preview	HoldForPreview	-	-	False

For Secure Docs

No.	Button name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Option
1	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
3	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
4	Delivery Method	Delivery	-	-	Secure
5	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
6	Billing Code1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
7	Billing Code2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
8	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
9	Document PW	DocumentPassword	ASCII	-	-

For Certified Delivery

No.	Button name	Function Name	Keyboard Type	Default Value	Option
1	User ID	ID	ASCII	Walkup	-
2	Password	Password	ASCII	-	-
3	Password Auth#	Authentication	-	-	None
4	Delivery Method	Delivery	-	-	Secure
5	Subject	Subject	ASCII	-	-
6	Billing Code1	BillingCode1	ASCII	-	-
7	Billing Code2	BillingCode2	ASCII	-	-
8	CoverSheet Type	CoverSheet	-	-	-
9	Document PW	DocumentPassword	ASCII	-	-

After selecting the template type, configure the following settings.

Administrator Logout ?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Store Address Display To Main Menu

Application Registration

Application Setting

No. 1

Application Name

Server Setting

Host Address 0.0.0.0

File Path

User ID

Password

anonymous OFF

PASV Mode OFF

Proxy OFF

Port No. 21 (1-65535)

Back Next Cancel

Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number of the application.

Item	Description
Application Name	Enter the application name (up to 16 characters).
Host Address	Enter the host address of the server using the application (up to 15 characters).
File Path	Enter the destination file path (up to 96 characters).
User ID	Enter the user ID used to log in to the server (up to 47 characters).
Password is changed	Select this check box to change the password.
Password	Enter the password used to log in to the server (up to 31 characters).
anonymous	Select whether to enable anonymous access.
PASV Mode	Select whether to enable the PASV mode.
Proxy	Select whether to enable the proxy.
Port No.	Enter the port number.
[Next]	Click this button to display the custom items list. Click [Edit] of the item you want to add or change. The function setting page is displayed.

Function Setting

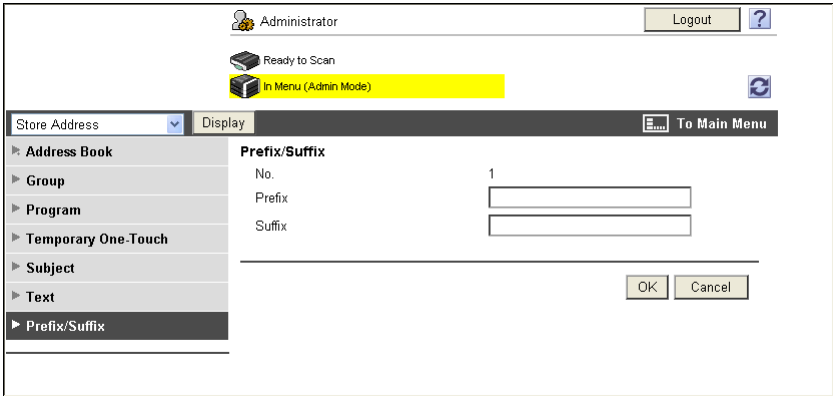
Item	Description
No.	Displays the number of the selected item.
Button name	Enter the button name (up to 16 characters).
Function Name	Select the function name. The required setting items differ depending on the selected function.
Message on Panel	Enter the name displayed on the control panel (up to 32 characters).
Display Method	Select the display method on the control panel.
Default value	Enter the default value. To hide the default value, select the "Input string shown as *****" check box. The allowable number of characters differ depending on the selected function.
Keyboard Type	Select the keyboard type to display on the control panel.
Options (when "Authentication" is selected)	Configure options for Authentication.
Options (when "Deliv- ery" is selected)	Configure options for Delivery.
Options (when "Hold For Pre- view" is selected)	Configure options for Hold For Preview.
Input Type (when "DelaySendDa- taTime" is selected)	Select the time specification.
Default (when "DelaySendDa- taTime" is selected)	Select whether to display the device time.

2.62.7 Simplifying entering E-mail addresses

Register prefixes and suffixes to simplify entering E-mail addresses.
Registration of domain names and other data in Prefix/Suffix enables you to retrieve registered strings when entering an E-mail address, allowing the prompt address entry.

Prefix/Suffix

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Store Address" ► "Prefix/Suffix" ► [Edit].



Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number.
Prefix	Enter a Prefix (up to 20 characters).
Suffix	Enter a Suffix (up to 64 characters).

2.63 Settings under "Fax Settings"

This section describes other configurable items under "Fax Settings" of PageScope Web Connection.
(Displayed when the optional fax kit FK-502 is installed.)



Reference

For details on the fax function, refer to the "User's Guide [Network Scan/Fax/Network Fax Operations]".

2.63.1 Configuring Header/Footer Position settings

Configure settings to print the sender and the reception information on the fax to the recipient.

Header/Footer Position

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ► "Header/Footer Position".

Item	Description
Header Position	Specify the position of the sender information to be added on a fax document sent from this machine. The added sender information is printed as a part of the image on the document received by the recipient. If you select "OFF", the sender information will not be added.
Print Receiver's Name*	Specify the items to be added as the sender information. If you select "ON", sender name, destination fax number (To: xxxxx), transmission start date and time, transmission number, and the number of pages are added as the sender information. If you select "OFF", sender name, fax ID of this machine, transmission start date and time, transmission number, and the number of pages are added as the sender information.
Footer Position	Specify the position of the reception information (reception time and reception number) to be printed on a fax document received by this machine. If you select "OFF", the reception information will not be printed.

2.63.2 Configuring settings for telephone and fax lines

Configure settings related to telephone and fax lines including the telephone dialing method, fax receive mode, and number of incoming calls.

Line Parameter Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Line Parameter Setting".

Item	Description
Dialing Method	Select a dialing method. Improper configuration of the dialing method may hamper a successful phone call.
Receive Mode	Select a receive mode. If you select "Auto RX", faxes are received automatically. If you expect frequent phone calls, for example if an external telephone is connected to this machine, set this mode to "Manual RX".
Number of RX Call Rings	Specify the number of quasi-ring back tone count between fax arrival and the start of reception.
Number of Redials	Specify the number of automatic redials when this machine cannot connect to the destination because the line is busy.
Redial Interval	Specify the interval of redials for automatic redialing.
TEL/FAX Auto Switch	Specify whether to automatically switch telephone and fax when an external telephone is connected to this machine. This item is displayed for Taiwan models.
External TEL Calling Monitor Sound	Specify whether to output the telephone calling monitor sound from this machine when an external telephone is connected to this machine. This item is available when TEL/FAX auto switching is enabled.
External TEL Calling Time	Specify the period from the time an incoming call is received to the time when an external telephone is called when an external telephone is connected to this machine. This item is available when TEL/FAX auto switching is enabled.
Line Monitor Sound	Specify whether to hear the line sound from the speaker during communication.
Line Monitor Sound Vol.	Specify the speaker volume.

2.63.3 Configuring settings to send or receive faxes

Configure settings related to transmission and reception of faxes including file handling at the time of a polling transmission and printing method at the time of reception of a fax.

TX/RX settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "TX/RX Settings".

Item	Description
Duplex Print (RX)	Select whether to print a received fax on both side of sheets.
Letter/Ledger over A4/A3	Specify whether to use paper in inch-sized paper first when printing received faxes.
Print Paper Selection	Select the priority order of paper trays used to print received faxes. If you select "Priority Size", received faxes are printed on paper of the prioritized size. If the prioritized size is not specified, received faxes are printed on paper of the nearest size. If you select "Fixed Size", receive faxes are always printed on paper of the specified size. If "Tray Selection for RX Print" is set to other than "Auto", this item will be set to "Auto Select".
Print Paper Size	Select the size of paper used to print received faxes.
Incorrect User Box No. Entry	Select an action to be taken when the unregistered User Box number is specified when a fax is received by using User Boxes.
Rx from Rejected Fax No	This item is not available.
Tray Selection for RX Print	If you want to fix the paper tray used to print received faxes, select the paper try. If "Print Paper Selection" is set to other than "Auto Select", this item will be set to "Auto".
Min. Reduction for RX Print	Specify a reduction ratio of received faxes. When a receive fax does not fit within the standard paper size, this setting is used to adjust the size.
Print Separate Fax Pages	Select whether to divide a received fax into two or more pages when the document is larger than the standard paper size.
File After Polling TX	Specify whether to delete a file after completing polling transmission of the file.
No. of Sets (RX)	If you need two or more sets of a received fax, specify the number of sets.

Item	Description
RX Setting for each Line	Specify whether to receive a fax for each line. This item is available when two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed. This item is not displayed when "Line 2 Setting" is set to "TX Only" in "Multi Line Settings".
Sender Setting for each Line	Specify whether to register sender information for each line. This item is available when two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed. This item is not displayed when "Line 2 Setting" is set to "RX Only" in "Multi Line Settings".

2.63.4 Configuring settings for the fax functions

Configure settings related to the fax functions.

Function ON/OFF Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ► "Function Setting" ► "Function ON/OFF Setting".

The screenshot shows the 'Function ON/OFF Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The left sidebar lists various settings categories, with 'Function Setting' expanded to show 'Function ON/OFF Setting'. The main area displays settings for F-Code TX, Relay RX, Relay Printing, Destination Check Display Function, Number Display Function, Name Display Function, Confirm Address (TX), and Confirm Address (Register). Each setting has a dropdown menu to select ON or OFF. The 'Number Display Function' and 'Name Display Function' settings have additional input fields for 'Display Number'. The top of the page shows the user is logged in as 'Administrator' and includes a 'Logout' button. The bottom right has 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description
F-Code TX	Select whether to use the F-code transmission function. This function sends documents to a specific User Box of a remote machine by entering the SUB address and the sender ID. To use the F-Code for transmission, the remote machine must support the F-Code function.
Relay RX	Select whether to use this machine as a relay distribution station. A relay distribution station broadcasts documents received from a relay instruction station to the relay distribution destinations. To use the relay distribution function, you must register a relay User Box.
Relay Printing	Specify whether to print relayed documents after the relay distribution.
Destination Check Display Function	Select whether to display the list of the specified destinations when sending a fax.
Confirm Address (TX)	Specify whether to require re-entry of a fax destination for confirmation purposes when the user specifies the destination by directly entering the fax number. By having the user enter it twice, you can prevent the destination from being incorrectly entered.
Confirm Address (Register)	Specify whether to require re-entry of a fax destination for confirmation purposes when adding the destination with the address book. By having the user enter it twice, you can prevent the destination from being incorrectly entered and registered.

Memory RX Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Function Setting" ►► "Memory RX Setting".

Reference

- The Memory RX function stores received documents in the Memory RX User Box, and prints them when required.

The screenshot displays the 'Memory RX Setting' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. At the top, there's a header with 'Administrator', 'Logout', and a help icon. Below this, a status bar shows 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)'. The left sidebar lists various settings under 'Fax Settings', with 'Memory RX Setting' highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Memory RX Setting' and includes:

- 'Fax Line 1' set to 'ON' via a dropdown menu.
- 'Fax Line 2' set to 'OFF' via a dropdown menu.
- A checkbox labeled 'Password is changed.' which is currently unchecked.
- A text input field for 'Memory RX User Box Password'.
- 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

Item	Description
Fax Line 1	Select whether to perform the forced memory reception via fax line 1. This item is available when two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "RX Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings".
Fax Line 2	Select whether to perform the forced memory reception via fax line 2. This item is available when two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "RX Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings".
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.
Memory RX User Box Password	Enter the password for the Memory RX User Box (up to eight characters).

Closed network RX

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Function Setting" ►► "Closed Network RX".

Reference

- The Closed area Rx function accepts only transmissions from recipient machines with a matching password. It is available only when the remote machine is one of our models and supports the closed network reception (with password) function.

The screenshot shows the 'Closed Network RX' configuration page. The sidebar on the left lists various settings, with 'Function Setting' expanded and 'Closed Network RX' selected. The main panel displays the 'Closed Network RX' title, a checkbox for 'Password is changed.', and a text input field for 'Closed Network RX Password'. The 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are located at the bottom right of the main panel.

Item	Description
Password is changed.	Select this check box to change the password.
Closed Network RX Password	Enter the password for the closed network reception (four digits).

Forward TX Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Function Setting" ►► "Forward TX Setting".

Reference

- The Forward TX function transfers the received document to a pre-specified destination.
- This function cannot be configured together with "PC-Fax RX Setting", "TSI User Box Setting", or "Memory RX Setting".
- The Forward TX Setting can be configured for each line when receiving faxes for each line (two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "RX Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings").

The screenshot displays the 'Forward TX Setting' configuration page. On the left, a sidebar lists various settings categories. The 'Function Setting' category is expanded, and 'Forward TX Setting' is highlighted. The main content area shows the following settings:

- Fax Forwarding Settings:** A checkbox that is checked.
- Output Method:** A dropdown menu set to 'Forward & Print'.
- Forward Dest.:** Three radio button options:
 - Select from Address Book:** Selected. Includes a 'Search from List' button and a 'Registered Address Number' field with a 'Check Destination' button.
 - Select from Group:** Includes a 'Search from List' button and a 'Registered Address Number' field with a 'Check Destination' button.
 - Direct Input:** Includes a 'Forwarding Destination' text field with a note: '(Numeric characters, #, *, -, T, P)'.
- Line Setting:** A dropdown menu set to 'No Selection'.

'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are located at the bottom right of the form.

Item	Description
Forward TX Setting	Specify whether to use the forward transmission function.
Output Method	Select an output function. Select "Forward & Print" to forward received faxes as well as printing them on this machine. Select "Forward & Print (If TX Fails)" to print received faxes on this machine if they cannot be forwarded.
Forward Destination	Specify the forward destination of received faxes. Specify the destination using one of the three methods: "Select from Address Book", "Select from Group", and "Direct Input".
Line Setting	If two fax kit FK-502 are installed, specify the line used to forward received faxes.

Incomplete TX Hold

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Function Setting" ►► "Incomplete TX Hold".

Reference

- The Fax Retransmit function temporarily saves documents, which were not sent within the specified number of times for attempts to send, in the fax retransmit User Box. You can use this function to open the fax retransmit User Box later to manually redial.

The screenshot shows the administrator interface of the PageScope Web Connection. At the top, there is a header bar with 'Administrator' on the left, 'Logout' and a help icon on the right, and 'Ready to Scan' and 'In Menu (Admin Mode)' in the center. Below the header, there is a navigation menu on the left with 'Fax Settings' selected. Under 'Fax Settings', 'Function Setting' is expanded, and 'Incomplete TX Hold' is selected. The main content area shows the 'Incomplete TX Hold' settings. There is a checkbox labeled 'Incomplete TX Hold' which is checked. Below it, there is a label 'File Storage Duration' followed by a dropdown menu showing '12' and the unit 'Hour'. At the bottom right of the settings area, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description
Incomplete TX Hold	Specify whether to temporarily retain the fax that even the auto-redialing function has failed to send for such reasons as a communications error or the recipient machine being busy, in the Fax Retransmit User Box.
File Storage Duration	Specify a duration to retain the file.

PC-FAX RX Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Function Setting" ►► "PC-FAX RX Setting".

Reference

- The PC-Fax RX function saves a document received as a fax in a User Box of this machine. You can print and send saved data. Data is saved in the Memory RX User Box or a specified User Box.
- This function cannot be configured together with "TSI User Box Setting", "Forward TX Setting", or "Memory RX Setting".
- The Forward TX Setting can be configured for each line when receiving faxes for each line (two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "RX Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings").

The screenshot shows the 'PC-Fax RX Setting(Fax Line 1)' configuration page. The left sidebar contains a tree view with the following items: Fax Settings, Header/Footer Position, Line Parameter Setting, TX/RX Settings, Function Setting (expanded), Function ON/OFF Setting, Memory RX Setting, Closed Network RX, Forward TX Setting, Incomplete TX Hold, PC-Fax RX Setting (selected), TSI User Box Settings, TSI User Box Registration, PBX Connection Setting, Report Settings, Multi Line Settings, Network Fax Setting, and Header Information. The main content area is titled 'PC-Fax RX Setting(Fax Line 1)' and contains the following settings:

- PC-Fax RX Setting: Allow (dropdown)
- Receiving User Box Destination: Memory RX User Box (dropdown)
- Print: ON (dropdown)
- Password Check: ☒ (checkbox)
- Communication Password: (text field, with a note: (one-byte numeric, #, *))

At the bottom right of the main content area are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons. The top of the interface shows 'Administrator' login, 'Logout', and 'Ready to Scan' status.

Item	Description
PC-Fax RX Setting	Specify whether to permit receiving PC-FAX.
Receiving User Box Destination	Select a receiving User Box destination of PC-FAX.
Print	Specify whether to print received faxes after completing the reception.
Password Check	Select this check box to check the password.
Communication Password	Enter the communication password. (up to eight characters)

TSI User Box Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Function Setting" ►► "TSI User Box Setting".

Reference

- The TSI distribution function automatically distributes the document received with the sender fax number (TSI) to the forwarding destination specified for each sender.
- This function cannot be configured together with "PC-Fax RX Setting", "Forward TX Setting", or "Memory RX Setting".
- The TSI User Box Setting can be configured for each line when receiving faxes for each line (two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "RX Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings").

The screenshot shows the 'TSI User Box Settings(Fax Line 1)' configuration page. The left sidebar lists various settings, with 'Function Setting' expanded. The main area shows the 'TSI User Box Setting' checkbox is checked. Below it, the 'Action when TSI User Box is not set' dropdown is set to 'Automatically Print', and the 'Print' dropdown is set to 'OFF'. 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

Item	Description
TSI User Box Setting	Select whether to enable the TSI distribution. This function distributes received faxes to each phone number based on the TSI (telephone numbers information) of the fax transmitter.
Action when TSI User Box is not set.	Select an action to be taken when receiving unregistered TSI information. If you select "Automatically Print", the received document is printed. If you select "Memory RX User Box", the received document is saved in the Memory RX User Box. If you select "Specified User Box" and specify a User Box in "Select from User Box No.", the received document is saved in the specified user box. For the destination User Box, a Public, Personal, or Group User Box can be specified.
Print	Specify whether to print received faxes after completing the reception.

TSI User Box Registration

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ➤ "Function Setting" ➤ "TSI User Box Registration" ➤ [Registration].

Reference

- The forwarding destinations can be registered for each line when receiving faxes for each line (two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "RX Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings").

Administrator

Logout

?

Ready to Scan

In Menu (Admin Mode)

Fax Settings

Display

To Main Menu

Header/Footer Position

Line Parameter Setting

TX/RX Settings

Function Setting

Function ON/OFF Setting

Memory RX Setting

Closed Network RX

Forward TX Setting

Incomplete TX Hold

PC-Fax RX Setting

TSI User Box Settings

TSI User Box Registration

PBX Connection Setting

Report Settings

Multi Line Settings

Network Fax Setting

Header Information

TSI User Box Registration(Fax Line 1)

No.1

Sender (TSI)

(Numeric characters, #, *, -, T, P)

Forwarding Destination

Select from Address Book

Search from List

Registered Address NumberCheck Destination

Select from Group

Search from List

Registered Address NumberCheck Destination

Select from User Box No.

Search from List

Registered Box Number

OK

Cancel

Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number.
Sender (TSI)	Enter the fax ID of the sender (TSI: telephone numbers information).
Forwarding Destination	Specify forwarding destinations for each TSI. Specify the destination using one of the three methods: "Select from Address Book", "Select from Group", and "Select from User Box No".

2.63.5 Configuring PBX connection settings

Configure settings for PBX connection.

PBX Connection Setting

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "PBX Connection Setting".

Item	Description
PBX Connection Setting	Select this check box when you connect this machine to a PBX line.
Outside Line	Enter the outside line number. When a fax number registered in the address book or a program destination is specified as an outside line, the outside line number specified in this setting is dialed prior to the fax number.

2.63.6 Configuring settings to print fax reports

Configure settings to print fax reports.

Report Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ► "Report Settings".

The screenshot shows the 'Report Settings' page in the PageScope Web Connection administrator interface. The page has a sidebar on the left with navigation options: 'Header/Footer Position', 'Line Parameter Setting', 'TX/RX Settings', 'Function Setting', 'PBX Connection Setting', 'Report Settings' (selected), 'Multi Line Settings', 'Network Fax Setting', and 'Header Information'. The main area displays various report settings with dropdown menus and checkboxes. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description
Activity Report	Select the output method of activity reports.
Output Time Settings	When you set the output timing of activity reports to "Daily" or "100/Daily", specify the report output time.
TX Result Report	Select the output conditions for transmission result reports.
Sequential TX Report	Specify whether to print sequential transmission reports.
Timer Reservation TX Report	Specify whether to print timer reservation transmission reports.
Confidential RX Report	Specify whether to print confidential reception reports.
Bulletin TX Report	Specify whether to print Bulletin transmission reports.
Relay TX Result Report	Specify whether to print relay transmission result reports.
Relay Request Report	Specify whether to print relay request reception reports.
PC-Fax TX Error Report	Specify whether to print PC-FAX transmission error reports.
Broadcast Result Report	Select the output method of broadcast result reports.
TX Result Report Check	Specify whether to view the transmission result report check pages.
Remarks Print Setting	Configure settings to print remarks for activity reports. If you select "Normal Print", the line status or sending setting will be printed. If User Authentication or Account Track is not enabled, the mode is set to "Normal Print". If you select "Print User Name", the user name will be printed. This item is available when User Authentication is enabled. If you select "Print Account Name", the account name will be printed. This item is available when Account Track is enabled.

Item	Description
Activity Report	Select the output method of activity reports.
Output Time Settings	When you set the output timing of activity reports to "Daily" or "100/Daily", specify the report output time.
TX Result Report	Select the output conditions for transmission result reports.
Sequential TX Report	Specify whether to print sequential transmission reports.
Timer Reservation TX Report	Specify whether to print timer reservation transmission reports.
Confidential RX Report	Specify whether to print confidential reception reports.
Bulletin TX Report	Specify whether to print Bulletin transmission reports.
Relay TX Result Report	Specify whether to print relay transmission result reports.
Relay Request Report	Specify whether to print relay request reception reports.
PC-Fax TX Error Report	Specify whether to print PC-FAX transmission error reports.
Broadcast Result Report	Select the output method of broadcast result reports.
TX Result Report Check	Specify whether to view the transmission result report check pages.
Remarks Print Setting	Configure settings to print remarks for activity reports. If you select "Normal Print", the line status or sending setting will be printed. If User Authentication or Account Track is not enabled, the mode is set to "Normal Print". If you select "Print User Name", the user name will be printed. This item is available when User Authentication is enabled. If you select "Print Account Name", the account name will be printed. This item is available when Account Track is enabled.

Item	Description
Network Fax RX Error Report	Specify whether to print reception error reports when using the network fax function.
MDN Message	Specify whether to print a report when receiving the response to a MDN request.
DSN Message	Specify whether to print a report when receiving the response to a DSN request.
Print E-mail Message Body	Specify whether to print the message body of an E-mail message received successfully.

2.63.7 Using extension lines

If two fax kit FK-502 are installed, configure settings for the second line.

Multi Line Settings

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Multi Line Settings".

Item	Description
Line Parameter Setting	Configure line parameters for the extension line.
Dialing Method	Select a dialing method for the extension line.
Number of RX Call Rings	Specify the number of quasi-ring back tone count between fax arrival and the start of reception.
Line Monitor Sound	Specify whether to hear the line sound from the speaker during communication.
Function Setting	Configure settings for the extension line function.
PC-FAX TX Setting	Select the line used for PC-FAX transmission.
Multi Line Usage Settings	Configure the operation settings of Line 2 (an extension line).
Line 2 Setting	Specify the communication method for Line 2 (an extension line). You can specify TX Only, RX Only, or TX and RX only for an extension line.
Sender Fax No.	Enter the sender Fax number. Usually enter the fax number of the fax machine. The registered fax number is printed as the sender information on the fax received by the recipient.

2.63.8 Registering the Sender Name and Fax ID

You can register the sender name and fax ID of this machine.

Reference

- The sender name can be registered for each line when registering sender information for each line (two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "Sender Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings").

Header Information

In the administrator mode of PageScope Web Connection, select "Fax Settings" ►► "Header Information".

The screenshot shows the 'Header Information' configuration page in the PageScope Web Connection Administrator. On the left is a sidebar menu with various settings categories. The 'Header Information' category is selected. The main area contains a 'Sender Fax No.' input field and a 'TTI List' table. The table has columns for 'No.', 'Line 1', 'Line 2', 'Sender Name', 'Edit', and 'Delete'. There are 20 rows in the table, each corresponding to a line number from 1 to 20. The 'Edit' and 'Delete' buttons are present for each line.

Item	Description
Sender Fax No.	Enter the fax ID (up to 20 numerals, including #, *, +, and space). Normally enter the fax number of this machine. This setting is not required when sending an Internet fax.
For 1 lines: Default For 2 lines: Line 1 Default	Specify the default sender name to be used for line 1. If the sender name is not specified when sending a fax, the default specified in this item is printed on an original.
Line 2 Default	Specify the default sender name to be used for line 2. If the sender name is not specified when sending a fax, the default specified in this item is printed on an original. This item is available when two optional fax kit FK-502 are installed while "Sender Setting for each Line" is set to "ON" in "TX/RX Settings".
Sender Name	Displays the registered sender name.
[Edit]	Click this button to register or edit the sender name.
[Delete]	Click this button to delete the registered sender name.

Edit window

Item	Description
No.	Displays the registration number.
Sender Name	Enter the sender name (up to 30 characters).

Reference

- The header position can be specified as required. If necessary, you can configure settings to prevent sender information from being printed. For details, refer to page 2-278.

2.64 Using Data Management Utility

Manage copy protect data, stamp data, or font/macro data from a computer on the network using Data Management Utility of PageScope Web Connection.

2.64.1 Starting up Data Management Utility

Start up Data Management Utility from the PageScope Web Connection login page.

Reference

- To use Data Management Utility, install Flash Player.
- To manage font or macro data, install Flash Player Ver.9.0 or later using Internet Explorer.
- You cannot start up multiple Data Management Utilities at the same time.

- 1 In the login page, select the desired Data Management Utility.

- 2 Enter the administrator password of this machine.

Data Management Utility starts up.



Reference

For details on "Manage Copy Protect Data", refer to page 2-296.

For details on "Manage Stamp Data", refer to page 2-298.

For details on "Manage Font/Macro", refer to page 2-300.

2.64.2 Managing copy protect data

Manage copy protect data to be added to this machine.

Copy Protect proves that a document is a copied one by highlighting a character string on the document when a printed or copied document has been recopied. This function is available when preventing highly confidential documents from being copied secondarily.

Reference

- You cannot edit or delete copy protect data that is registered in this machine at shipment.

Copy protect list

When "Manage Copy Protect Data" starts up, the registered copy protect data is listed.

(You can register up to eight copy protect data items.)

The screenshot shows a software interface titled 'System' with a help icon. The main area is labeled 'Copy Protect List'. It displays eight entries, each consisting of a number (No.1 through No.8), a gray box with the text 'Not Registered', and two buttons labeled 'Edit' and 'Delete'. At the bottom of the interface, there are two buttons: 'Export to the device' and 'Undo'.

Item	Description
[System]	Displays the system page. In the system page, you can perform screen operations such as Auto Protect Setting, Export, Import, or Exit. For details, refer to page 2-297.
?	Displays the help that is available when managing copy protect data.
[Edit]	Displays the copy protect editing screen. In this page, you can edit the registered copy protect data or register new one. For details, refer to page 2-297.
[Delete]	Deletes the registered copy protect data. Copy protect data is not displayed in the copy protect list page; however, data is not actually deleted until it is written to this machine by clicking [Export to the device]. To cancel data deletion, click [Undo] unless [Export to the device] is selected.
[Export to the device]	Writes copy protect data to this machine. After newly registering, editing, or deleting copy protect data, click [Export to the device]. If you do not click [Export to the device], the edited contents are not updated.
[Undo]	Discards the edited contents and return to the previous state.

System

In the System page, you can perform screen operations such as Auto Protect Setting, Export, Import, or Exit.

Item	Description
Auto Protect Setting	Displays the window that prohibits operations when the specified time has elapsed after the user paused operations. This prevents a third person from handling the system without the user's permission if the user leaves the seat while displaying the setting page. To use the Auto Protect function, specify the timeout period ranging from a time the user paused operations to a time the Auto Protect page appears.
Export	Backs up copy protect data defined in this machine in a file. To export data, click [OK] in the Confirmation screen.
Import	Reads copy protect data backed up in a file, and writes its contents to this machine. To import data, specify the file to be imported, and click [OK]. If there is copy protect data currently edited, it will be overwritten by the imported copy protect data.
Exit	Exits the application. The Confirmation screen appears. Click [OK].

Edit

Edit copy protect data.

You can specify the text, font, character size and style, and rotation angle required to use Copy Protect. You can edit data while checking the result in the preview.

Item	Description
Copy Protect Name	Enter a copy protect name (up to 16 characters).
Copy Protect Text	Enter the text to be displayed as copy protect data (up to 32 characters).
Font Name	Specify the desired font for copy protect text.
Font Size	Specify the desired font size for copy protect text.
Bold	Select this check box to specify the bold type for copy protect text.
Italic	Select this check box to specify the Italic type for copy protect text.
Rotation Angle	Specify the rotation angle for a copy protect text. You can enter a slider or numeric value to adjust the text rotation angle in 1-degree steps.

2.64.3 Managing stamp Data

Manage stamp data to be added to this machine.

You can register or delete a stamp image in this machine.

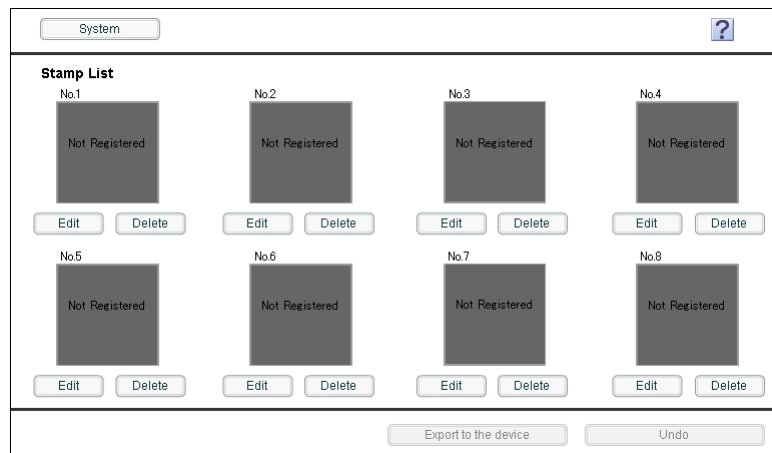
Reference

- You cannot edit or delete stamp data that is registered in this machine at shipment.

Stamp list

When "Manage Stamp Data" starts up, the registered stamp data is listed.

(You can register up to eight stamp data items.)



Item	Description
[System]	Displays the system page. In the system page, you can perform screen operations such as Auto Protect Setting, Export, Import, or Exit. For details, refer to page 2-299.
	Displays the help to use when managing stamp data.
[Edit]	Displays the stamp editing screen. In this page, you can edit the registered stamp data or register new one. For details, refer to page 2-299.
[Delete]	Deletes the registered stamp data. Stamp data is not displayed in the stamp list page; however, data is not actually deleted until it is written to this machine by clicking [Export to the device]. To cancel data deletion, click [Undo] unless [Export to the device] is selected.
[Export to the device]	Writes stamp data to this machine. After newly registering, editing, or deleting stamp data, click [Export to the device]. If you do not click [Export to the device], the edited contents are not updated.
[Undo]	Discards the edited contents and return to the previous state.

System

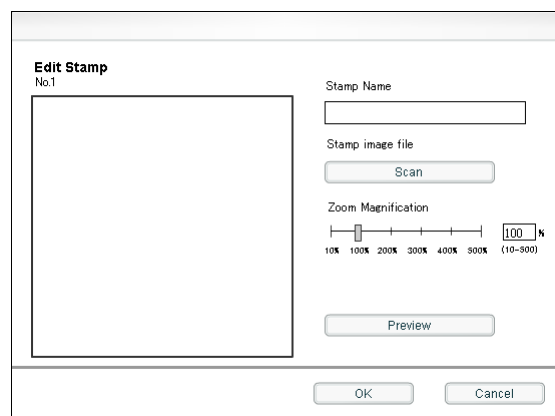
In the system page, you can perform screen operations such as Auto Protect Setting, Export, Import, or Exit.

Item	Description
Auto Protect Setting	Displays the window that prohibits operations when the specified time has elapsed after the user paused operations. This prevents a third person from handling the system without the user's permission if the user leaves the seat while displaying the setting page. To use the Auto Protect function, specify the timeout period ranging from a time the user paused operations to a time the Auto Protect page appears.
Export	Backs up stamp data defined in this machine in a file. To export data, click [OK] in the Confirmation screen.
Import	Reads stamp data backed up in a file, and writes its contents to this machine. To import data, specify the file to be imported, and click [OK]. If there is stamp data currently edited, it is overwritten by the imported copy protect data.
Exit	Exits the application. The Confirmation screen appears. Click [OK].

Edit

Edit stamp data.

You can specify an image and enlargement factor for stamp data. You can edit data while checking the result in the preview.



Item	Description
Stamp Name	Enter a stamp name (up to 16 characters).
Stamp image file	Click [Scan] to specify a bit map image to be used as a stamp, and click [OK].
Zoom Magnification	Specify the enlargement factor of a stamp image. You can enter a slider or numeric value to adjust the enlargement factor in steps of 1%.
Preview	Enlarges a stamp image. You can check the image details.

2.64.4 Managing font or macro

Manage font or macro data to be added to this machine.

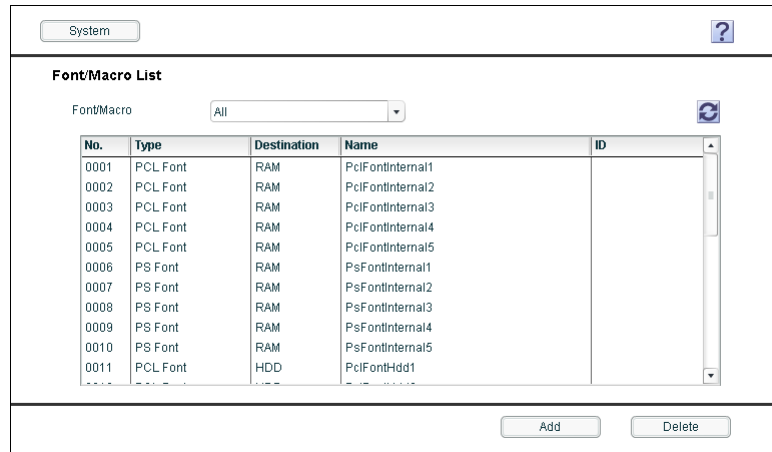
You can register or delete fonts or macros to or from this machine.

Reference

- To manage font or macro data, install Flash Player Ver.9.0 or later using Internet Explorer.

Font/Macro List

When "Manage Font/Macro" starts up, the registered font or macro data is listed.



Item	Description
[System]	Displays the system page. In the system page, you can perform screen operations such as Auto Protect Setting or Exit. For details, refer to page 2-301.
	Displays the help that is available when managing font or macro data.
	Refreshes the font or macro list.
Font/Macro	Toggles the display between the font and macro lists.
No.	Displays a font or macro number.
Type	Displays a font or macro type.
Destination	Displays where the font or macro data is saved.
Name	Displays a font or macro name.
ID	Displays a font or macro ID number for PCL font or PCL macro.
[Add]	Adds new font or macro data. For details, refer to page 2-301.
[Delete]	Deletes the registered font or macro data.

System

In the system page, you can perform screen operations such as Auto Protect Setting or Exit.

Item	Description
Auto Protect Setting	Displays the window that prohibits operations when the specified time has elapsed after the user paused operations. This prevents a third person from handling the system without the user's permission if the user leaves the seat while displaying the setting page. To use the Auto Protect function, specify the timeout period ranging from a time the user paused operations to a time the Auto Protect page appears.
Exit	Exits the application. The Confirmation screen appears. Click [OK].

Add

Add fonts or macros to this machine.

Font/Macro settings

Set the font/macro to add. Select type, destination and the file.

For PCL font/macro, ID must be specified.

Type: Add PCL Font

Destination: HDD

ID: 0-32767
Please set the top level ID. (If not entered, it will be 1001.)

Add File: Reference

OK Cancel

Item	Description
Type	Select a type of font or macro to be added.
Destination	Select where to save font or macro data. If data is saved in memory (RAM), it is deleted when this machine has been turned off. To continuously use font or macro data, save it in the HDD.
ID	Enter a font or macro ID number for PCL font or PCL macro. If it is not entered, the available ID is assigned automatically.
Add File	Click [Browse] to specify a font or macro file to be added to this machine.



3

Appendix

3 Appendix

3.1 Product specifications (Network functions)

Item	Specification
Type	Embedded
Frame type	IEEE802.2/802.3/Ethernet II/IEEE802.3SNAP
Cable type	10Base-T/100Base-TX/1000Base-T
Connector	RJ-45
Bluetooth performance ^{*1}	Communication protocol: Bluetooth 2.0 + EDR Supported profile: OPP/BPP/SPP
Main supported protocols	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), BOOTP, ARP, ICMP, DHCP, DHCPv6, AutoIP, SLP, SNMP, FTP, LPR/LPD, RAW Socket, SMB over TCP/IP, IPP, HTTP, POP, SMTP, LDAP, NTP, SSL, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, Bonjour, NetBEUI, WebDAV, DPWS, S/MIME, IPsec, DNS, DynamicDNS, LLMNR, LLTD, SSDP, and SOAP.
Supported LDAP Servers	OpenLDAP 2.1x, Active Directory, Exchange 5.5/2000/2003, Sun Java Directory Server (Netscape/iPlanet Directory Server), Novell NetWare 5.x/6.x NDS, Novell eDirectory 8.6/8.7, and Lotus Domino Server (5.x/6.x) ^{*2} .
Supported LDAP protocol	LDAP Protocol Version 3 (Version 2 is not supported)
Supported SSL versions	SSL2, SSL3, and TLS1.0 (An x.509 certificate must be installed on the server.)
Multiprotocol	Auto detection
Operating environments of PageScope Web Connection	Compatible Web browsers: <For Windows NT4.0/2000/XP/Server 2003/Vista> • Microsoft Internet Explorer Ver. 6/7/8 (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) • Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) • Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) <For Macintosh MacOS 9.x/MacOS X> • Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) • Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) <For Linux> • Netscape Navigator 7.02 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) • Mozilla Firefox 1.0 or later (JavaScript and Cookies enabled) Adobe® Flash® Player: • Plug-in Ver.7.0 or later required to select Flash as the display format. • Plug-in Ver.9.0 or later required to use the Data Management Utility (font/macro data management).
Setting	Saved to non-volatile memory

^{*1} Install the optional local Interface kit EK-605 in this machine.

^{*2} When using the Lotus Domino Server, and setting the search condition to "OR", the function will not work correctly.

3.2 Displaying the network settings screen (Control panel)

This section describes procedures for displaying the network settings menu from the control panel.

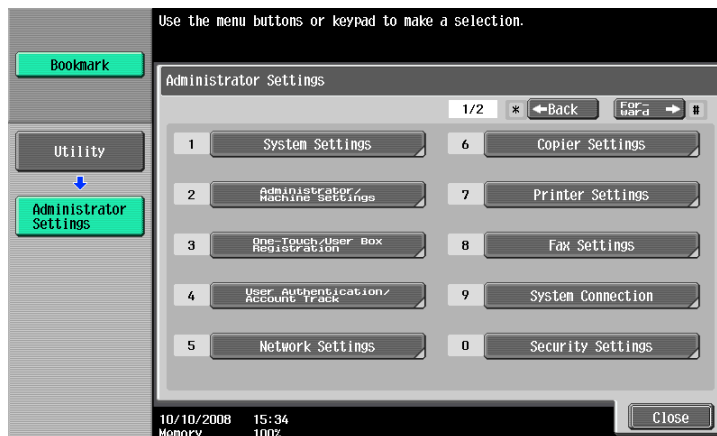
- 1 Press [Utility/Counter].
- 2 Press [3 Administrator Settings].
 - An item can also be selected by pressing the key on the keypad for the correspondent number. For [3 Administrator Settings], press the [3] key on the keypad.



- 3 Enter the password, and then press [OK].



The Administrator Settings screen appears.



- 4 Press [5 Network Settings] in the Administrator Settings screen.
The Network Settings screen appears.



NOTICE

To enable network settings you have changed, turn the main power of this machine off and on again.

To turn the main power switch off and on, first turn the main power off, and then on after 10 seconds or more has elapsed. Not doing so may result in an operation failure.

3.3 Network settings menu list (Control panel)

To configure network settings in the control panel of the machine, refer to this menu list.

This section describes the keys displayed when you press [5 Network Settings].

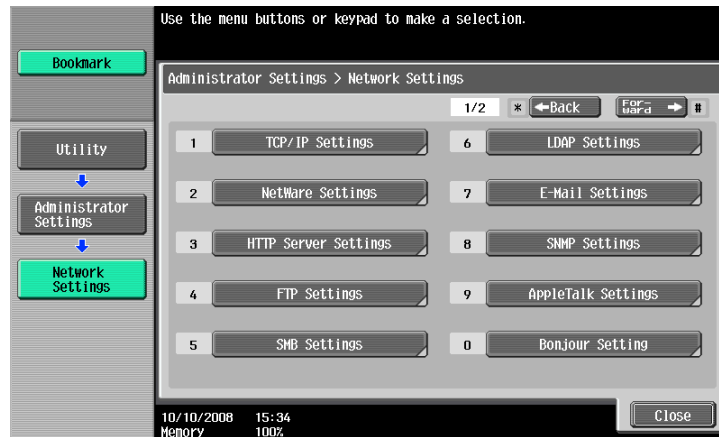


Reference

For details on displaying the Network Settings screen, refer to page 3-4.

3.3.1 Network Settings screen (1/2)

You can configure the following items in the Network Settings (1/2) screen.



[1] TCP/IP Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
IPv4 Settings	Manual Input	IP Address		
		Subnet Mask		
		Default Gateway		
	Auto Input	DHCP Settings	ON/OFF	
		BOOTP Settings	ON/OFF	
		ARP/PING Settings	ON/OFF	
		AUTO IP Settings	ON/OFF	
IPv6 Settings	Auto IPv6 Settings	ON		
		OFF	Global Address	Prefix Length
			Gateway Address	
			Link-Local Address	
	DHCPv6 Setting	ON/OFF		
DNS Host	DNS Host Name			
	Dynamic DNS Settings	Enable/Disable		
DNS Domain	Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Enable/Disable		
	Search Domain Name Auto Retrieval	Enable/Disable		
	Default DNS Domain Name			
	DNS Search Domain Name 1 to 3			

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	
DNS Server Settings (IPv4)	DNS Server Auto Obtain	Enable/Disable			
	Priority DNS Server				
	Secondary DNS Server 1 and 2				
DNS Server Settings (IPv6)	DNS Server Auto Obtain	Enable/Disable			
	Priority DNS Server				
	Secondary DNS Server 1 and 2				
IPsec Settings	IKE Settings	Group 1 to 4			
		Encryption Algorithm	DES_CBC		
			3DES_CBC		
			OFF		
		Authentication Algorithm	MD5		
			SHA-1		
			OFF		
		Key Validity Period			
		Diffie-Hellman Group	Group 1		
			Group 2		
	IPsec SA Settings	Group 1 to 8	Security Protocol	AH	
				ESP	
				ESP_AH	
				OFF	
			ESP Encryption Algorithm	DES_CBC	
				3DES_CBC	
				AES_CBC	
				AES_CTR	
				NULL	
				OFF	
			ESP Authentication Algorithm	MD5	
				SHA-1	
				OFF	
			AH Authentication Algorithm	MD5	
				SHA-1	
				OFF	
			Lifetime After Establishing SA		
	Peer	Group 1 to 10	Encapsulation Mode	Tunnel Mode	
				Transport Mode	
				OFF	
			IP Address		
			Pre-Shared Key Text		
Perfect Forward Secrecy			ON/OFF		
IP Filtering (Permit Access)	Enable	Set 1 to 5			
	Disable				

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
IP Filtering (Deny Access)	Enable	Set 1 to 5		
	Disable			
RAW Port Number	Port 1 to 6	Job Setting		
		Do Not Use		
LLMNR Setting	Enable/No Limit			

[2] NetWare Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
IPX Settings	ON	Ethernet Frame Type	Auto Detect	
			802.2	
			802.3	
			Ethernet II	
			802.3SNAP	
	OFF			
NetWare Print Settings	ON	PServer	Print Server Name	
			Print Server Password	
			Polling Interval	
			NDS/Bindery Setting	NDS
				NDS & Bindery
			File Server Name	
			NDS Context Name	
		NDS Tree Name		
	Nprinter/Rprinter	Print Server Name		
		Printer Number		
OFF				
Status				
User Authentication Setting (NDS)	ON/OFF			

[3] HTTP Server Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
PSWC Settings	ON/OFF			
IPP Settings	ON/OFF			
Accept IPP Jobs	ON/OFF			
Support Information	Print Job			
	Valid Job			
	Cancel Job			
	Open Job Attributes			
	Open Job			
	Open Printer Attributes			

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Printer Information	Printer Name			
	Printer Location			
	Printer Information			
	Printer URI			
IPP Authentication Settings	ON/OFF			
Authentication Method	requesting-user-name			
	basic			
	digest			
User Name				
Password				
realm				

[4] FTP Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
FTP TX Settings	ON	Proxy Server Ad- dress	Input Host Name	
			IPv4 Address Input	
			IPv6 Address Input	
		Proxy Server Port Number		
		Port No.		
		Connection Timeout		
	OFF			
FTP Server Set- tings	ON/OFF			

[5] SMB Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Client Settings	ON	NTLM Settings	v1	
			v2	
			v1/v2	
		User Authentica- tion (NTLM)	ON/OFF	
		DFS Setting	Enable/Invalid	
	OFF			
Print Settings	ON	NetBIOS Name		
		Print Service Name		
		Workgroup		
	OFF			

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
WINS Settings	ON	Automatic Retrieval Settings	Enable/Disable	
		WINS Server Address		
		Node Type Setting	B Node	
			P Node	
			M Node	
			H Node	
	OFF			
Direct Hosting Setting	ON/OFF			

[6] LDAP Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	
Enabling LDAP	ON/OFF				
Setting Up LDAP	LDAP Server Name				
	Max. Search Results				
	Timeout				
	Initial Setting for Search Details	Name			
		E-mail			
		Fax Number			
		Last Name			
		First Name			
		City			
		Company Name			
		Department			
	Change Search Attribute	Name			
		Nickname			
	Server Address				
	Search Base				
	SSL Setting	ON/OFF			
	Port Number				
	Port Number (SSL)				
	Certificate Verification Level Settings	Expiration Date		Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
		Key Usage		Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
		Chain		Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
		Expiration Date Confirmation		Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
		CN		Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
	Authentication Type	Anonymous			
		Simple			
		Digest-MD5			
		GSS-SPNEGO			
		NTLM v1			
		NTLM v2			

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Setting Up LDAP	Select Server Authentication Method	Use Settings		
		Use User Authentication		
		Dynamic Authentication		
	Referral Setting	ON/OFF		
	Login Name			
	Password			
	Domain Name			
	Reset All Settings			
	Check Connection			

Default LDAP Server Setting

[7] E-mail Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	
E-Mail TX (SMTP)	Scan to E-Mail	ON/OFF			
	Status Notifica- tion	ON/OFF			
	Total Counter No- tification	ON/OFF			
	SMTP Server Ad- dress	Input Host Name			
		IPv4 Address Input			
		IPv6 Address Input			
	Binary Division	ON/OFF			
	Divided Mail Size				
	Connection Timeout				
	Server Capacity				
	SSL Setting	SMTP over SSL			
		Start TLS			
		OFF			
	Port No.				
	Port Number (SSL)				
	Certificate Verifi- cation Level Set- tings	Expiration Date	Confirm/Do Not Confirm		
		Key Usage	Confirm/Do Not Confirm		
		Chain	Confirm/Do Not Confirm		
		Expiration Date Confirmation	Confirm/Do Not Confirm		
		CN	Confirm/Do Not Confirm		
	Detail Settings	SMTP Authenti- cation	ON	User ID	
				Password	
				Domain Name	
				Authentication Setting	
			OFF		
		POP before SMTP Authentication	ON/OFF		
			POP Before SMTP Time		

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	
E-Mail RX (POP)	ON	POP Server Address	Input Host Name		
			IPv4 Address Input		
			IPv6 Address Input		
		Connection Timeout			
		SSL Setting	ON/OFF		
		Port No.			
		Port Number (SSL)			
		Certificate Verification Level Settings	Expiration Date	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Key Usage	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Chain	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Expiration Date Confirmation	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			CN	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
		Login Name			
		Password			
		APOP Authentication	ON/OFF		
		Check for New Messages	Yes/No		
		Polling Interval			
	OFF				
S/MIME Communication Settings	ON	Digital Signature	Do not add signature		
			Always add signature		
			Select when sending		
		E-Mail Text Encryption Method	RC2-40		
			RC2-64		
			RC2-128		
			DES		
			3DES		
			AES-128		
			AES-192		
			AES-256		
		Print S/MIME Information	Yes/No		
		Automatically Obtain Certificates	Yes/No		
		Certificate Verification Level Settings	Expiration Date	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Key Usage	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Chain	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Expiration Date Confirmation	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
	OFF				

[8] SNMP Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
SNMP v1/v2c (IP)	ON/OFF			
SNMP v3 (IP)	ON/OFF			
SNMP v1 (IPX)	ON/OFF			
UDP Port Number				
SNMP v1/v2c Settings	Read Community Name Settings			
	Write Setting	Enable/Invalid		
	Write Community Name Settings			
SNMP v3 Settings	Context Name Settings			
	Discovery User Permissions	ON/OFF		
	Discovery User Name Settings			
	Read User Name Settings			
	Security Level	OFF		
		auth-password		
		auth-password/priv-password		
	Password Setting (Read)	Read auth		
		Read priv		
		Write auth		
		Write priv		
	Write User Name Settings			
	Security Level	OFF		
		auth-password		
		auth-password/priv-password		
	Password Setting (Write)	Read auth		
		Read priv		
		Write auth		
		Write priv		
	Encryption Algorithm	DES		
		AES-128		
	Authentication Algorithm	MD5		
		SHA-1		
TRAP Setting	Allow/Restrict			
TRAP Setting When Authentication Failed	Enable/Invalid			

[9] AppleTalk Settings

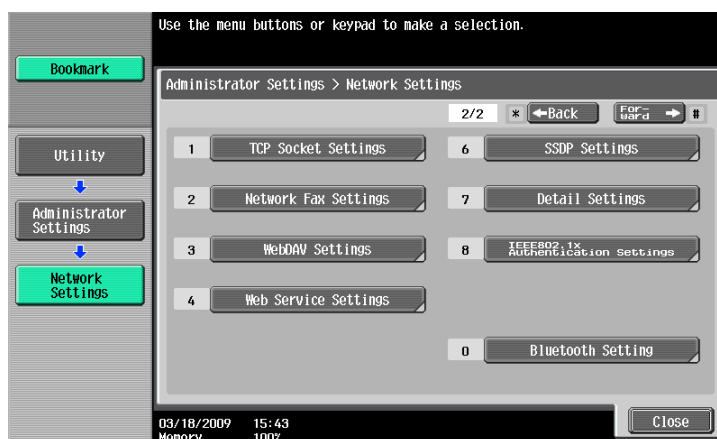
First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
AppleTalk Set- tings	ON	Printer Name		
		Zone Name		
		Current Zone		
	OFF			

[0] Bonjour Setting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Bonjour Setting	ON	Bonjour Name		
	OFF			

3.3.2 Network Settings screen (2/2)

You can configure the following items in the Network Settings (2/2) screen.



[1] TCP Socket Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
TCP Socket	ON	Use SSL/TLS	ON/OFF	
		Port Number		
		Port Number (SSL)		
	OFF			
TCP Socket/ (AS-CII Mode)	ON	Port Number(ASCII Mode)		
	OFF			

[2] Network Fax Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Network Fax Function Settings	IP Address Fax Function	ON/OFF		
	Internet Fax Function	ON/OFF		
SMTP TX Settings	Port No.			
	Connection Timeout			
SMTP RX Settings	ON	Port No.		
		Connection Timeout		
	OFF			

[3] WebDAV Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level	
WebDAV Client Settings	ON	Proxy Server Address	Input Host Name		
			IPv4 Address Input		
			IPv6 Address Input		
		Proxy Server Port Number			
		User Name			
		Password			
		Chunk Transmission	Yes/No		
		Connection Timeout			
		Server Authentication Character Code	UTF-8		
			Windows Code Page		
		Certificate Verification Level Settings	Expiration Date	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Key Usage	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Chain	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			Expiration Date Confirmation	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
			CN	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
	OFF				
WebDAV Server Settings	ON	SSL Setting	Non-SSL Only		
			SSL Only		
			SSL/Non-SSL		
		Password Setting	Password Setting		
	Initial Password				
OFF					

[4] Web Service Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Web Service Common Settings	Friendly Name			
	Publication Service	Enable/Invalid		
	SSL Setting	ON/OFF		
Print Settings	ON	Printer Name		
		Printer Location		
		Printer Information		
	OFF			
Scanner Settings	ON	Scanner Name		
		Scanner Location		
		Scanner Information		
		Connection Timeout		
	OFF			

[6] SSDP Setting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
ON	Multi-Cast TTL Setting			
OFF				

[7] Detail Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Device Setting	MAC Address			
	LLTD Setting	Enable/Disable		
	Network Speed	Auto Setting		
		10Mbps Half Duplex		
		10Mbps Full Duplex		
		100Mbps Half Duplex		
		100Mbps Full Duplex		
		1Gbps Full Duplex		
Time Adjustment Setting	ON	Auto IPv6 Retrieval	On/Off	
		NTP Server Setting	Input Host Name	
			IPv4 Address Input	
			IPv6 Address Input	
		Port Number		
		Set Date		
		Auto Timer Adjustment	On/Off	
		Polling Interval		
	OFF			
Status Notification Setting	Register Notification Address	IP Address 1 to 5	Address	Input Host Name
				IPv4 Address Input
				IPv6 Address Input
			Port Number	
			Community Name	
			Notification Items	
		IPX Address	Address	Network Address
				Node Address
			Community Name	
			Notification Items	
		E-mail 1 to 10	Edit E-Mail Address	
			Notification Items	

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Total Counter No- tification Settings	Notification Schedule Setting	Schedule 1 and 2	Monthly	Monthly Frequen- cy
				Date Setting
			Weekly	Weekly Frequen- cy
				Day of the Week
		Daily	Interval of Day(s)	
	Notification Ad- dress Setting	Address 1 to 3	Edit E-Mail Address	
			Schedule Settings	Schedule 1 and 2
	Model Name			
Send Now				
PING Confirma- tion	PING TX Address	Input Host Name		
		IPv4 Address Input		
		IPv6 Address Input		
	Check Connection			
SLP Setting	Enable/Disable			
LPD Setting	Enable/Disable			
Prefix/Suffix Set- ting	ON/OFF Setting	ON/OFF		
	Prefix/Suffix Set- ting	Prefix		
		Suffix		
Error Code Dis- play Setting	ON/OFF			

[8] IEEE802.1X Authentication Settings

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
ON	Auth. Status			
	Reset Job Settings			
	Certificate Verifi- cation Level Set- tings	Expiration Date	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
		CN	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
		Chain	Confirm/Do Not Confirm	
OFF				

[0] Bluetooth Setting

First level	Second level	Third level	Fourth level	Fifth level
Enable/No Limit				

3.4 Network Error Codes

Function	Code	Description
IEEE802.1X	1	Connection has already been established.
	2	Parameter error.
	3	Unable to find the destination AP (SSID).
	4	The authentication mode does not match the AP (IEEE802.1X/WPA-EAP/WPA-PSK/NONE).
	5	Negotiation of the EAP method failed.
	6	The EAP authentication failed (user ID, password, certificate, etc.).
	7	Encryption negotiation with the AP failed (TKIP/CCMP).
	8	Failed to retrieve the client certificate.
	9	The client certificate has expired.
	10	Verification error of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	11	Although the WPA-PSK mode is selected, the Pre-Shared Key is not specified.
	12	An authentication error occurred in the WPA-PSK mode (unmatched Pre-Shared Key).
	13	The phase 2 method is not specified (PEAP).
	14	Negotiation of the phase 2 method failed (PEAP).
	15	Response from the server has timed out.
	16	Failed to allocate memory.
	17	Failed to start the supplicant task.
	18	The driver does not work.
	19	The server certificate has expired (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	20	CA verification error of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	21	Server ID verification error of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	22	The CA certificate is not specified (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	23	The server ID is not specified (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	24	The setting combination is correct.
	25	Connection and authentication are complete.
	26	The server certificate does not have the expected usage (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	27	The server certificate has expired (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	28	Access to the server to check for expiration of the server certificate is rejected (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	29	Access to the server to check for expiration of the server certificate has timed out (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	30	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size that has been retrieved to check for the expiration of the server certificate exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB) (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	31	Incorrect format of the server certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	32	Verification of the server certificate is invalid (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).

Function	Code	Description
IEEE802.1X	33	Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	34	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20) (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	35	Parameter error of the certificate (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
	36	Internal error of the certificate verification (EAP-TLS/EAP-TTLS/PEAP).
LDAP	1	An invalid operation occurred.
	4	The number of search results has exceeded the maximum number of items allowed.
	7	The LDAP server does not support SASL.
	10	Unable to trace the link although Referral is specified.
	32	Cannot find the search route.
	49	Failed to log in to the LDAP server.
	80	An unexpected error occurred.
	85	The connection has timed out.
	86	The supported SASL does not match the LDAP server side.
	88	Cancelled by the user.
	90	A memory shortage occurred.
	91	Unable to connect to the LDAP server.
	92	The supported LDAP version does not match the LDAP server side.
	128	Failed to resolve the LDAP server name using the DNS server.
	129	The certificate of the LDAP server has expired.
	130	Mutual authentication using GSS-SPNEGO (Kerberos v5) failed.
	131	The search result remains.
	2238	The CN field of the LDAP server certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	The LDAP server certificate does not have the expected usage for a server.
	2240	The LDAP server certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	The LDAP server certificate has expired.
	2242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	The format of the LDAP server certificate is invalid.
	2263	Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified.
	2264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	No certificate is sent from the server.

Function	Code	Description
LDAP	10000	Failed in authentication using a PKI card.
	12236	The ticket certificate has expired.
	12239	The ticket certificate does not have the expected usage for a server.
	12240	The ticket certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	12241	The ticket certificate has expired.
	12242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	12243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	12244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	12261	The format of the ticket certificate is invalid.
	12263	Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform validation because the HDD path has not been specified.
	12264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be validated (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	12266	Internal error of the certificate validation.
E-Mail/Internet Fax	1	Failed to log in to the E-mail server.
	2	An internal error occurred.
	3	Failed to connect to the server.
	4	The connection has timed out.
	5	Decoding failed due to invalid MIME format or S/MIME format.
	6	Available free memory is insufficient. Reception is not possible.
	7	Job ID is invalid.
	9	Failed to delete an E-mail message.
	10	The mail box is full.
	11	Failed to search the certificate.
	12	Failed to retrieve the device certificate or private key.
	13	An I/O error occurred. An HDD operation error occurred, or memory capacity of the computer may be insufficient.
	14	The S/MIME function is disabled.
	15	The HDD is disabled.
	16	The format of the certificate from the E-mail sender is invalid.
	2236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	The certificate has expired.
	2242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).

Function	Code	Description
E-Mail/Internet Fax	2261	The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	Failed to initialize the certificate verification.
	2264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	No certificate is sent from the server.
FTP transmission	22	Parameter error (e.g. the file name is NULL).
	27	Parameter is invalid.
	42	The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	The process is cancelled by a device reset.
	55	A buffer shortage occurred.
	56	The FTP connection is already open.
	57	Failed to connect to the server.
	60	The connection has timed out.
	61	The connection has been interrupted.
	62	The device is not connected to the network.
	70	The network connection is busy.
	450	The file has not been deleted.
	451	The file transfer failed (e.g. due to insufficient server capacity).
	452	The file transfer failed (e.g. due to insufficient server capacity).
	530	Incorrect login name or password.
	550	The specified folder does not exist.
	552	The file operation failed (e.g. due to insufficient server capacity).
SMB transmission	42	The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	The process is cancelled by a device reset.
	55	A buffer shortage occurred.
	57	Failed to connect to the server.
	62	The device is not connected to the network. The connection has been interrupted.
	70	The network connection is busy.
	4096	The host name is not specified. The specified host name does not exist on the network.
	4097	The user name is not specified. Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. The user does not have write permission to the folder. Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4098	The folder name is not specified. The specified folder does not exist.
	4099	The user name is not specified. Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. The user does not have write permission to the folder. Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4100	The specified file name is invalid.
	4101	The specified file already exists and is write-protected. The folder and the disk are write-protected.
	4102	The specified media to be written is not formatted. The file system of the specified media to be written is faulty.

Function	Code	Description
SMB transmission	4103	The server capacity is full.
	4104	The server capacity has become full while writing data.
	4105	Other errors to which an error code is not assigned.
	10000	Failed in authentication using a PKI card.
	12236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	12239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	12240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	12241	The certificate has expired.
	12242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	12243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	12244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	12263	Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform validation because the HDD path has not been specified.
	12264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be validated (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	12266	Internal error of the certificate validation.
	12267	The device certificate does not exist.
	12268	No certificate is sent from the server.
SMTP transmission	22	Invalid argument.
	27	The file size is too large.
	28	Insufficient memory of the device.
	32	The pipe is broken.
	42	The specified protocol is unavailable.
	51	Unable to reach the destination network.
	52	The connection aborted by the network.
	55	A buffer shortage occurred.
	57	The socket is not connected.
	58	The connection has been interrupted.
	60	The operation has timed out.
	61	The connection is rejected.
	62	The device is not connected to the network.
	67	The host is shut down.
	70	The operation is expected to be blocked.
	421	SMTP server error. Since the service is unavailable, the transfer channel is closed.
	432	SMTP server error. The password must be changed.
	450	SMTP server error. Unable to access to the mail box.
	451	SMTP server error. The requested action has been cancelled because an error occurred while processing a job.

Function	Code	Description
SMTP transmission	452	SMTP server error. Shortage of the system storage capacity.
	453	SMTP server error. No E-mail message.
	454	SMTP server error. Temporary authentication failure.
	458	SMTP server error. Unable to queue a message to the node.
	459	SMTP server error. The node is not permitted.
	499	SMTP server error. An unsupported SMTP error code of 400s is received from the SMTP server.
	500	SMTP server error. Syntax error (command unrecognized).
	501	SMTP server error. Syntax error in parameters or arguments.
	502	SMTP server error. The command is not implemented.
	503	SMTP server error. Bad sequence of commands.
	504	SMTP server error. The command parameter is not implemented.
	521	SMTP server error. The server does not receive E-mail messages.
	530	SMTP server error. The access is rejected.
	534	SMTP server error. The authentication mechanism is too weak.
	535	SMTP server error. Authentication error.
	538	SMTP server error. The requested authentication mechanism requires encryption.
	550	SMTP server error. The requested action is not executed.
	551	SMTP server error. The user is not connected locally.
	552	SMTP server error. The requested E-mail action is cancelled.
	553	SMTP server error. The requested action is not accepted.
	554	An SMTP server error, or an internal error when sending data. The transaction failed.
	555	SMTP server error. MAIL/RCPT parameter error.
	599	SMTP server error. An unsupported SMTP error code of 500s is received from the SMTP server.
	2236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.

Function	Code	Description
SMTP transmission	2241	The certificate has expired.
	2242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	Failed to initialize the certificate verification.
	2264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	No certificate is sent from the server.
	3000	An unexpected error occurred.
	3001	An unexpected error occurred within the library being used.
	3002	An invalid channel is specified.
	3003	SMTP server address is invalid.
	3004	Parameter error (MIMEBodyHeader).
	3005	Parameter error (DisplayName).
	3006	Parameter error (character set).
	3007	Parameter error (From address).
	3008	Parameter error (To address).
	3009	Parameter error (CC address).
	3010	Parameter error (BCC address).
	3011	Parameter error (pEmailSet is NULL).
	3012	Parameter error (destination certificate is NULL).
	3013	Parameter error (E-mail body).
	3014	The HDD is disabled.
	3015	The S/MIME function is disabled.
	3016	The device certificate cannot be used in S/MIME (e.g. self-signed certificate error, the private key type is not RSA).
	3018	An invalid encryption algorithm is specified.
	3019	An invalid signature algorithm is specified.
	3020	The E-mail address included in the destination certificate does not match the destination address (To/Cc/Bcc).
	3021	The E-mail address included in the certificate does not match the sender (From) address.
	3022	Format error of the certificate.
	3023	Parameter error (Disposition-Notification-To).
	3024	Message syntax error of the receiver side.
	3025	The SMTP server does not support the STARTTLS command.
	3026	PKI card access error.

Function	Code	Description
WebDAV transmission	22	The format of the URL of the target resource is invalid. Parameter error.
	27	Attempted to send data that exceeds the maximum transferrable size for transfer coding.
	42	The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	The process is cancelled by a device reset.
	55	A buffer shortage occurred.
	56	The connection has already been established.
	57	The connection to the WebDAV server failed (including connection time out).
	62	The device is not connected to the network.
	70	The network connection is busy.
	72	The connection has been interrupted with the condition that is insufficient to the specified size.
	1001	The server does not support WebDAV. Unable to upload data to the server.
	1002	The intermediate resource is not a collection (directory) (e.g. the specified folder does not exist).
	1003	The target resource is a collection (directory).
	1011	Although "https" is specified for the resource URL, it is unavailable because the SSL library is not included for the modularity.
	1012	Although "https" is specified for the resource URL, the connection is interrupted because the WebDAV server certificate has expired.
	1013	The CONNECT method is issued to the proxy server to establish an SSL connection via a proxy, but it is rejected.
	1017	A communication error occurred while sending a request.
	1018	A communication error occurred while receiving a response.
	1027	nContentLength exceeds the maximum transferable size.
	1030	Although use of a proxy has been specified, the proxy setting information is unavailable.
	1031	The connection to the proxy server failed (including connection time out).
	1098	Failed in chunk TX to SharePoint Server.
	1099	Other internal error occurred (e.g. memory shortage).
	2236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	The certificate has expired.
	2242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	Failed to initialize the certificate verification.

Function	Code	Description
WebDAV transmission	2264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	No certificate is sent from the server.
SMB browsing	32	The connection has been interrupted.
	42	The specified protocol is unavailable.
	57	Failed to connect to the server.
	62	The device is not connected to the network. The internal channel detected an error immediately before establishing communication.
	67	The host is shut down.
	4096	The group name/host name is not specified. The specified group name/host name does not exist on the network.
	4097	The user name is not specified. Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4098	Administrative shares do not exist. The shared resource name is not specified. The shared resource does not exist.
	4099	The user name is not specified. Unable to log in with the specified user name and password. Failed to log in due to an SMB protocol error.
	4102	The specified media to be written is not formatted. The file system of the specified media to be written is faulty.
	4105	Other errors to which an error code is not assigned.
	4352	The browser machine (master browser/backup browser) is not found.
	4353	Unable to log in to the browser machine (master browser/backup browser).
	4354	The sub folder does not exist.
	4355	The request is not accepted due to an invalid call sequence etc.
	4368	The number of groups is too large.
	4369	The number of host PCs is too large.
	4370	The number of shared resources is too large.
	10000	Failed in authentication using a PKI card.
	12236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	12239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	12240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	12241	The certificate has expired.
	12242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	12243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	12244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	12263	Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform validation because the HDD path has not been specified.

Function	Code	Description
SMB browsing	12264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be validated (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	12266	Internal error of the certificate validation.
	12267	The device certificate does not exist.
	12268	No certificate is sent from the server.
User authentication	1	Invalid parameter (e.g. the number of characters exceeds the limit, blank). The authentication function setting is disabled.
	2	Failed to resolve the name using the DNS server.
	3	Unable to find the authentication server.
	4	Failed to authenticate.
	5	Failed to allocate memory. An unexpected error occurred (which does not occur under normal usage conditions).
	6	An authentication request is received while an internal task of the user authentication client is being performed.
	7	The connection was interrupted while the user authentication was being performed.
	10000	Failed in authentication using a PKI card.
	12236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	12239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	12240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	12241	The certificate has expired.
	12242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	12243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	12244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	12261	The format of the certificate is invalid.
	12263	Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform validation because the HDD path has not been specified.
	12264	Unable to perform validation because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	12266	Internal error of the certificate validation.
WebDAV client	0	When receiving a response: Successfully received data, but the response body is missing. When sending a request: Successfully sent data, and is waiting for a response to be received.
	1	When receiving a response: Successfully received data, and continuously receives the response body. When sending a request: Successfully sent data, and is waiting for an instruction to send the request body.
	2	When receiving a response: Successfully received the response body, and its reception has been completed. When sending a request: The ID of the client that is not opened is specified.
	3	When receiving a response: The reception has timed out. When sending a request: An invalid request method has been specified.

Function	Code	Description
WebDAV client	4	When receiving a response: A reception error occurred. Or an invalid request URL is specified. When sending a request: An invalid request URL is specified.
	5	When receiving a response: Content-Length or the received data size exceeds the maximum transferable size. Or, the size of the message body is too large. When sending a request: The size of the message body is too large.
	6	When receiving a response: The process is cancelled by a reset. Or, the size of the message body exceeds the maximum transferable size. When sending a request: The size of the message body exceeds the maximum transferable size.
	7	When receiving a response: An internal error occurred. Or, the process is cancelled by an internal reset. When sending a request: The process is cancelled by an internal reset.
	8	Failed to connect to the WebDAV server.
	9	An error occurred while sending data to the WebDAV server.
	10	A timeout occurred while sending data to the WebDAV server.
	11	Failed to connect to the proxy server.
	12	The proxy server rejected the connection request.
	13	Although use of a proxy has been specified, the proxy setting information is unavailable.
	14	Failed to authenticate the proxy server.
	15	Other error was returned from the proxy server.
	16	An internal error occurred.
	17	The process is cancelled because MIO_REQBODY_ERROR is specified by the device application.
	2236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	The certificate has expired.
	2242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	Failed to initialize the certificate verification.
	2264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2266	Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	No certificate is sent from the server.

Function	Code	Description
WS scan	1	The specified client is not registered.
	2	Parameter is invalid.
	3	The Web service or WS scan function is disabled.
	4	The device is not connected to the network.
	5	Waiting for connection from CP.
	6	The certificate of the destination computer is not valid when the validity period of a certificate is checked.
	22	Invalid argument.
	42	The specified protocol is unavailable.
	52	The connection aborted by the network.
	53	The connection has been interrupted.
	55	A buffer shortage occurred.
	57	The socket is not connected.
	60	The operation has timed out.
	70	The operation is expected to be blocked.
	72	The RetrievalImage waiting period has timed out.
	2236	The certificate has expired, or the validity period has not yet started.
	2238	The CN field of the certificate does not match the server address.
	2239	The certificate does not have the expected usage.
	2240	The certificate is not trusted. To trust the certificate, the certificate must be registered to the system.
	2241	The certificate has expired.
	2242	The CA server rejected the connection.
	2243	The connection to the server that checks for expiration of the certificate has timed out.
	2244	Unable to check for expiration because the CRL size exceeds the maximum capacity that can be retained (1MB).
	2261	The format of the certificate is invalid.
	2263	Although the environment is configured to use the HDD, it is unable to perform verification because the HDD path has not been specified.
	2264	Unable to perform verification because there are too many certificates to be verified (the maximum number of certificates that can be verified at a time is 20).
	2265	Parameter of the certificate verification is invalid.
	2266	Internal error of the certificate verification.
	2267	The device certificate does not exist.
	2268	No certificate is sent from the server.
Bluetooth	0	The reception of the object data specification range has been completed (not the last data).
	1	The reception of the object data specification range has been completed (the last data).
	2	Failed in communication.
	3	An error was detected in the peripheral hardware of Bluetooth.
	4	Failed to allocate memory.
	5	The process has been cancelled by the device.

3.5 Glossary

Term	Description
10BASE-T/ 100BASE-TX/ 1000BASE-T	A set of specifications under the Ethernet standards. Those cables that consist of twisted copper wire pairs are used. The transmission speed of 10Base-T is 10 Mbps, of 100Base-TX is 100 Mbps, and of 1000Base-T is 1000 Mbps.
2in1	A function to send the original by double-page spread, consolidating two pages on a sheet.
Abbreviated/address	A function to register frequently used fax numbers of recipients. When registering abbreviated/addresses, you should also register the destination name and the search string, so that you can specify the destination using the search string to select.
Active Directory	A network service provided by Microsoft. Active Directory can centrally manage all types of information including servers, clients, printers and other hardware resources, as well as properties and access permissions of users on the network.
Adobe® Flash®	Software or its file format developed by Adobe Systems Inc. (formerly by Macromedia, Inc.), used to create a content by compiling vector-graphic animations and sounds. The software allows handling interactive contents using keyboard or mouse. The files can be kept relatively compact and accessed from a Web browser with dedicated plug-in software.
Anonymous FTP	While FTP sites are usually protected using some account name and password mechanism, an anonymous FTP system permits anyone to access the FTP site by simply entering "anonymous" as the account name, without a password.
APOP	The acronym for Authenticated Post Office Protocol. While usual POP does not encrypt the password used for receiving an E-mail, APOP encrypts the password. This authentication method helps enhance the E-mail security.
AppleTalk	The generic name for the protocol suite developed by Apple Computer for computer networking.
Auto IP	A function to obtain an IP address automatically. If one fails to get an IP address via DHCP, the auto IP gets an IP address from the space of "169.254.0.0".
Background adjustment	A function to adjust the shading of background color before sending the original.
Batch transmission	A function to send documents as one document at a specified time if the documents have the same transmission conditions such as destination, transmission time, memory transmission or resolution, and are stored in the same memory.
Baudrate	The transmission rate of a modem. This machine can communicate at a high transmission rate of 33,600bps. When selecting overseas communication mode, the machine communicates at 7200bps or 4800bps, a rate suitable for noise-resistance.
Binding Position	A function to specify the binding position of a double-sided document when it is sent using ADF. Two types of binding positions are available for a double-sided original: One is the top/bottom binding with the binding position at the top or bottom of the original. The other is left/right binding with the binding position at the left (or right) of the original. Note that the second side of the original has a different top/bottom relationship.
bit	The abbreviation of binary digit. The smallest unit of information (data quantity) handled by a computer or printer. A bit uses only a 0 or a 1 to indicate data.
Bitmap Font	A font using a collection of dots to present characters. Jagged edges are conspicuous for the larger Bitmap Font characters.
Bluetooth	One of short-range wireless communication technologies used to connect portable information devices, which are a few meters apart. This function enables you to wirelessly connect a laptop computer, PDA, or cellular phone to transfer voices or data.
BMP	The abbreviation for bitmap. It is a file format used to save image data. (The file extension is ".bmp"). Commonly used on Windows platforms. BMP covers the color depth from monochrome (2 values) to full color (16,777,216 colors). BMP is basically used to save images without compression.

Term	Description
Bonjour	A Macintosh network technology, automatically detecting devices connected to the network and configuring the devices. Previously called "Rendezvous", and has been changed to "Bonjour" since Mac OS X v10.4.
Book copying	A function to separate the front cover, back cover, right pages, and left pages into individual pages when sending a book or catalog by fax.
BOOTP	The abbreviation of BOOTstrap Protocol, which is used for a client computer on the TCP/IP network to load network configuration automatically from a server. Instead of BOOTP, DHCP, an advanced protocol based on BOOTP, is typically used today.
bps	The acronym for bit per second, which is a unit of data transmission, indicating the amount of data transmitted per second.
Brightness	Brightness of a display or other screen.
Broadcast	A transmission of a single original to multiple recipients in one operation.
Bulletin board	A function to post documents to be viewed, or to store the documents to be transmitted via polling.
Byte	A byte indicates a unit of information (data quantity) handled by a computer or printer. A byte consists of eight bits.
Check Dest. & Send	A function to send a fax after comparing the specified fax number with the fax number information of the recipient (CSI). Only when those numbers match, the function sends the fax. If the numbers are not matched, a transmission error occurs. Therefore, this prevents misdirected transmissions.
Client	A computer using services provided by servers via the network.
Closed Network RX	A function to accept only transmissions from recipient machines with a matching password.
CMYK	The acronym for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black. The colors in the toner/ink used for color printing. Changing the mixing ratio of the four CMYK colors enables any type of color to be created.
Color matching	A technology for minimizing the difference in colors among different devices such as scanners, displays and printers.
Compact PDF/XPS	A compression method for minimizing the data size using the PDF or XPS format, used when digitalizing color documents. Compact PDF allows high compression performance by identifying the text and image regions and applying the resolution and compression method optimized for each region. The compact PDF method can be selected in this machine when using the scanning function to digitalize documents.
Confidential communication	A function used to transmit an original only to specific people who you want to read it. Originals sent via confidential communication are not printed when received, and are saved in a confidential box of the recipient's fax machine. The document can be printed by some specific operation such as entering the access code for the confidential box.
Contrast	The difference in intensity between the light and dark parts of the image (light/dark variation). "Low contrast" indicates an image with little light and dark variation, while "High contrast" an image with large light and dark variation.
CSV	The acronym for Comma Separated Values, which is one of the formats used for saving database or spreadsheet data as a text file. (The file extension is ".csv".) Data can be shared among different applications by being separated by commas (as the delimiter).
Default	An initial setting. The settings selected in advance and enabled when the machine is turned on, or the settings selected in advance and enabled when the function is activated.
Default Gateway	A device, such as a computer or router, used as a "gateway" to access computers on different LANs.
Default value	A setting value configured for the machine prior to shipment from the factory. Some default values can be changed by using the settings menu. It will be convenient to set a frequently used value to the default value according to your application.
Density	The amount of density of an image.

Term	Description
Density Compensation	A color tone correction function used for output devices such as printers and displays.
DHCP	The acronym for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, which is used for a client computer on the TCP/IP network to load network configuration automatically from a server. Just using a DHCP server to centrally manage IP addresses of the DHCP clients enables you to construct a network without IP address conflicts or other troubles.
Dialing method	There are three Dialing methods: PB (push-button dialing), 10PPS (pulse dialing /10 pps), and 20PPS (pulse dialing /20 pps).
Dither	A method of presenting the quasi-shading of gray using black and white colors. This method is easier to process than error diffusion, but may stir some unevenness on the image.
DNS	The acronym for Domain Name System. DNS allows for obtaining the IP address corresponding to a host name in network environments. This system enables a user to access other computers on the network by specifying host names instead of elusive and non-intuitive IP addresses.
DNS Host Name	The name of a device on the network.
DPI (dpi)	The acronym for Dots Per Inch. A unit of resolution used for printers and scanners. This indicates the number of dots used to represent an inch. The higher this value, the higher the resolution.
Driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a peripheral device.
DSN	The acronym for Delivery Status Notifications, which is a delivery status notification message being returned from a receiver to a sender when the E-mail is delivered to the receiver's mail server.
Dynamic authentication (LDAP setting)	An authentication method option used when connecting to a LDAP server form a multifunctional product. Select this option if you want an user to enter the login name and password each time the user logs on the LDAP server to refer to destination information.
ECM	The acronym for Error Correction Mode. An error resending method used for G3 communication. ECM checks whether the data is correctly sent to the destination, and should it be not the case, ECM resends the same data while maintains the serial communication. If a receiver also provides the ECM mode, this machine uses the ECM-based communication with the receiver unless the ECM mode is disabled.
Ethernet	LAN transmission line standard
Fax ID	An identification code used for the mutual recognition for fax transmission. Usually the fax number is registered for the fax ID.
F-Code	A communication procedure related to the usage of subaddress of T.30* standardized by ITU-T (international telecommunication union). F code is provided by Japanese Communications Industrial Corporation. Various kinds of capabilities are available for the communication among fax machines with the F code function irrespective of difference of the fax machine brand. This machine uses F code for the bulletin boards, relay request, confidential communication, and password transmission. (* a communication standard)
File extension	Characters added to a file name for the recognition of the file format. The file extension is added after a dot of a file name, for example, ".bmp" or ".jpg".
Forced memory reception	A function to store received documents in memory, and print them when required.
Frame erase	A function of erasing dark shadow around the document before transmitting it via fax, when scanning a booklet form document or a document with ADF kept open.
Frame type	A type of communication format used in NetWare environments. For mutual communication, the same frame type is required.
FTP	The acronym for File Transfer Protocol, which is used to transfer files via the Internet, intranet or other TCP/IP network.

Term	Description
G3	A fax communication mode standardized by the ITU-T (International Telecommunication Union). G3 and G4 are provided for the communication modes. Today, G3 is more widely used than G4.
Gateway	Hardware and software used as the point where a network is connected to a network. A gateway also changes data formats, addresses, and protocols according to the connected network.
Gradation	The shading levels of an image. Larger number of the levels can reproduce smoother transition of the shading.
Grayscale	A form presenting monochrome image by using the gradation information shifting from black to white.
Group	The grouping of multiple abbreviation numbers. It will be convenient to use the group when a volume of serial broadcasts or serial pollings are distributed to the same destination addresses.
GSS-SPNEGO/ Simple/Digest MD5	Authentication methods used for logging in to the LDAP server. The different authentication method, GSS-SPNEGO, SIMPLE or Digest MD5 is used for a LDAP server depending on the type of the server being used or server settings.
Halftone	A method for presenting the shading of an image by using different sizes of black and white dots
Hard disk	A large capacity storage device for storing data. The data is retained even after the power is turned off.
HTTP	The acronym for HyperText Transfer Protocol, which is used to transmit data between a Web server and a client (such as a Web browser). HTTP can exchange files such as images, sounds, and moving pictures that are associated with documents, including their presentation formats and other information.
ICM	The acronym for Image Color Management, which is a color management system used for Windows. ICM adjusts the difference of a color caused by different I/O devices, such as monitors, scanners and printers, and reproduce the color mostly common to any those devices.
IEEE802.1X	A standard used in a wired or wireless LAN to authenticate terminals gaining access to the network. A LAN switch compatible with IEEE802.1X permits a user to connect with the LAN after authentication (to confirm whether the user is authorized).
Install	To install hardware, operating systems, applications, printer drivers on to a computer
Internet Fax	A transmission method by which the scanned original data is transmitted among Internet fax machines and computers as TIFF format E-mail attachments via the intranet (in-house network) and the Internet.
IP Address	An address or a code used to identify individual network devices on the Internet. IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4), a protocol widely used today, adopts 32-bit numeric values of the IP address separated into four sections. An example of the IP address: 192.168.1.10. On the other hand, IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), the next generation protocol, adopts 128-bit of the IP address. The IP address is assigned to every computer or other device connected to the Internet.
IP Address Fax	The IP is an address or code used to identify individual devices on the Internet. IP Address Fax uses the addresses to send or receive faxes within the intranet.
IPP	The acronym for Internet Printing Protocol, which is used to send or receive print data or control printers via the Internet or other TCP/IP network. IPP can also send data to be printed to printers in remote areas via the Internet.
IPsec	The name of a security technology used for the TCP/IP network. IPsec allows service with enhanced security by determining the protocol used for the encryption of transmit packets and for authentication.
IPv6	The acronym for Internet Protocol version 6. With the number of devices on the Internet increasing, the IPv6 protocol has been arranged to replace the current IPv4 protocol. 128-bit IP addressing system and expanded security features.
IPX	One of the protocols used for NetWare. IPX runs in the network layer of the OSI reference model.

Term	Description
IPX/SPX	The acronym for Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange, which is a protocol developed by Novell, Inc., typically used in NetWare environments.
JPEG	The acronym for Joint Photographic Experts Group. It is a file format used to save image data. (The file extension is ".jpg"). The compression ratio is generally 1/10 to 1/100. JPEG is an effective method to compress photographs and other natural images.
Kerberos	A network authentication system used for Windows 2000 or later, used for Active Directory authentication. Kerberos arranges an authentic site within the network to provide two-phase authentication processes of users login and the use of network resources, allowing users to be securely and efficiently authenticated.
LAN	The acronym for Local Area Network, which is a network constructed by connecting computers on the same floor, in the same building, or in neighboring buildings.
LDAP	The acronym for Lightweight Directory Access Protocol, which is a protocol used to access a database that can manage E-mail addresses and environmental information of network users on the Internet, intranet, or other TCP/IP network.
LLMNR	The acronym for Link-local Multicast Name Resolution, which is a protocol used for the name resolution of neighboring computers. LLMNR uses simple exchange of request and response messages to perform name resolution of neighboring computers without configuring DNS server or clients.
LLTD	The acronym for Link Layer Topology Discovery, which is a technology investigating how the devices on the network are connected. Network devices with this technology are recognized by Windows Vista/Server 2008 on the network, and displayed as icons configured on the network map of Windows Vista.
Local printer	A printer connected to a parallel or USB port of a computer.
Long original	A function to send original pages longer than the standard size. Long size documents can be sent by selecting this function.
LPD	The acronym for Line Printer Daemon, which is a platform-independent printer protocol running on the TCP/IP network. The protocol was originally developed for BSD UNIX, and has become one of the printing protocols typically used among general computers.
LPR/LPD	The acronym for Line Printer Request/Line Printer Daemon, which is a printing method via the network, used for Windows NT or UNIX based systems. It uses TCP/IP to output printing data from Windows or UNIX to a printer on the network.
MAC address	MAC is the acronym for Media Access Control. MAC address is an ID number unique to each Ethernet card, enabling the cards to send and receive data to and from each other. A Mac address consists of 48-bit numbers. The first 24 bits are controlled by IEEE and used to allocate a unique number to each manufacture, whereas the latter 24 bits are used by each manufacturer to assign a unique number to each card.
Main Scanning	The operation of scanning a document optically, and converting the document into image data.
Main scanning direction	The horizontal direction for scanning originals.
Manual transmission	An operation to send a fax while checking the status of the receiver.
MDN	The acronym for Message Disposition Notifications, which is a message sent to confirm that the mail has been unsealed, a response to a sender when the sender requests for doing so.
Memory	A storage device used for storing data temporarily. Some types of memory retain data even after the power is turned off, while others not.
Memory overflow	A condition where the fax memory becomes full while scanned documents or temporarily stored documents are saved.

Term	Description
Memory transmission	A method used to start a fax transmission after scanning originals and storing them in memory. If memory transmission is used, the total number of pages are automatically printed in the page number of the transmission source information and an image of the first page of the sent document is printed in the transmission report. However, the memory may become full if the document contains many pages, or there is a large amount of information due to high image quality.
MH	The acronym for Modified Huffman, which is a data compression encoding method used for fax transmissions. The text-based original is compressed to approximately one-tenth the original size.
MIB	The acronym for Management Information Base, which defines the format of management information for network devices that are collected using SNMP in TCP/IP communication. Two types of MIB are provided, that is, the private MIB specific to each manufacturer and the standardized MIB.
Mixed original	A function to set different sizes of originals, detect the size of each original, and send them accordingly.
MMR	The acronym for Modified Modified Read, which is a data compression encoding method used for fax transmissions. Text-based originals are compressed to approximately 1/20 the original size.
Multi Page TIFF	A TIFF file that contains multiple pages.
NDPS	The acronym for Novell Distributed Print Services, which provides a high performance printing solution in NDS environments. By using the NDPS as a printer server, you can output from the desired printer, automatically download the printer driver of a newly installed printer, simplify and automate complicated management environments related to printer use, and integrate management related to the network printer.
NDS	The acronym for Novell Directory Services. It allows the centralized management in an hierarchical structure of shared resources such as servers, printers and users information on the network, as well as the access privilege and other information related to the users.
NetBEUI	The acronym for NetBIOS Extended User Interface, which is a network protocol developed by IBM. NetBEUI enables you to construct a small-scale network simply by configuring computer names.
NetBIOS	The acronym for Network Basic Input Output System, which is a communication interface developed by IBM.
NetWare	A network operating system developed by Novell, using NetWare IPX/SPX as the communication protocol.
No. of originals	A function used for quick memory transmission with information of the total number of pages. This allows the recipient to check whether the all pages were received or not (In case of memory transmission, the total no. of pages are automatically added).
Nprinter/Rprinter	A remote printer support module used when using a printer server in NetWare environments. Rprinter is used for NetWare 3.x, and Nprinter for NetWare 4.x.
NTLM	The acronym for NT LAN Manager, which is a user authentication method used for Windows NT or later. NTLM encodes password using MD4 or MD5 encoding method.
NTP	The acronym for Network Time Protocol, which is a protocol used to adjust the computer's internal clock precisely via the network. In a hierarchical method, the time is adjusted with the server at the highest level using GPS to acquire the correct time, which is then referenced by each lower level host.
OCR	The acronym for Optical Character Reader, which is a device or software that converts handwritten or printed characters to text data by optically scanning them and comparing them with previously stored patterns for identification.
OHP/OHT	A transparent sheet used for OHP (overhead projector), used for presentations.
OS	The acronym for Operating System, which is a base software used to control the system of a computer. Windows, MacOS, or Unix is an OS.
Outline font	A font using lines and curves to display an outline of a character. Large characters can be displayed on a screen or printed with no jagged edges.

Term	Description
Overseas communication	This is a function used to communicate with an overseas recipient. If an overseas communication mode is set, the fax is sent with a lower speed. Specifying an overseas transmission mode ensures the fax transmission when faxing to the location where transmission conditions are poor, even within the country.
Password transmission	A function to send a fax with a password. If the recipient's fax machine is set to closed network reception, the sender's fax machine should transmit the same password as used for the closed network reception.
PASV	The acronym for PASSive, which is a mode used to connect to an FTP server from within a firewall. If this mode is not selected, the firewall regards the access as unauthorized and blocks the connection, disabling any file transmission.
Pause	A temporary break in dialing. In this machine, each pause creates a one second break during dialing.
PB	A push telephone line.
PC-FAX	A function to send a fax directly from a computer without using paper.
PDF	The acronym for Portable Document Format, which is an electronically formatted document with file extension of ".pdf". PDF is a PostScript based format, and can be viewed using Adobe Acrobat Reader, a free viewer software.
PDL	The acronym for Page Description Language, which is a language used to indicate print images for each page to a page printer.
Peer-to-peer	A type of network allowing connected devices to communicate each other without using a dedicated server.
Pixel	the smallest constitutional unit of an image.
Pixel	Pixel. the smallest constitutional unit of an image.
Plug-and-play	A mechanism of immediately detecting a peripheral device when it is connected to a computer, and automatically searching an appropriate driver so that the device becomes inoperable.
Polling	A function available on the receiver's side to request a sender to send originals set or stored in the sender's machine or memory.
POP Before SMTP	A user authentication method used when sending E-mail messages. POP Before SMTP receives E-mail messages first, then authenticates the user using the POP server. The IP address, passed through the user authentication by the POP server, is then permitted to use the SMTP server. This method prevents third parties without permission to use the mail server from sending mail messages.
POP3	The acronym for Post Office Protocol - Version 3, which is a commonly used transmission protocol (transmission convention) for the transmission and reception of E-mail. POP3 has functions including mail box authentication, E-mail download, list information check, and E-mail deletion.
Port Number	A number used to identify the transmission port assigned to each process running on a computer on the network. The same port cannot be used by multiple processes.
PostScript	A typical page-descriptive language developed by Adobe and is commonly used for high quality printing.
PPD	The acronym for PostScript Printer Description, which is a file with the description of resolution, available paper sizes, and other information specific to a PostScript printer model.
PPI	The acronym for Pixels Per Inch, which is a unit of resolution used mainly for monitors or scanners. PPI indicates how many pixels are contained per inch.
Preview	A function allowing you to view an image before being processed for printing or scanning.
Print Job	Print request transmitted from a computer to a printing device.
Print queue	A software system used for spooler, saving generated print jobs.
Printer buffer	A memory area temporarily used for processing data of print jobs.
Printer driver	Software that works as a bridge between a computer and a printer.

Term	Description
Profile	A color attribute file This contains overall input and output correlation data of primary colors, specifically used by the color input and output devices to reproduce colors.
Program address	A function to register frequently used destination fax numbers, or stereotyped transmission operation procedures. By simply pressing a program key, you can specify the destination, or configure a function automatically to start communication.
Property	Attribute information. When using a printer driver, you can use its property to configure different functions. Also by using a file property, you can check the attribute information about the file.
Protocol	A rule enabling a computer to communicate with other computers or peripherals.
Proxy Server	A server installed for the connection with the Internet. A proxy server acts as a proxy of client computers to contact the Internet to ensure security effectively for the total organization.
PServer	A print server module available in Netware environments. PServer monitors, changes, pauses, restarts, or cancels print jobs.
Queue name	A name assigned to each device for allowing printing to the device via network.
Queue name	A logical printer name required for LPD/LPR printing.
Quick memory transmission	A method used to start sending fax immediately after scanning a page of the original. This method allows even an original with many pages to be sent without overflowing the memory.
RAW port number	A TCP port number used when the RAW protocol is selected for Windows or other TCP printing. The RAW port number is usually set to 9100.
realm (IPP setting)	An area used for allowing security functions. The area is used to organize user names, passwords and other authentication information, and define the security policy in the area.
Receiving	A fax machine status when it receives a call.
Redial	A function to re-dial a fax number after waiting for a specified length of time when recipient's line is busy. Both manual redial and automatic redial functions are available.
Reference Allowed Level	A feature for specifying settings so that only certain people are able to view certain destination information for the security of the information. When synchronized with user authentication, only information with an access permission level matching that specified for the user can be viewed.
Referral setting (LDAP setting)	If no relevant destination data is found on an LDAP server, the LDAP server itself instructs which LDAP server to be searched for the next. The referral setting configures whether the multifunctional product is responsible for searching the next LDAP server.
Relay broadcast	A function to broadcast fax messages via other fax machine (called a relay distribution station). When you have multiple broadcast destinations in remote place, you may configure one of the destinations as a relay station to transfer the broadcast via the relay station, so that you can reduce the total communication rate.
Relay distribution station	A feature to broadcast the fax to the relay distribution destination by receiving the relay request from the relay instruction station. The relay distribution function is not available in this machine.
Relay instruction station	A fax machine sending a relay broadcast request.
Resending	A function to select and resend a document that was not send but stored in the memory. The document can be resent either to the same destination or to another destination.
Resolution	Resolution indicates how much details of an object can be reproduced precisely on an image or a print matter.
RGB	The acronym for Red, Green, and Blue. The RGB are the three primary colors used on monitors and other devices to reproduce full colors by changing their brightness ratio.

Term	Description
RIP	The acronym for Raster Image Processor, which is a process to extract picture images from text data created using the PostScript page description language. The processor is usually integrated into a printer.
S/MIME	The acronym for Secure/Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions, which is a protocol used to add encryption, digital signature, and other features to MIME (E-mail operations). Public key method is used for encryption, using a different key for encryption and decryption.
Samba	UNIX server software using SMB (Server Message Block) so that UNIX system resources can be used from Windows environments.
Scanning	The reading of an image in scanner operation by moving aligned image sensors step by step. The direction of moving image sensors is called the main scanning direction, and the direction of image sensors alignment is called the sub-scanning direction.
Scanning size	A function to specify the scanning size of an original to transmit it. If the width of the paper in the recipient's fax machine is smaller than that of the transmitted document, the document will usually be reduced for printing purposes. If you do not want to reduce the document size, specify the same document size as that of the paper in the recipient's fax machine, so that you can send the document with its original size.
Screen font	A font used for displaying characters/symbols on a CRT or other monitor.
Screen frequency	The density of dots used to create the image.
Sending	Sending indicates making a call. For fax, sending indicates sending originals or dialing for pollings.
Shared printer	A printer connected to a server on the network and configured to be used by multiple computers.
Sharpness	A function to enhance the edge of characters before sending the document.
Single-page TIFF	A TIFF file that contains only a single page.
SLP	An acronym for Service Location Protocol, which is a protocol capable of finding services on the TCP/IP network, and the automatic configuration of clients.
SMB	The acronym for Server Message Block, which is a protocol allowing the share of files and printers mainly over the Windows network.
SMTP	The acronym for Simple Mail Transfer Protocol, which is a protocol used to transmit or transfer E-mail.
SNMP	The acronym for Simple Network Management Protocol, which is a management protocol in the TCP/IP network environments.
Spool	The acronym for Simultaneous Peripheral Operation On-Line, which indicates that data to be output to a printer is not sent directly to the printer, but is temporarily stored in another location. The stored data is then sent collectively to the printer.
SSL/TLS	The acronym for Secure Socket Layer/Transport Layer Security, which is an encoding method used to transmit data between the Web server and a browser in a secure manner.
Subnet Mask	A value used to divide a TCP/IP network into small networks (subnetworks). TCP/IP is used to identify how many higher-order bits of the IP address are used for the network address.
Sub-scanning direction	The vertical direction for scanning originals.
Super G3 (SG3)	A G3 communication mode complying with ITU-T V.34. Compared with usual G3 communication, it allows the higher rate transmission (up to 33,400bps).
TCP Socket	TCP Socket indicates an API used for the TCP/IP network. This socket is used to open a transmission route for input or output of usual files.
TCP/IP	The acronym for Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol, which is a de facto standard protocol widely used for the Internet. The IP address is used to identify each network device.

Term	Description
Temporary document saving	A function to save received documents automatically to memory when the machine is unable to print the documents for some reason such as running out of paper. When a proper action is taken such as refilling of paper, the temporarily saved document is printed out.
Temporary forward transmission	A function to manually forward the received original that is in the standby state to be output, by using the setting check button on the control panel. The function must be set while the fax/scan screen is displayed, otherwise the operation will be halted due to the paper running out or a paper jam.
Thumbnail	A function to display the content of an image or document file as a small image (image displayed when the file is opened).
TIFF	The acronym for Tagged Image File Format, It is a file format used to save image data. (The file extension is ".tif"). By using the "tag" indicating the data type, information for various image formats can be saved in a single image data.
Timer communication	A function to transmit a fax at the specified time. It reduce costs by transmitting faxes in the late evening or early morning when discount telephone services are available.
Transmission reservation	A function to program the next transmission during transmission or printing.
Transmission source name	The name of a sender. On the receiver's side, the name is printed as a part of the sender's information at the edge of the transmitted original.
Transmission source record	The transmission time, name, telephone number, page number, and other information on the sender's side printed at the edge of the document on the receiver's side.
Transmission time	The time needed to send a fax. The higher the resolution or larger the paper, the longer the transmission takes.
TrueType	A type of outline font, developed by Apple and Microsoft, and currently used as a standard font for Macintosh and Windows. The font can be used both for display and printing.
TSI	The acronym for Transmitting Subscriber Identification, which is the ID of a fax transmission terminal.
TWAIN	An interface standard defined for between imaging devices including scanners and digital cameras and applications including graphics software. To use a TWAIN compatible device, a corresponding TWAIN driver is required.
Uninstallation	To delete software installed on a computer
USB	The acronym for Universal Serial Bus, which is a general-purpose interface defined for connecting a mouse, printer, and other devices with a computer.
V34	A communication mode used for super G3 fax transmission. Super G3 mode transmission may not be activated because of a telephone line status where the receiver's or sender's machine is connected to a telephone line via a private branch exchange switchboard. If this occurs, the G3 mode should be disabled by turning V34 off.
Web browser	Software used to view Web pages. Typical Web browsers are Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator.
Web service	Which is a technology useful for detecting a device on the network, using the device functions or obtaining the device information. Web service comes equipped with Windows Vista, and is used to detect devices on the network and to perform printing or scanning via the network.
WINS	The acronym for Windows Internet Name Service, which is a service available in Windows environments, of calling the name server responsible for converting between a computer name and an IP address.
Z folded original	This function first determines the document size that cannot be detected correctly because of folds, then scans and sends the document after the verification. This function is available only when the original is scanned by ADF.
Zone	A name used for an AppleTalk network. Zone is used to group multiple devices on the AppleTalk network.

4

Index

4 Index

4.1 Index by item

A

Active Directory *2-149*
 Address Book *2-250*
 Administrative Setting *2-142, 2-152, 2-157, 2-160, 2-164, 2-168*
 Administrator mode *2-13*
 Administrator Password *2-230*
 Administrator settings *3-4*
 Annotation User Box *2-242*
 APOP Authentication *2-55*
 AppleTalk *2-105*
 Assign Account to Acquire Device Info *2-249*
 Automatic logout time *2-229*

B

Blank pages *2-218*
 Bluetooth Setting *3-18*
 Bonjour *2-104*
 Bulletin Board User Box *2-241*

C

Certificate *2-18, 2-26, 2-28, 2-30*
 Certificate validation *2-33, 2-183, 2-190*
 Create System User Box *2-241*
 Create User Box *2-238*

D

Data Management Utility *2-295*
 Date *2-35*
 Digital Signature *2-59*
 Direct print *2-248*

E

E-mail body *2-273*
 E-mail destination *2-251, 2-257*
 E-mail Notification *2-128*
 E-mail subject *2-273*
 E-mail Transmission (SMTP) *2-48*
 Export *2-197*
 Extension lines *2-292*
 External certificates *2-224*

F

Fax *2-264, 2-280, 2-282*
 Fax destination *2-253*
 Fax reports *2-291*
 Fax server *2-274*
 Font/macro *2-204*
 FTP destination *2-251*

FTP destinations *2-259*
 FTP Server *2-192*
 FTP TX *2-71*

G

Group *2-256, 2-268*

H

Header/footer position *2-278*

I

IEEE802.1X authentication *2-180*
 Import *2-197*
 Initialize *2-201*
 Interface *2-248*
 Internet Fax *2-77, 2-83*
 Internet fax destination *2-254*
 Internet fax destinations *2-267*
 IP Address Fax *2-87*
 IP address fax destination *2-254*
 IP address fax destinations *2-265*
 IP address filtering *2-170*
 IPP printing *2-99, 2-102*
 IPsec *2-175*
 IPv6 *2-172*

L

LDAP *2-65, 2-165*
 LDAP over SSL *2-69, 2-168*
 License Registration *2-202*
 List Function Display *1-7*
 LPR printing *2-96*

M

Machine information *2-207*
 Main Menu *1-8*
 Meter Count *2-135, 2-195*
 MFP authentication *2-139*

N

NDS over IPX/SPX *2-158*
 NDS over TCP/IP *2-161*
 NetWare *2-106*
 Network Error Codes *2-200*
 Network error codes *3-19*
 Network map *2-123*
 Network settings *3-4, 3-6*
 No destination entry *2-269*
 NTLM Authentication *2-154*

O

OpenAPI *2-187*

P

PageScope Web Connection *2-11, 2-229*

PBX *2-290*

PCL print *2-244*

POP before SMTP *2-52*

POP over SSL *2-54*

Port9100 printing *2-96*

Prefix/Suffix *2-277*

Print Setting *2-243*

Program *2-257*

Protocol *2-26*

PS print *2-245*

Public key *2-62*

Public user *2-231*

R

Reference allowed *2-226*

Registering applications *2-274*

Relay User Box *2-242*

ROM Version *2-196*

S

S/MIME *2-59, 2-62*

Scan to Authorized Folder Settings *2-235*

Scan to E-Mail *2-47*

Scan to Home *2-42*

Scan to Me *2-56*

Single Color / 2 Color Output *2-234*

Skipping jobs *2-218*

SMB *2-45*

SMB destination *2-252*

SMB destinations *2-260*

SMB Print *2-97*

SMB TX *2-38*

SMTP Authentication *2-52*

SMTP over SSL *2-50*

SNMP *2-124*

Specification *3-3*

SSDP Setting *3-17*

SSDP Settings *2-188*

SSL *2-18, 2-120, 2-121*

Stamp *2-216*

Start TLS *2-50*

Status Notification *2-128, 2-132*

Store address *2-227*

Support information *2-208*

System User Box *2-239*

T

Tab Function Display *1-7*

TCP Socket *2-185*

TCP/IP *2-8*

Telephone and fax lines *2-279*

Temporary one-touch destination *2-272*

TIFF print *2-246*

Timer *2-198*

Total Counter Notification *2-135*

TRAP Notification *2-132*

TWAIN *2-94*

U

User Authentication *2-149, 2-154, 2-158, 2-161, 2-165*

User authentication *2-139*

User Box *2-233, 2-236*

User Box destination *2-253, 2-263*

User Boxes *2-209*

W

Web Service *2-120*

Web service *2-112, 2-117*

Web Services *2-121*

WebDAV destination *2-252, 2-262*

WebDAV over SSL *2-75*

WebDAV server *2-192*

WebDAV transmission *2-73*

WS Print *2-112*

WS Scan *2-117*

X

XPS print *2-247*

4.2 Index by button

A

Account Track Registration *2-147*
 Address Registration *2-250*
 Administrator Password Setting *2-230*
 AppleTalk Settings *2-105, 3-14*
 Assign Account to Acquire Device Info *2-249*
 Auto Logout *2-229*
 Automatically Obtain Certificates *2-32*

B

Basic Setting *2-243*
 Black Compression Level *2-81, 2-91*
 Blank Page Print Settings *2-218*
 Bonjour Setting *3-14*
 Bonjour Settings *2-104*

C

Certificate Verification Level Settings *2-33, 2-75, 2-190*
 Certificate Verification Settings *2-33, 2-51, 2-54, 2-69, 2-75, 2-122, 2-183, 2-190*
 Client Setting *2-39, 2-157*
 Closed network RX *2-284*
 Color/Grayscale Multi-Value Compression Method *2-82, 2-92*
 Create System User Box *2-241*
 Create User Box *2-238*
 Creating and installing a self-signed certificate *2-20*

D

Default Function Permission *2-152*
 Delete Secure Print File *2-209*
 Delete Time Setting *2-210*
 Delete Unused User Box *2-209*
 Detail Settings *3-17*
 Device Certificate Setting *2-19*
 Device Setting *2-10*
 Direct Hosting Setting *2-41*
 Direct Print Settings *2-248*
 Document Delete Time Setting *2-211*
 Document Hold Setting *2-212*

E

Edit Font/Macro *2-204*
 E-mail *2-31*
 E-Mail RX (POP) *2-53, 2-54, 2-84*
 E-mail Settings *3-11*
 E-mail Transmission (SMTP) *2-48, 2-50, 2-129, 2-136*
 Exporting a certificate *2-28*
 External Certificate Setting *2-224*
 External Memory Function Settings *2-213*
 External Server Settings *2-150, 2-155, 2-158, 2-162, 2-166, 2-168*

F

Fax TX settings *2-217*
 font or macro *2-300*
 Format All Destination *2-202*
 Forward TX Setting *2-285*
 FTP Server Settings *2-193*
 FTP Settings *3-9*
 FTP transmission setting *2-72*
 Function ON/OFF Setting *2-282*

G

General Settings *2-140, 2-151, 2-156, 2-159, 2-163, 2-167*
 Get Request Code *2-203*
 Group *2-256*

H

Header Information *2-80*
 Header/Footer Position *2-278*
 Header/Footer Registration *2-216*
 HTTP Server Settings *3-8*

I

Icon *2-255*
 ID & Print Delete Time *2-215*
 IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting *2-181, 2-183*
 IEEE802.1X Authentication Settings *3-18*
 IEEE802.1X Authentication Trial *2-184*
 I-Fax Advanced Setting *2-80, 2-85*
 IKE *2-177*
 Import/Export *2-197*
 Importing a certificate *2-23*
 Incomplete TX Hold *2-286*
 Install a Certificate *2-22*
 Install License *2-203*
 Interface Setting *2-248*
 Internet Fax RX Ability *2-86*
 IP Filtering *2-170*
 IPP Authentication Setting *2-101*
 IPP Setting *2-100*
 IPsec *2-176*

L

LDAP Settings *2-66, 3-10*
 Line Parameter Setting *2-279*
 LLMNR Setting *2-41*
 LLTD Setting *2-123*
 LPD *2-96*

M

Machine Setting *2-49, 2-79, 2-207*
 Manage Copy Protect Data *2-296*
 Manage Stamp Data *2-298*
 Manual Setting *2-36*

Memory RX Setting *2-283*

Meter Count *2-195*

Multi Line Settings *2-292*

N

NetWare Settings *2-106, 2-125, 2-133, 2-160, 3-8*

NetWare Status *2-111*

Network Error Code Display Setting *2-200*

Network Fax Function Settings *2-78, 2-88*

Network Fax Settings *2-80, 2-85, 2-91, 3-15*

Network Setting Clear *2-201*

Network TWAIN *2-95*

O

Open System User Box *2-239*

Open User Box *2-236*

OpenAPI Setting *2-189*

P

PBX Connection Setting *2-290*

PC-FAX RX Setting *2-287*

PCL Setting *2-244*

Peer *2-179*

Power Save Setting *2-198*

Prefix/Suffix *2-277*

Print Setting *2-98, 2-114*

Program *2-257*

Protocol setting *2-27*

PS Setting *2-245*

Public User *2-231*

Public User Box Setting *2-233*

R

RAW Port Number *2-96*

Register Support Information *2-208*

Registering reference allowed groups *2-226*

Removing a Certificate *2-25*

Report Settings *2-291*

Requesting an issuance of certificate *2-21*

Reset *2-201*

Restrict User Access *2-227*

ROM Version *2-196*

S

S/MIME *2-60, 2-63*

SA *2-178*

Scan to Authorized Folder Settings *2-235*

Scan to Home Settings *2-43*

Scanner Settings *2-119*

Setting up the LDAP server *2-67, 2-69*

Skip Job Operation Settings *2-218*

SLP *2-94*

SMB Settings *3-9*

SMTP RX Setting *2-90*

SMTP TX Setting *2-89*

SNMP Settings *2-126, 3-13*

SSL Setting *2-24*

Status Notification Setting *2-130, 2-134*

Subject *2-273*

T

TCP Socket Settings *2-12, 2-95, 2-186, 3-15*

TCP/IP Setting *2-173*

TCP/IP Settings *2-8, 3-6*

Temporary One-Touch *2-272*

Text *2-273*

TIFF Setting *2-246*

Timer Adjustment Setting *2-37*

Total Counter Notification Setting *2-137*

TRAP Settings *2-133*

TSI User Box Registration *2-289*

TSI User Box Setting *2-288*

TX/RX settings *2-280*

U

User Box Operation *2-214*

User Registration *2-144*

User/Account Common Setting *2-234*

W

Web Service Common Settings *2-113, 2-118, 2-120, 2-121*

Web Service Settings *3-16*

Web Settings *2-11*

WebDAV client settings *2-74*

WebDAV Server Settings *2-194*

WebDAV Settings *3-16*

Weekly Timer Setting *2-199*

WINS Setting *2-40*

X

XPS Settings *2-247*